新航道
NEW CHANNEL

9分达人

雅思口语真题还原及解析2

新航道雅思研发中心 编著

2013年—2017年雅思口语全新题库

- 108个Part1分类话题，8大策略拯救“无话可说”
- 248个Part2高频考题，99%覆盖近5年口语题库
- 122个Part3典型题目，从考官角度解读出题思路

2017.11
Describe a good parent you know

2017.10
Describe a successful business person you admire

2017.9
Describe a long car journey you went on

2017.8
Describe a couple who have a happy marriage

2017.7
Describe a time you moved to a new home or school

2017.5

9分达人温馨提示：
本书收录的真题为全新高频考题，极有可能出现在未来的口语考试中，请做好心理准备！

全新真题

更多雅思考试资讯
打开微信“扫一扫”

世界知识出版社

NC 新航道 NEW CHANNEL

9分达人®雅思口语真题还原及解析②

新航道雅思研发中心◎编著

2013年—2017年雅思口语全新题库

- 108个Part1分类话题，8大策略拯救“无话可说”
- 248个Part2高频考题，99%覆盖近5年口语题库
- 122个Part3典型题目，从考官角度解读出题思路

2017.11
Describe a good parent you know

2017.10
Describe a successful business person you admire

2017.9
Describe a long car journey you went on

2017.7
Describe a time you moved to a new home or school

2017.8
Describe a couple who have a happy marriage

2017.5
Describe a book you want to read again

9分达人温馨提示：本书收录的真题为全新高频考题，极有可能出现在未来的口语考试中，请细心准备！

全新真题

世界知识出版社

图书在版编目（CIP）数据

9分达人雅思口语真题还原及解析．2 / 新航道雅思研发中心编著．—北京：世界知识出版社，2017.5

ISBN 978-7-5012-5502-3

Ⅰ．①9… Ⅱ．①新… Ⅲ．①IELTS—口语—题解

Ⅳ．①H319.9-44

中国版本图书馆CIP数据核字（2017）第128817号

策划编辑	马凤祥　马　蕾
责任编辑	龚玲琳
文字编辑	蔡楚娇
责任出版	赵　玥
责任校对	马莉娜
书　　名	9分达人雅思口语真题还原及解析.2 9 Fen Daren Yasi Kouyu Zhenti Huanyuan Ji Jiexi. 2
编　　著	新航道雅思研发中心
出版发行	世界知识出版社
地址邮编	北京市东城区干面胡同51号（100010）
网　　址	www.ishizhi.cn
电　　话	010-65265923（发行）　010-85119023（邮购）
经　　销	新华书店
印　　刷	北京合众伟业印刷有限公司
开本印张	889×1194毫米　1/16　33印张
字　　数	630千字
版次印次	2017年11月第1版　2017年11月第1次印刷
标准书号	ISBN 978-7-5012-5502-3
定　　价	86.00元

版权所有　侵权必究

新航道图书编委会

主　　任　胡　敏

委　　员　（按姓氏笔画为序）

马凤祥　　冉　维

李传伟　　陈　红

陈采霞　　杨　宏

胡　敏　　顾　强

蔡　政　　[美] 彭铁城

本册编著　伏　强　　吴泽瑶

陈雪璐　　黄溥明

[英] James Foster

Foreword 前言

“为什么我的口语分就是上不去？”“为什么努力备考数月还是拿不了高分？”“雅思口语到底应该怎么准备？”

与其烦恼上述任何一个问题，你不如先来回答笔者三个问题：

1. 你的实际口语能力提高了吗，还是仅仅为了应对考试努力背了一堆素材，为了考试而考试？

2. Native speakers 会像你这样对话吗，你是否还在“How are you? I'm fine, thank you, and you?”中练习英语，是否依旧不检讨自己操着一口中式发音回答考官？

3. 你是否依旧用练习写作的方式练习口语，无数次的修改写下来了口语答案，将句型变得越来越长，单词变得越来越难？

如果上述这三点，不幸有一点被言中了，那笔者认为你很难突破现有的分数。

据雅思考试官方报告显示，2015 年中国大陆考生的总平均分为 5.7 分，其中 63% 的成绩介于 5—6 分之间。四个单项平均成绩中，口语为 5.4 分，居阅读和听力之后，略高于写作 0.1 分。反观当下的英语培训如火如荼，中国考生普遍的英语水平没有显著提高，口语这种“真正考查实际运用能力”的项目反倒在全球排名倒数，这究竟是什么原因造成的呢？

众所周知，口语在雅思考试的四个单项中，一直都是用时最短、时间最不固定的。考试中，考生还会面对“笑面虎”“印度口音”“冷

面女王”等各种各样的考官，这使得很多考生对该项考试抱有“撞运气”的心态。此外，雅思口语题库一直以来就以“多、杂、无规律”而“闻名”，这使得考生在备考过程中惊慌失措，不知如何下手。加之，口语逢1月、5月和9月为“变题季”，所以考生将一些培训机构所谓的“小范围预测”作为了最后的“救命稻草”，往往只是在考前搜索各种预测话题，准备相应的“段子”。结果可想而知，分数非但没有提高，反倒因为“明显准备过”而悲剧了！

当然，这并不是说为了避免“明显准备过”，口语就不用怎么准备了。恰恰因为这样，考生更应该在平时加强口语练习，真正提高自身的口语运用能力，凭借高能斩获高分！此外，但凡考试就一定有它的规律，口语考试也不例外。如果能在高能的基础上，再掌握一定的规律和技巧，无疑将是锦上添花！这也成为笔者提笔创作本书的初衷。

如今，《9分达人雅思口语真题还原及解析2》终于要跟大家见面了。距离“9分达人口语系列”第一本的出版，历时良久，真可谓“五年磨一剑”。可以说，本书是笔者对过去5年雅思口语题库研究总结的成果，在编排上主要具有以下几大特色：

一、99%覆盖2013年—2017年雅思口语题库

越是近期出现的考题越能够体现当下考试的趋势，本书所收录的考题，无论Part 1还是Part 2，均为近年高频考题，对未来即将参加考试的考生来说，含金量之高不言而喻。此外，本书收录Part 1共108个话

题，Part 2 共 248 个考题，毫不夸张地说，本书 99% 覆盖了近 5 年的雅思口语题库。从这点上来讲，作为雅思口语的必备书籍，本书理应成为首选之一。

二、分类答题拯救“无话可说”

在雅思口语考试中，Part 1 和 Part 3 同属一种考试模式，即考官提问，考生立刻回答。除了同属问答题模式之外，这两部分都需要考生能迅速给出一个有逻辑的答案。本书 Chapter 3 将 Part 1 和 Part 3 常出现的问题划分为 8 大类，主要围绕各类的答题思路，从逻辑框架入手，让考生知道面对不同的题型分别应当运用什么样的策略去回答，不仅清晰还有逻辑。在掌握了这些策略之后，考生可通过 Chapter 4 分类汇总之后的 Part 1 高频考题进行充分的练习，直至自然而然脱口而出！

三、“考生版” *VS.* “考官版”，两种思路轻松备考

作为雅思口语考试的重头戏，Part 2 也是考生需要重点拿下的部分。本书 Chapter 5 将 Part 2 分为“人物 & 动物类”“地点类”“事件类”“物品类”“抽象 & 媒体类”这五大类，各类之下又分为两大版块，即“考生版”和“考官版”（两者区别详见 Chapter 5“使用指南”）。其中，“考生版”所提供的范文在 6.5—7.5 分，难度适合广大考生，而“考官版”的范文则由英籍雅思认证考官提供，主要针对目标分数 6.5 以上的考生。这两大版块采取了两种完全不同的备考思路，相信总有一款适合你！最后不得不提的是，我们邀请了雅思考官对“考生版”的范文进行了针对性点评，让考生能够迅速地对号入座，及时发现自身存在的不足。

四、从考官的角度解读出题思路

显然，对于目标分数 6.5 以上的考生来说，不光要“吃透”并活学活用 Chapter 3 中所提到的“8 大问答题解题策略”，还需要对本书 Chapter 6“Part 3 考官提问的五大角度”进行一个巩固。毕竟，Part 3 不像 Part 1 和 Part 2 那样有“题库”的支撑，这部分考官出题会比较随意，因此光知道怎么回答还不够，还需要了解考官是从什么角度提出这些问题的。此外，每个角度之下又会有一些细分，每道题目均由英籍雅思考官提供“标准答案”，这些回答无论从思路、句法还是用词方面，都有值得学习之处。请认真研究，“疯狂地”进行练习，笔者不提倡全段背诵，但提倡“挪为己用”哦！

五、完整配套练习，随学随练，全面提升“口语力”

本书的每个小节都设有“拓展练习”这一版块，旨在让考生将自己所学策略、方法甚至好词好句等真正运用起来，根本性地提高自身英语运用能力。因此，要想真正提高自身的“口语力”，就从现在开始不厌其烦地操练起来吧！

最后，真心希望广大读者能通过对这本书的学习切实地提高口语的运用能力，那将是编者最大的欣慰！另外，本书虽经多次编辑和审校，但难免会有疏漏之处，还望读者进行指正。对于本书写作过程中给予编者极大鼓励和帮助的各位朋友和学生，在此一并表示衷心的感谢！

编者

2017 年 11 月

Contents 目录

Chapter 1 British Council 这样解读雅思口试

1. 雅思口试流程介绍 …… 003
2. 雅思口试“四大”要求 …… 004

Chapter 2 考生关心的那些事儿

1. 雅思口试常见 Q & A …… 009
2. 雅思口试不可不知的 Myth …… 012
3. 雅思口语加分小 Tips …… 016
4. 雅思口语错误大集合，看看你中枪了没? …… 017

Chapter 3 分类答题拯救“无话可说”

1. 喜好类 …… 025
2. Wh+How often 类 …… 028
3. 预测类 …… 033
4. 观点类 …… 035
5. Type of Questions 类 …… 039
6. 对比选择类 …… 043
7. 重要性类 …… 047
8. 大群体类 …… 050

Chapter 4 Part 1 高频话题分类汇总

1. 名字 …… 057
2. 学习或工作 …… 058
3. 家乡 & 住所 …… 073
4. 食物 & 烹饪 & 家务活 …… 083
5. 交通 & 交通方式 & 噪音 …… 092
6. 假期 & 周末 …… 100
7. 休闲 & 娱乐 & 运动 …… 104
8. 爱好 & 艺术 …… 115
9. 亲朋好友 & 邻居 & 名人 …… 130
10. 时间管理 & 日常作息 …… 138
11. 购物 & 时尚 …… 151

12 媒介 & 电子产品 & 社会交往 166
13 自然 & 人文环境 187
14 聚会 & 礼物 201
15 工具类 207
16 抽象类 212

Chapter 5 Part 2 段子手养成记

1 使用指南 219
2 人物 & 动物类 222
考生版 222
考官版 248
3 地点类 283
考生版 283
考官版 300
4 事件类 321
考生版 321
考官版 362
5 物品类 390
考生版 390
考官版 411
6 抽象 & 媒体类 425
考生版 425
考官版 451

Chapter 6 Part 3 考官提问的五大角度

1 国人的喜好及其选择趋势 477
2 社会的趋势：过去、现在和将来 486
3 两者的对比 492
4 对现象、问题或人的看法 501
5 问题或现象产生的原因和解决办法 503

附录 1：雅思口语官方评分标准（中英文对照版） 508
附录 2：Part 2 本书所收录题目一览 512

Chapter 1

British Council 这样解读雅思口试

1. 雅思口试流程介绍
2. 雅思口试“四大”要求

1 雅思口试流程介绍

雅思口语考试是通过考生与考官一对一的交流对考生的英语口语水平进行考查。考官将在口语考试全程对考生的表现进行评分。该考试分为三个部分，考生可以以此使用不同的口语表达技能。此外，考试的全程将被录音。

Part 1 Introduction and interview 简介以及问答

- **考试时间：**4—5 分钟
- **考试形式：**首先考官会先向考生进行自我介绍，并核对考生的身份，确保考生没有带任何电子设备进入考场。比如他（或她）会问“What's your name?”“Can I see your identification?”之后就进入到正式考试的第一部分，考试的形式是一问一答，内容主要围绕考生身边熟悉的话题（如朋友、兴趣或者天气等）展开（在本书 Chapter 4 中会详细解读）。这部分主要考查考生的日常交流能力，问题比较基础，就像日常的聊天一样，考生可以把该部分当成一个热身，轻松应对即可。

Part 2 Personal long-turn 个人陈述

- **考试时间：**3—4 分钟
- **考试形式：**第一部分结束后，考官会提示考生进入第二部分，这部分要求考生作个人陈述。考官会在一本 A4 纸大小的题库本里翻出一张话题卡，话题主要分成五大类，包括“人物 & 动物类”“地点类”“事件类”“物品类”“抽象 & 媒体类”（在本书 Chapter 5 中会详细解读）。一般而言，每个话题之下会有 4 个答题要点。根据提示，考生有 1 分钟的准备时间，可以用考官提供的铅笔和草稿纸做笔记。准备时间过后，考官会提示 time is up，然后让考生根据话题卡的要点答题 1—2 分钟。有时候，考官会根据话题再提问 1—2 个问题（rounding-off questions）作为 Part 2 的结束语。这部分考查考生能否具备就一个特定的话题进行展开陈述的能力，能否恰当地运用语言和连贯地组织自己的观点。

Part 3 Two-way discussion 双向讨论

- **考试时间：**4—5 分钟
- **考试形式：**像 Part 1 一样，以问答的形式进行。跟 Part 1 不同之处在于，考官和考生将对第二部分中涉及的话题进行讨论，讨论的内容更加深入和抽象，比如有关社会、自然、生态，对考生的表达要求也会高一些（在本书 Chapter 6 中会详细解读）。这部分考查的是考生表达和论述以及辩证思维、深入思考的能力。

整场雅思考试的口语部分会持续 11—14 分钟，为用时最短的一个项目。那在这么短的时间内，考官如何检验出考生的口语水平呢？雅思考试的口语部分到底是怎么评分的呢？接下来，我们来看看雅思口语考试的评分标准。

2 雅思口试“四大”要求

雅思口语考试的评分标准由以下四个部分组成：

- Fluency and Coherence 流利度与连贯性
- Lexical Resource 词汇资源
- Grammar Range and Accuracy 语法多样性及准确度
- Pronunciation 发音

有的考生道听途说，以为穿性感一点、内容新鲜劲爆一点、乔装得幼嫩一点，考官就会兴奋、动情，分就会高一点，其实并不然！雅思口语考试只会严格按照上述四个标准评分。当然，因为考试比较主观，印象分多少还是有的，所以礼貌自信的举止、自然的身体语言和声情并茂的演绎能帮到你不少。接下来，我们来看看各个分数段具体的“四大”要求[①]。

5 分裸奔版

1. 流利度与连贯性：只能在简单交流时保持流利，在相对复杂的交流中经常出现卡壳、自我修正等不流畅的情况；只会重复使用某些“连词”和“话语标记词”。

2. 词汇资源：能用有限的词汇量进行交流，会尝试使用“同义转换或转述”。

3. 语法多样性及准确度：能保证简单的句子结构有相当的准确度，但使用的复杂句法十分有限，并经常出错以至于影响句意理解。

4. 发音：只掌握有限的发音规则，发音的不准确或不清晰有时会影响考官对考生所说内容的理解。

5 分之所以被称为“裸奔版”，是因为这是大多数中国考生裸考雅思口语的水平。从评分细则可以看出，只要能在大多数情况下运用英语进行基本交流即可，哪怕在使用过程中会出现许多错误和不当。

① 本书提供了“雅思口语官方评分标准”的中英文对照版，详见附录 1。

6 分标配版

1. 流利度与连贯性：整体基本流利，卡壳不多，回答长度适中；回答与题目要求一致，整体连贯，能使用一系列“连接词”及“话语标记词”。

2. 词汇资源：有足以详尽讨论各种话题的词汇量，虽然有时使用不当但意思表达清晰，且有展现“同义转换或转述”的能力。

3. 语法多样性及准确度：有复杂的句子结构，语法错误不多并且不影响句意理解。

4. 发音：掌握基本的发音规则，发音的不准确不影响理解。

6 分之所以被称为“标配版”，是因为它无论在哪一个评分标准里都强调“有”——只要“有”那么一两次达到评分标准里的要求，让考官明白你是知道那么一回事儿的就可以了。像标配那样“该有的都有了”，尽管有些不恰当或者不准确，都可以包容。

7 分豪华版

1. 流利度与连贯性：整体流利，能毫不费力地把回答说长；回答与题目要求一致，整体连贯，能灵活使用“表示逻辑关系的连词”和“话语标记词”。

2. 词汇资源：能充分展示与话题相关的词汇量并保证相当准确度，能自如地“同义转换或转述”，能使用“不被滥用的表达”和“地道俚语”。

3. 语法多样性及准确度：能够灵活多变地使用复杂的句子结构，能经常说出没有语法问题的句子。

4. 发音：掌握基本的发音规则，并能够展示大量正面的发音特征。

7 分口语既然是“豪华版”，它的要求就不再停留在“有”的层面，而是要达到“好”，对错误和不恰当的容忍度也大大降低。在每一个评分标准里，都要求不仅“有”展现这种能力，还要“灵活运用”“充分展示”和“出错少”，要求更为严苛，同时也更接近一个 native speaker 的水平。

8 分逆天版

1. 流利度与连贯性：非常流利连贯，只有少许卡壳。

2. 词汇资源：能精确、灵活使用丰富的词汇量，能熟悉地使用“不被滥用的表达”和“地道俚语”虽然偶有不恰当的情况，能出色地展现“同义转换或转述”的能力。

3. 语法多样性及准确度：能灵活使用大量复杂的句子结构，绝大部分句子能做到完全没有语法问题。

4. 发音：能展现大量优秀的发音特征，母语的口音只有细微的影响，基本不影响理解。

如果你口语得 8 分，那你就“逆天”啦！ 8 分的要求比 7 分更为严苛，基本和 native speaker 无差。

Chapter 2

考生关心的那些事儿

1. 雅思口试常见 Q&A
2. 雅思口试不可不知的 Myth
3. 雅思口语加分小 Tips
4. 雅思口语错误大集合，看看你中枪了没？

1 雅思口试常见Q&A

考试前你可能会疑惑

Q 口语考试的考试目的到底是什么?

A 为什么很多学校都设置了雅思口语的单项得分要求?因为它要确保你的沟通能力。所以口语考试到底考什么,是考查你的知识面吗?当然不是!口语考试考查的是你的沟通表达能力。Part 1 主要是检验你出国留学能否正常地和 native speakers 沟通;Part 2 主要是考查你出国学习中,能否单独做一个 presentation;Part 3 则是检测你能否在课堂上正常地进行小组讨论。因此考生们要注重的是提高能力而不是单纯地记段子。

Q 口语考试的考试时间是怎么安排的?

A 首先,我们来看看雅思考试官方网站的解释:"口语考试可能安排在笔试前一周至笔试后一周的任意一天,但尽量会安排在笔试当天下午或笔试次日全天。"所以,可能有的口语考试会在笔试当天,也有的口语考试是在笔试前三天或者四天。目前,口语考试提供预约时间服务,我们可以提前去官网预约自己心仪的考试时间。当然,并不是说一定会安排到你选择的时间去考口语,但还是有很多考生可以选中时间。如果没有选择,系统会随机分配。准考证大概在考试前十天就可以查询。提醒各位一定要提前检查准考证,确保不要错过自己的口语考试。

Q 我可不可以买到答案?

A 很多时间不多又希望不努力就能拿高分的考生看到网上说有卖答案的就蠢蠢欲动。其实,雅思考题是不可能外泄的,所有考题都是英国寄过来的并且所有经手人都要签字,每次发多少剩下多少都有记录的,所以你能买到的都是所谓的"预测"。想要得高分,还是要依靠自己的努力。

Q 我要不要背模板?

A 上面也说了,口语考试考查的是你的口语能力而不是你的背书能力或你背单词、长难句的能力,所以考生应该做一个整体的提高。基础薄弱的考生,可以参考模板,但不要过度依

赖模板。因为模板里的内容始终都是别人的，一旦在考场上，你突然忘了，你的整体得分就不会很乐观了。

Q 口语考试有固定的题库吗？

A 确实是有的。考过雅思的同学都知道，在雅思口语考试中，特别是Part 2中，考官会从一堆题卡中抽出一道题，让考生作答。从这点我们就能判断，雅思考试是有一个固定题库的。但由于题目数量很多，所以每次考试都是从一定数量的题目中进行抽考，因此考题是有规律可循的。口语考试在每年的1月、5月和9月会换题，即换掉一部分旧题，加入一部分新题。考生可以在网上搜索到最新的题库。

Q 听说内地压分，我该报哪里？

A 现在内地确实存在口语压分状况，特别是一线城市，那里的很多考生口语水平都相当不错，所以我们还面临着与其他口语实力很强的考生对比的问题。我们都知道，评分其实会受到评卷人的影响。那在众多优秀考生的对比下，我们可能拿分也会偏低。但考官是有评分标准可遵循的，因此不会在给分上出现一个太大的偏差。当然，如果你其他几科都过了，就剩下口语在苦命地挣扎，那确实可以试试去越南或泰国等地考试。前提是，其他都过了哦，不然也是浪费精力和财力。

Q 什么是UKVI，我应该报哪个？

A 两个考试难度是一样的，但针对的考试群体不同。UKVI是针对要去英国学习语言课程或者预科的学生，因此UKVI的考试成绩只能用来申请语言课程。而A类是为了给去上大学课程或者研究生课程的学生准备的。记住，UKVI是不能申请专业课程的。所以，同学们自己查好官网或者和中介确定好你要申请的课程。

Q 有没有必要报个辅导班上？

A 因人而异。老师其实就是帮助你简化了整理的过程，因为他们前期已经做好了很多收集整理的工作，在课堂上，他们就是将他们的工作成果直接展示给你，从而帮助你备考。但是如果个人能力很强或者全脱产复习的话，可以尝试自己复习。

考试过程中你会碰到的问题

Q 考试中可以去洗手间吗？

A 考试过程中当然允许上厕所，不过这个行为也会被记录在案。如果你的考分相对来说正常平均，那就没什么大问题。但一旦出现，某一科过高而另外一科很低的情况，你就要被查了。这个时候，你去上厕所这件事可能就会有“参考价值”。

Q 雅思口语考试时听不懂考官提问怎么办？

A 这个时候千万别胡猜乱答一通，你大可以老实告诉考官你没听清楚，礼貌让他再问一遍：“Sorry, I didn't quite catch that, could you please say it again?”要是他再说一遍你还是没听清，那就很有可能问题里面含有生词，影响了你对问题的理解。这时你还可以尝试让考官换个问法：Could you please rephrase the question for me?

Q 考雅思口语的时候，我要模仿英音还是美音？

A 首先要明确，发音这项标准并非是要评判考生的发音带有英音还是美音，而是主要考查考生的发音是否标准，是否容易理解。所以其实无论英音还是美音都无所谓。再者，即使都在英国，但不同的地区也会有不同的口音，你要模仿哪一种英音？

Q 雅思口语考试的成绩是考官当场评分，还是考试过后考官依据录音进行评分呢？

A 口语分数是由考官当场评出的，但考生不能当场向考官询问自己的成绩。而至于录音，只作复议之用。也就是说，如果你不申请复议你的口语成绩，那么这段录音就不会有人去听。

考试后你可能会疑惑

Q 什么时候查成绩？

A 一般是十个工作日之后，但碰到节假日可能时间还会更久。注意留意官网更新。

Q 复议的价值？

A 这个因人而异，首先确定自己的水平，确定自己的口语分数确实比实际发挥的水平要低，那复议就是可行的。其次，算一下某一科提高了0.5或者1分对总分有用吗？没用的话，别浪费这一个月时间等待，接着复习再考一次吧。

Q 成绩单怎么拿到？

A 大家最关心的就是如何拿到成绩单了。我们在完成报名后直到笔试结束的五天内，都可以自行登录官方报名网站的个人主页修改成绩单寄送地址。这个地址一定要保证是有效的。然后，在考试成绩公布后的两个工作日就可登陆EMS的官网查询成绩单寄送的状态了。如果成绩单由于地址原因寄送失败而被退回的话，考生也会在两个工作日内收到电子邮件通知，提醒考生登录报名网站个人主页申请成绩单重新邮寄。注意，申请退回邮件重新寄送时，我们是需要支付快递费的。当然，如果你是要将成绩单寄送至你的申请院校的话，可以直接将邮寄地址写成申请的院校地址。

2 雅思口试不可不知的Myth

误把雅思口语考试当成工作面试

有些考生无论被问到什么问题，都喜欢“上纲上线”。不从自我说起，先从贡献说起。比如：

考官 你的专业是？

考生 医学。

考官 为什么学习这个专业？

考生 因为做医生可以治病救人，为国家服务，提高国民身体素质。

考官 你喜欢科学吗？

考生 喜欢，因为学好科学可以增强国家实力，为祖国做贡献。

注意：我们去参加的是雅思考试，不是公务员面试。我们不需要用如此客套的官方语言去回答问题，应该从自我的角度出发去回答问题。

听准问题再回答，答非所问不加分

很多考生在考场一紧张，听到一个关键词就开始说答案，甚至来不及思考一下考官到底问的是什么。以为快速地说，或者说很多就能拿高分，其实不然。回答问题要及时，但不能牺牲答案质量，要围绕问题有效地展开答案。比如：

考官 Why do you think there are so many advertisements now?

考生 I think we have so many advertisements and I can see them on televisions, mobile phones and newspapers.

考官 Do you think children should know how to share things with others?

考生 In China, many children don't like to share things with others because most of them are the only child in their family. So in their family, they don't need to share anything with others.

注意：尽管你回答了，但答非所问对你拿分也没什么帮助。我们要先确定问题类型和问题考点，然后正面出击给出回答。

“积极向上”的答题方式

回答问题，中国考生总喜欢流露积极向上的一面，以为这样能博取考官好感。所以我们的回答方式越来越趋于一致，比如：

考官 你喜欢你的家庭吗？

考生 特别喜欢，因为我有个很幸福的家。我们家人都互相照顾，互相关心。彼此为对方考虑。

考官 你喜欢你的专业吗？

考生 我很喜欢我的专业，因为我的专业很有发展前景，同时我还能学会很多技术，它丰富了我的知识，增强了我的眼界。

考官 你喜欢你的城市吗？

考生 我非常喜欢，因为我的城市非常美。有很多好吃的，有非常便利的交通，还有很多好的就业机会。

注意：考官并不会因为你有个好家庭，你爱你的城市，你爱你的专业而给你满分，相反，他会因为你的答案很无聊而听不下去。不要再使用这些已经被用烂了的模板套路。这些话考官可能背得比你还熟。所以，尝试回答你的真实情况，反而会让考官觉得你的回答很有意思。记住，雅思考试不是人品考试。

文化展示不会自带亮点

我们和外国人聊天的时候，特别喜欢展示出与我们文化相关的东西，以为这样就可以吸引考官的注意。比如：

考官 你最喜欢的运动是什么？

考生 乒乓球，我们的国球。

考官 你最喜欢的食物是什么？

考生 饺子，我们中国的传统美食。

考官 你喜欢去什么地方？

考生 北京长城。

注意：在外国人不了解中国的情况时，你分享这些文化相关的知识，考官会觉得有趣。可是在无数人说了无数次的时候，这些答案就变得很让人崩溃了。

强硬翻译，忽略文化差异

很多考生把自己脑袋中想表达的东西强硬直译过来，但其实，在不同的文化下，这样的翻译可能会造成误解。比如：

我们要保护别人的面子。	We need to protect others' faces.
家里有关系的人可以帮我。	My family member who has relationship can help me.
我觉得我跳舞跳得不好。	I think I can't dance well.

注意：由于我们文化上带来的差异，我们在翻译的时候一定要站在西方人的角度，给考官解释清楚我们是什么意思。不要理所当然地以为他们都懂。

雅思口语不等于调查问卷

很多考生总把雅思口语考试当成调查问卷来做，回答完 yes 和 no 就完事了。但其实，考官看重的不是你的观点，而是你展开话题和论证观点的能力。比如：

考官 Do you like music?

考生 Yes.

考官 Why?

考生 Just like it.

注意：事实上考官在意的不是 what 而是 how，你要展示给考官的是你的沟通能力。

不要忽悠考官

当你遇到难题，说一些没有实际意义的 fillers（填补思考的间隙的词语）是一个争取思考时间的好办法。但是要注意的是不能过度使用，比如，通篇都在使用“Well, you know...”或者“It is an interesting/difficult question”。尽管这可以润色口语化效果，但考官毕竟想听到的还是你对这个问题的真实看法。

不要和考官“套近乎”

有些考生为了表现对考官的重视，一进来就开始评价考官，比如：

考生 Wow, I like your hair style./I like your T-shirt.

考生 Hey, you look so tired.

注意：你和考官不是朋友关系，不要在初次见面的时候，就开始评头论足。你以为你在表达关心，其实反而引起考官反感。

3 雅思口语加分小 Tips

主动出击：用外国人的文化习惯打招呼

大家都知道，外国人见面打招呼会问："How are you?/ How's it going? " 这和我们中国人喜欢问"你吃饭了吗"是一样的。可是如果外国人用中文问我们"你好吗"，就略显奇怪了。所以，我们一定要学会站在对方的文化角度去沟通。见到考官，勇敢地 say hi，然后问一句："How are you doing?"

想得高分，看演技

多数的考生看到雅思考官都会感到很紧张，不敢直视考官。其实大家可以不把这次英语对话当作是在考试，而是想着它只是提供一个平台让我们和老朋友叙旧，就会自然很多。其次，光是自然还不够，我们还要"绘声绘色"。这个时候就要考验大家的演技了，一定要在该强调的地方，放慢速度，加强语气。然后搭配手势和表情，让考官也"入戏"。

不要背诵

不要以为把准备的答案一字不漏地在考场上说出来就是完美，其实不然。千万不要让考官觉得你有背诵的嫌疑，这样他会觉得这不是你真正的水平，从而把分数打低。当你在考场中遇到准备过的题目时，尽可能呈现得自然——语速正常、适当停顿，再加一些思考的痕迹，力求让考官相信你是在临场发挥。

细节决定成败

考生在描述的时候，习惯给出堆积观点，而忽略了细节和事例的论证。比如说，描述一个人的特征时，很多考生只会罗列形容词，比如：He is handsome, friendly, outgoing and hard-working. 与其这样，还不如只挑一个点进行细节的描述，比如在论证一个人 hard-working 的时候，可以说：He works over 10 hours a day; he is willing to stay up for his work; he goes over textbook again and again before exam. 注意给出充分的细节，让考官能脑补画面，这才是上策。

4 雅思口语错误大集合，看看你中枪了没？

单词常犯错误

不恰当的单词使用

Play

很多考生在表达“玩”的时候，脑海中第一个单词就是 play，比如：play WeChat（玩微信），play with my friends（和我的朋友玩），play yoga（玩瑜伽），play cats（玩猫咪），play my iPhone（玩我的苹果手机）。但考官在听到这些词的时候，会觉得莫名其妙。其实，正确的说法应该是：use WeChat，hang out with my friends，do Yoga，play with cats，play on my iPhone (or play phone games)。

Make *VS.* Cook

在表示“做蛋糕”“做饼干”“冲咖啡”或“泡茶”时，大家习惯用 cook a cake or cook coffee。正确的动词应该是 make，如：make coffee、make a cake、make cookies、make a cup of tea。这里还需要注意的是 cook 在作名词时就有“厨师”之意，很多考生会习惯在动词后加 er 表示一类人，比如把厨师说成 cooker，但 cooker 是指“炊具”，咱们生活中熟悉的电饭煲，英文关于它的正确表达正是 rice cooker。

Make *VS.* Do

这也是非常容易弄错的两个词。比如在表示“做决定”“做计划”的时候，大家习惯用 do a decision 和 do a plan。但正确的动词其实还是 make，比如：make a decision 和 make a plan。

Forget *VS.* Leave

我把帽子忘在屋里了。

I forgot my hat in the house.（×）

I left my hat in the house.（✓）

如果一定要用 forget 的话，可以用 forget to do 表达“忘记做某事”，可以用 I forgot to take it./I forgot to bring it with me. 而 leave 则表示“具体的事物被落下了”。

Borrow *VS.* Lend

“向别人借东西”用 borrow，比如：borrow some books from library。但当你表示“把自己的东西借给别人”时则使用 lend，比如：No one would lend him the money。

Spend *VS.* Cost

I cost 1,000RMB on that watch.（×）

spend 的主语是人，是指“人花费了多少钱或者时间做某事”，而 cost 的主语是东西，“东西花费了人多少钱”。

正确的用法是：It cost me 1,000RMB on that watch./I spent 1,000RMB on that watch.

Learn *VS.* Study

study 是“钻研、研究”，例如：study a language 指的是“研究语言”。但我们一般想表达的是学习语言，而 learn 才是指“学习某个动作、技巧或者语言”。所以我们才使用 learn a language，常见的固定短语有 learn to do sth.。在这里需要注意 teach/learn knowledge 是典型的中式英语，“学习知识”的正确表达是 acquire/gain knowledge。

价钱很高 / 低 *VS.* 价钱很昂贵 / 便宜

The price is too expensive/cheap.（×）

The price is too high/rather low.（✓）

提到商品时我们说 expensive 或 cheap，而价格只要说 high 或 low 就行。

不地道的单词使用

My home

在描述地点时，大部分考生喜欢用 near my home，而“我家”更地道的表达方式是 my place。

My English is poor.

Part 2 里面有一道题叫 Describe a time you use a foreign language to communicate，同学们想表达自己的英文并不是很好的时候，习惯用 My English is poor。但是外国人都不用 poor 这个词来形容语言没学好。地道的说法是：My English is not that good，但这里建议大家自信一点，不要去强调自己英语不好。

顺便提一句，很多考生习惯用 oral English 来表示英语口语。oral English 并不能表示 spoken English。在英文里面，oral 更多的是表示跟口腔有关。口语更多的是用 spoken English 或者 speaking English 来表示。

Suitable

想要表示“合理的、合适的”，很多同学第一反应就是 suitable。比如想表达“合适的价格”，就用 suitable price；合适的时间，就用 suitable time。但其实，suitable（合适的、相配的）比较常见的用法是以否定的形式出现在告示或通知上，例如：下列节目儿童不宜。(The following program is not suitable for children.) 因此，在表示“价格合理”时应该使用 reasonable/affordable，在表达“时间合适”时，直接说“Wednesday works for me”。

发音常犯错误

雅思口语考试官方评分标准中有一项为 Pronunciation（发音），所以很有必要来看一下我们中国考生在发音上出现的一些问题。如果大家有犯以下错误的话，就需要好好练习去改正发音；如果这些错误都能够成功改正的话，恭喜你，你离理想成绩又近了一步。

易混音

[i:] 和 [i]

长短音无法分清，尤其在雅思口语中描述一个海边的地方或者靠近水岸的地方时，考生发 beach [bi:tʃ] 的音经常像 bitch [bɪtʃ]，这就会引起很多笑话了。再如：Are you living here? (你住这儿吗？)，考生习惯于以 [li:v] 替代 [liv]，因而原句被说成：Are you leaving here? (你要离开这儿吗？)

[u:] 和 [ʊ]

这两个音最具有代表性的是 fool 和 full，在想要表示“我吃饱了”(I'm full [fʊl]) 的时候，考生因为混淆，经常发成 I'm fool [fu:l]，说“我很愚蠢”。还有很多同学认为“oo”一定发长元音 [u:]——这也是误区。其实我们生活中常用的单词如 good、cook、book、look 发的都是短元音 [ʊ]。

[f] 和 [v]

这两个咬唇音也是考生频频踩的雷区，尤其是发 [v] 的时候不会咬唇，导致发出的音像 [w]，比如说 very 如果发音不咬唇，就会变成 wary，意思就完全变了。

[θ] 和 [ð]

这两个音是最大的雷区，考生必须重点练习，在发这两个音的时候，请大家把舌头伸出嘴巴并用牙齿咬住你的舌头，之后再送气发音，发 [θ] 的时候声带不振动，发浊辅音 [ð] 声带振动。很多同学在发“I think”的时候舌头没咬住就变成了 I sink（我下沉）。

重读

有一些单词在作不同的词性时重读音节并不相同，这就需要大家进行单独记忆，比如：present ['prezənt] 作名词表示“礼物”；而作动词时读音为 [prɪ'zent]，表示“颁发、馈赠”，重音则移到了后面的音节上。

注意：同一个单词，表达不同意思的时候发音也会不同。比如：live 在发成 [lɪv] 的时候是有“居住、生存”等意，但当发音为 [laɪv] 时则作形容词，表示“活的、生动的、实况转播的、精力充沛的”；tear 作名词读 ['tɪə]，而作动词时则读成 ['tɛ:]。

模仿是提升大家语音的最好方法，希望大家平时能多跟读模仿，把语音抓牢。

语法常犯错误

“男女不分”

× I would like to describe my best friend Amy. She's quite tall. He has long black straight hair and her eyes are bright.

这种错误十分常见，因为中文是表意文字，表示男女的人称代词都是一个“ta”，除非写出来，否则无法判断代词指代人物的性别。而英语是表音文字，它会通过音和形来表达性别概念，人称代词的使用存在着明显的性别之分，所以千万别让人以为忽男忽女的 Amy 是“雌雄同体”哦。

正确的句式：

✓ I would like to describe my best friend Amy. She's quite tall. She has long black straight hair and her eyes are bright.

There be 句型

× There have a beautiful park near my house.

当想要表达“那里有”的时候，很多考生会第一时间想到 There be 句型，但是在使用的过程中受中文思维的影响，部分考生会“简单粗暴”地用“there have”表示“那里有”，从而造成语法错误。

正确的句式：

✓ There is a beautiful park near my house.

但是，不是所有“There has/have”连接出现的句子都是不合语法规范的，比如：There has been a change of plans. 不过这里的 has 不是作实义动词表示“拥有”，而是表示现在完成时态，是个没有实义的助动词。

“没有”现象

× I haven't a car.

句子意思是“我没有车”。然而当我们用“have”作实义动词表示“拥有”的一般状态时，它的否定形式应该是在前面加助动词 don't。而“haven't”却表示现在完成时的否定“还没有……”。如“I haven't finished my homework yet”表示“我还没完成作业”。

正确的句式：

✓ I don't have a car.

双谓语

× I'm come from China.

I have a friend is beautiful.

永远切记，一个主句只能有一个谓语！上述句子都出现了两个谓语：be 动词作谓语，实义动词“come”和“have”作谓语。

正确的句式：

✓ I'm from China. / I come from China.

I have a friend who is beautiful.

“掉 s”现象

× He love me.

You will find many type of public transport in developed cities.

中国考生普遍会存在的一个现象，那就是各种“掉 s”，其中包括表示复数的“s”和第三人称单数的“s”。

正确的句式：

✓ He loves me.

You will find many types of public transport in developed cities.

不能连用的连词

× The reason why I like Jay Chou is because he's a talented person.

Because I know myself best, so I tend to buy things for myself.

Although the weather is terrible, but I still want to go out with my friends.

有些连词不能连用，否则会造成成分多余，因为一个连词足以构成完整的句意。比如 why 和 because，because 和 so，although 和 but 互相都不能连用。

正确的句式：

✓ The reason why I like Jay Chou is that he's a talented person.

I like Jay Chou because he's a talented person.

Or I know myself best, so I tend to buy things for myself.

Or I tend to buy things for myself because I know myself best.

Although the weather is terrible, I still want to go out with my friends.

Or The weather is terrible but I still want to go out with my friends.

修饰地点的定语从句

× I live in Guangzhou, where is a modern city.

很多考生一看到广州是一个地点就想用“where”引导定语从句。但其实首先 where 引导定语从句，并不引导非限制性定语从句。其次，其含义相当于“介词 + which”结构，在句中作地点状语，例如：Guangzhou is the place where (in which) I was born。而在上面错句当中，Guangzhou 这个先行词是名词，在从句中作主语，因此应该用 which 来引导。

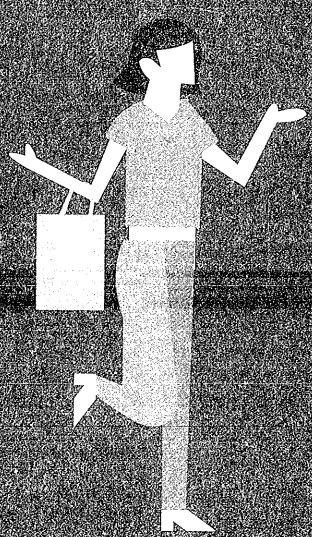
正确的句式：

✓ I live in Guangzhou, which is a modern city.

Chapter 3

分类答题拯救“无话可说”

1. 喜好类
2. Wh+How often 类
3. 预测类
4. 观点类
5. Type of Questions 类
6. 对比选择类
7. 重要性类
8. 大群体类



在雅思口语考试中，Part 1和Part 3同属一种考试模式，即考官提问，考生立刻回答。除了都属于问答题模式之外，这两部分都需要考生能迅速给出一个有逻辑的答案。但Part 1和Part 3的区别是什么呢？Part 1是围绕着考生自身情况来提问的，比如“你喜欢吃巧克力吗？”“你通常用电脑做什么？”它作为一个chat部分主要考查考生的日常沟通能力，考生只需要直截了当、流畅地回答考官，如同用中文聊家常一样，自然流畅，避免答非所问即可。而Part 3是Part 2话题的相关延展，问题会偏社会类，要求考生做到贴合题目，表述清楚。

Part 1对于考生来说，难度较低，答案相对来说也不需要那么复杂，2—3句话回答清楚自身情况即可。而Part 3的答案则需要我们进行一个快速的思辨后给出，答案的长度一般在5句话左右，同时，给出的答案需要有一定深度。

虽然，Part 1和Part 3在回答的深度上有所区别，但常出现的题目类型及回答上的逻辑基本是一致的。本章，笔者主要围绕答题思路，从逻辑框架入手，让大家对问题的回答方式有初步认识，即如何回答可以使答案清晰且有逻辑。记住，不要被答题思路限制住，这些答题思路旨在教大家如何有逻辑地回答问题，只是抛砖引玉。

对于口语要求6.5分以下的考生，需要将备考重点放在Part 1和Part 2上，一般Part 3部分如果能保证不跑题且逻辑清晰即可。但对于7分及以上的考生，就需要从内容上对Part 3进行一个巩固，在看完本章之后，需要对本书“Chapter 6 Part 3考官提问的五大角度”这一章进行更深入的学习。

1 喜好类

常见问法

1. Does sb. like...?
2. Is sb. interested in...?
3. Does sb. enjoy doing...?
4. What kind(s) of...does sb. like?
5. What is sb.'s favourite...?

题型分析

这类题型通常在雅思口语考试的 Part 1 和 Part 3 中都有出现。当这类题目出现在 Part 1 时，通常就生活中会接触到的某种事物或某话题，考官会问“你是否喜欢或（更）喜欢什么样的”，常见问法中的 sb. 特指考生本人。但出现在 Part 3 时，可能不单单是想问考生是否喜欢，而是问“你们国家的（某部分）人是否喜欢或（更）喜欢什么样的”（详见本章“大群体类”），常见问法中的 sb. 则变成了“people in your country”。提问的方式也有可能不仅仅是上述常见的问法，而是会间接地去问，比如“Is...popular in your country?”等。

解题思路

在回答上，我们一定要秉承“直接明了”的回答方式。首先，直接回答你是否喜欢或你（更）喜欢什么。其次，解释你的主要理由是什么。当然，如果这种问题出现在 Part 1，那么前面的两个步骤已经满足了笔者所说的“直接明了”这一要求。但如果这种问题出现在 Part 3，那么可能仅仅直接表明态度并给出相应的理由还不太够，怎么办呢？试着用例子去证明。这种“直接回答 + 原因 + 例子”的回答方式也是 native speaker 偏好的回答方式，通常考试中的多数问题都可以采取这种方式去解决。至于你先说例子还是先回答原因，不必死钻牛角尖，哪种更方便你展开就用哪种。关于这类题型，笔者推荐的思路拓展方式为：A. 直接回答 + 原因（+ 例子）；B. 直接回答 + 例子 + 原因。

“like”的同义替换

be into
be interested in
be fond of
be keen on
be crazy about
be a big/huge fan of
be passionate about
be enthusiastic about

回答方式 A　直接回答 + 原因（+ 例子）

Do you like flowers? (Part 1)

直接回答	Frankly speaking, I'm quite fond of flowers
原因	because flowers are amazing decorations that can provide freshness in my bedroom.
例子	You know, I always buy fresh flowers, such as lilies and tulips, and then I put them into a comely vase which can definitely brighten my bedroom up.

回答方式 B　直接回答 + 例子 + 原因

Do you like chocolate? (Part 1)

直接回答 + 例子	I'm a big fan of chocolate, you know, especially dark chocolate.
原因	Because the ingredients of dark chocolate benefit my heart as well as my blood vessel. Also, I think it has the ability to ward off colds and cure cough.

Tips

在上面这道“Do you like chocolate?”题目中，笔者给出的具体例子是喜欢吃黑巧克力，然后说明了理由，即黑巧克力对身体好。但对于这种客观理由，考生在考场上可能没办法很快想出来，那么这时，如何回答这个问题才能证明“喜欢黑巧克力”呢？这里有一个“个人经历大法”。

个人经历大法：即用个人经历去证明喜欢或者不喜欢。常用回答方式是：who、what、when、where、why，即一句回答中包含人、事、时、地、目的。

比如：In my school, I eat chocolate with my friends every day when we feel tired. 我每天在学校觉得累的时候，会和朋友们分享巧克力。

通过这句话，我们间接证明了自己喜欢吃巧克力。因此，考生在想不到客观理由去支撑自己的观点时，不妨试一下这个“个人经历大法”。

例题：Do you enjoy travelling?

回答范例：Definitely! I do love travelling because I think it is a natural and relaxed way to acquire new knowledge. (个人经历大法) Last summer break, I went to Beijing with my mother, and the tour is really educational. I learnt the history about the Palace Museum and the Great Wall, and I also learnt some famous historical events. Actually, all these things are impressive.

真题重现

1. Do you like sunny days? (Part 1)

I'm crazy about sunny days, and I feel very hyper if it's sunny outside. You know, as an active young person, I like to do sports and take part in outdoor activities on sunny days. Plus, our bones become much stronger if we keep catching some sun.

2. Do you like buying shoes online? (Part 1)

Yup, I am keen on buying shoes online. That is mainly because there are a variety of choices online and it's really easy to search for the pair I like. You know, nearly all my trainers, especially running shoes, were bought from online shops. I love them so much!

3. What kinds of food do you particularly like? (Part 1)

I really love to eat hamburgers, especially cheese burgers. You know, as fast food, it is cheap and easy to take away. What's more, it is delicious. Every day, after I finish my work, I buy a cheese burger because it is the fastest way to fill my belly.

4. What's your favourite vegetable or fruit? (Part 1)

I would say tomato. It could be classified as both vegetable and fruit. I love it because it is sweet and juicy. I can eat it, or I can also cook a lot of different kinds of foods by using tomatoes. Actually, I always eat fried eggs with tomatoes, and my mom is good at cooking it.

拓展练习

1. Do you like sports? (Part 1)
2. Do you like to buy books or borrow books? (Part 1)
3. Do you like collecting things made by hand? (Part 1)
4. What's your favourite type of shoes? (Part 1)
5. What's your favourite TV program? (Part 1)

2 Wh+How often 类

常见问法

1. When/What time...?
2. How often does sb. ...?
3. Where...?
4. Who does sb. usually like to...with?
5. What does sb. usually do...?
6. What...for?/Why...?

题型分析

这类题型在 Part 1 和 Part 3 中都有出现。当这类题目出现在 Part 1 时，通常是围绕考生“你”进行提问，比如“你什么时候……？”“你通常……？”“你和谁……？“你为什么……？”等。但在 Part 3，提问对象就会变得很广泛，通常不再仅仅局限于“你”，而是会涉及社会中的一类群体或者社会中的一个状况进行提问。这类题型在 Part 1 和 Part 3 中提问的本质都是一样的，但在 Part 3 中需要我们用更清晰的框架去说明，因为很多时候这部分的问题我们都无法用一两句简单带过，还是需要进一步细分回答的。

解题思路

不得不说，这类题目覆盖面很广，包含“时、地、人物、事、目的”这五大类题目。对于这类问题，如果直接回答完问题就结束，会导致结构单薄、句式单一。因此，笔者推荐考生从下列方式中选取最容易展开的方式展开：A. 直接回答 + 原因（+ 例子）；B. 直接回答 + 例子 + 原因；C. 直接回答 + 地点 / 人物介绍 + 与问题相关的内容；D.（总述 +）原因 1+ 原因 2；E. 总述 + 情况 1+ 情况 2；F. 总述（+ 举例）+ 最典型的例子 + 原因。

回答方式 A 直接回答 + 原因（+ 例子）

When do you like to sing? (Part 1)

直接回答	I am into singing when I take a shower,
原因	because the sound effect in the bathroom is amazing and it makes me sound like a professional singer.

例子	Every night, when I sing in the bathroom, I could feel the echo and I really enjoy this feel.

Tips

有时我们会遇到“When 类”题目中有明确的限定词限制，比如“When was the first time you ate chocolate? ”那么这种有明确的时间“the first time”限定的情况下，采用刚才讲到的“直接回答 + 原因 + 例子”这种方法更容易展开。但如果没有明确的限定词限制，比如“When do you listen to music?”我们也可以采用“总述 + 情况 1+ 情况 2”的方式展开作答，比如“工作日累了一天晚上喜欢听轻音乐放松，而周末因为常常和朋友在家‘开趴’，比较喜欢听流行音乐和摇滚音乐。”

回答方式 B 直接回答 + 例子 + 原因

How often do you go shopping? (Part 1)

直接回答 + 例子	Frankly speaking, I go shopping quite often, like three times a week, especially for clothes.
原因	You know, even if it's just window shopping, I find it a lot of fun to try on the latest dress in the fitting room.

回答方式 C 直接回答 + 地点 / 人物介绍 + 与问题相关的内容

Where can you (=one) hear loud noise? (Part 1)

直接回答	It is easy for people to hear loud noise on public transport,
地点介绍	you know, like subways or buses.
与问题相关的内容	I bet you know the feeling when you're in a crowded subway. You can hear the cry of the little kids, the sounds of talking on the phone, the shout of someone who is squeezed by others and the sounds of some talk shows which are broadcasted by the customers.

Who do you usually like to hang out with? (Part 1)

直接回答	I prefer to hang out with Amy
人物介绍	who has been my best friend for more than 10 years.
与问题相关的内容	We prefer to go shopping, watch the latest movie or sometimes, play sports together. I have to admit that she is an energetic girl.

回答方式D （总述+）原因1+原因2

Why did you choose to do that type of work (or that job)? (Part 1)

总述	There are many reasons that attracted me to this job.
原因1	Firstly, I really want to apply what I have learnt in university in my job area, so I chose this job and I also don't need to worry about unfamiliar tasks.
原因2	Besides, I believe that it is definitely a promising area, and I can earn money to support myself and my family.

Tips

这里有一点需要考生注意，“Why类”题目其实就相当于“喜好类”没有直接回答的那部分。当考官问你“你为什么……时”，可以转换下思路，其实就是在问你“你喜欢这么做的原因是什么？”所以要求我们在回答时，一定要直接明了，切忌给出一大堆背景，这样很可能会让考官抓不到重点。

或许在往年的考题中，你发现了一些本书并未归类的题型。针对这种情况，一定要学会试着将其转化为我们熟悉的题型，方法如同上述这道原因题。笔者将这种方法称为“题目转换法”。这样，我们同样可以用“喜好类”常用的答题方式解答上述这道原因题，只不过框架里的“直接回答”和“原因”合并了。

例题： Why did you choose to do that type of work (or that job)?

回答范例： Well, the main reason is that it's well-paid and it is the main source of my income, my bread and butter. Thanks to the decent salary, I bought a modern flat and a fancy car in Beijing last year.

回答方式E 总述+情况1+情况2

What do you usually do at the weekend? (Part 1)

总述	Well to be honest, I think I would have to say that it really depends.
情况1	Like, for instance, if I've got a lot of time, then it's quite possible that I will stay with my family or catch up with friends.
情况2	Whereas in contrast, if I'm fairly busy, it's more likely that I will make the most of my weekend to work on my job. You know, I hate unfinished business, so I will get my work done as soon as possible.

Tips

以往考题中有一些题目，并不存在明显的题型标志，比如“do you have...?”针对这种题目，我们之前提到了“题目转换法”，完全可以将这一类型转化为“What 类”题目，比如“Do you have a pet?”我们可以将其转化为“What pet do you have?”当然，在考场上那么短的时间不允许我们进行转换思考，这就要求我们平时练习时尽可能地去思考。学会了这样的分析，你会发现多数题目都是互通的，只要能自圆其说，回答的方式也是十分随意的。

回答方式 F 总述（+ 举例）+ 最典型的例子 + 原因

How do children celebrate birthdays in your country? (Part 3)

总述 + 举例	Frankly speaking, children celebrate their birthdays in many ways such as holding a party with friends, having a big meal with the family members or having a short trip to the nearest city.
最典型的例子 + 原因	But I guess the most popular one is holding a party with friends, because children could have fun together and parents always prepare a birthday cake that they like. And you know, the most important reason is that they can receive many gifts.

Tips

上述回答方式中，其中“最典型的例子”这个形容词描述可以灵活变化，比如“For you, what benefits are there to live in a big city?”这道题目问的是“对你而言，住在大城市有什么好处？”回答时我们的思路可能是“住在大城市有很多好处，比如例子 1、例子 2、例子 3。最大的（/ 最重要的）好处可能是……，之所以这么认为是因为……”。显然，“最典型的”就变为了“最大的（/ 最重要的）”。同样，“How do children celebrate birthdays in your country?”这个回答中的“最典型的”为“最流行的”。再如，“What kinds of housework do you dislike to do?”这道题目问的是“你最讨厌做哪种家务？”显然，“最典型的”又成了“最不喜欢的”这个描述。类似的例子还有很多，这就要求我们在展开作答时一定要灵活处理，甚至上述回答方式中的“举例”也是可以灵活“去留”的。

真题重现

1. When do you listen to music? (Part 1)

To be honest, during the weekdays, I can only listen to the music after work before I go to bed, and I like listening to light music which can help me relax, but during weekends, I prefer to play rock music at night and have a party with my friends.

2. How often do you read? (Part 1)

I'd say I read on a regular basis, like 8 hours a week, especially science fiction. And the reason is that it serves as a good way to free myself from daily busy routine. You know, once I get absorbed in the imaginary story, I will forget all the troubles and worries.

3. What do you usually use your computer for? (Part 1)

I have to say it really depends on the situation. I mean, for example, on weekdays when I'm at school, I tend to use it to look for online reference and doing research, but at the weekends, my computer basically becomes my entertainment. I can spend a whole day surfing the net, playing games and chatting on some social networking software.

4. How do people in your country make friends these days? (Part 3)

Nowadays, there are many ways for Chinese people to make some new friends such as joining in activities and introducing new friends to each other, but I would say the most popular one is meeting some new friends online by using social software because people don't need to talk face to face which can help them feel relaxed when they first meet their friend.

5. Where do old people like to live, city or countryside? (Part 3)

Old people prefer to live in the countryside, you know, it is tranquil, clean and relaxed. Old people who have already retired from work would be better off staying away from the hustle and bustle of the busy urban life. So they can relax, take their time and enjoy the rest of their life.

6. What do family members in your country do together? (Part 3)

Different families may have different preferences. For some of the family, they prefer to eat together because meal time is the happiest hour. They can enjoy the food and chat together. For some families, they may like to watch movies together because they can talk about the movie together and it's great fun. It is also a wonderful time because no one will play on their mobile phone when they watch a movie.

拓展练习

1. How often do visitors come to your home? (Part 1)
2. What do you usually do with your friends? (Part 1)
3. What do you use your smart phone for? (Part 1)
4. When was the first time you ate chocolate? (Part 1)
5. When do you spend time with your family? (Part 1)
6. Where do people in your country like to travel? (Part 3)
7. Why do you think some people strongly dislike playing sports? (Part 3)
8. What are the reasons for the failure of teamwork? (Part 3)
9. Why do young people tend to waste money? (Part 3)
10. Why do most children have a wild imagination? (Part 3)

3 预测类

常见问法

1. Do you want to/Are you willing to...?
2. What is your future plan of...?/What are your plans about...for future?
3. Do you plan to do...?
4. What will...be like in the future?
5. How will...change in the future?
6. Will sb./sth. ...in the future?

题型分析

这类题型通常在 Part 1 和 Part 3 中都有出现。当这类题目出现在 Part 1 时，考官可能会问“你对将来的计划或你是否计划做某事等”，同样只是问你个人将来的计划或打算，如常见问法中的前 3 种问题。但出现在 Part 3 时，多数会问“社会的趋势”，比如“某物以后会怎样发展，会变成什么样子，会不会消失”等，常见问法如上述后 3 种。

解题思路

对于这类询问未来计划的题目，很多考生觉得好像一句话就说完了，不知道如何扩展也不知道如何让答案看起来更丰富。其实想一下，很难有一个计划是可以从头贯穿到尾的。因此，我们可以将这个计划分为短期和长期两种情况来说。我们还可以采用“假设法”，比如，当你说未来打算做什么时，可以假设一下做这个事情会带来的利弊（提示：虚拟语气在这里绝对是个简单又无限加分的语法哦）。总之，笔者推荐采用下列方式展开作答：A.（直接回答 / 总述 +）短期计划 + 长期计划；B. 直接回答 + 假设做了 / 假设没做。Part 1 回答的原则依然是直接明了，两三句话搞定；而 Part 3 则需要我们给出一个有观点的答案了。

回答方式 A（直接回答 / 总述 +）短期计划 + 长期计划

What are your plans for future? (Part 1)

短期计划	In the short term, I need to finish my university courses to get the degree.
长期计划	But in the long run, I want to apply for a master's degree.

What do you imagine people's houses will be like in the future? (Part 3)

总述	It is really hard to predict this because I believe there will be many changes with houses.
短期计划	Speaking in the short term, I think the house will be more electronic and automatic because you know, with the development of the advanced technology, more house devices will be promoted, and we may have electronic robots or curtains.
长期计划	But in the long term, I would say that houses will be built in isolated areas. Maybe some of the houses will be built in the remote area because you know, the air quality in the city is not good and there are also a lot of noise. So considering this, people may want to live in the remote area to improve their life quality.

回答方式B 直接回答 + 假设做了 / 假设没做

Would you want to be a celebrity in the future? (Part 1)

直接回答	I would say, I really want to be a famous person in the future.
假设做了	You know, if I were a super star, I would earn a fortune and I would have many fans who would send me gifts.

Is it necessary to have cinemas in the future? (Part 3)

直接回答	It is always important to have cinemas because it is an important place for people to kill time and enjoy the special effects of some international movies.
假设没做	You know, if we didn't have a cinema, people would lose one of the most interesting entertainment methods. I really think that movie theatres play important roles in our life.

真题重现

1. Do you have a plan to change your job in the future? (Part 1)

Well, currently, I am fond of being a teacher and I believe it is a good way to get more experience. But in the long run, I will change my job because you know, life is short and we had better try some different kinds of things.

2. What kinds of sports would you like to try in the future? (Part 1)

In the short term, I would try table tennis because I think it is a money-saving activity and it brings a lot of benefits to our life; in the long term, I want to try some expensive sports such as golf and scuba diving because they are attractive and challenging.

3. Do you want to be a teacher in the future? (Part 1)

I am not into being a teacher in the future. You know, if I were a teacher, I would wear some

formal clothes such as uniforms every day and I would also teach the same thing year by year. It would be so boring.

4. How do you think the way we eat will change in the future? (Part 3)

I think the way that people eat changes all the time because scientists always come up with some new ideas about the healthy diet. Well, speaking in the short term, the way we eat may first become multicultural because we can get the food from all over the world conveniently, but in the long term, our eating habit will become the same because people may care about their food security and we may only eat safe and healthy food.

5. Do you think cinema will be replaced by DVD in the future? (Part 3)

I don't think cinema will be replaced by DVD in the future because these two are actually totally different things and DVD can't give us the same feeling as what cinema gives, especially for the movies which have special effects. If we only had DVD in the future, it would be boring.

拓展练习

1. Do you think newspapers will be very important to you in the future? (Part 1)
2. Do you want to be a teacher in the future? (Part 1)
3. Are you willing to live in the countryside in the future? (Part 1)
4. How do you think people's reading habits will change in the future? (Part 3)
5. How do you think toys will change in the future? (Part 3)

4 观点类

常见问法

1. Do you think...?
2. Should...?
3. Is that...or...?
4. Is it...for...to do...?
5. What do you think/How do you feel about...?

题型分析

这类题型通常在 Part 1 和 Part 3 中都有出现。当这类题目出现在 Part 1 时，通常以一般疑问句形式呈现，如常见问法中的第 2、第 3 和第 4 种，也可能是直白地问你对某事物的看法，如第 1 种和第 5 种。但出现在 Part 3 时，随意性会很强，考官很有可能以“半开放”的形式去问这个问题，所以问题的形式不再拘泥于上述常见问法。

解题思路

对于这一类询问观点的题目，如果出现在 Part 1，可采取“直接回答 + 原因（+ 例子）”这种方式回答，只要能从自己的角度解释清楚问题就行。但这类题目也会出现在 Part 3，那么如何提高这部分回答内容的质量呢？试着采用“驳论法”。观点类常会问：“……，你觉得是吗？”通常有两种回答，即“对或不对”或“同意或不同意”。这时，就可以采取驳论法，即“先确定自己的观点，给出这么认为的理由，然后驳斥相反的观点，说明相反观点的弊端在哪里”。当然，有一些题目可能没法“分两极”处理，也就是没法用“对或不对”来解释，比如“你觉得小朋友全都应该学画画吗？”这种题目似乎说“全都或全不都”都不太准确，怎么处理呢？可以分情况讨论，即“有艺术天赋且感兴趣的小朋友可以学画画；不擅长又不感兴趣的孩子可以试着去发展他们擅长的那方面”。所以，这类题型笔者推荐考生采取下列回答方式展开作答：A. 直接回答 + 原因（+ 例子）；B. 直接回答 + 原因 + 驳论；C. 总述 + 群体 / 情况 1+ 群体 / 情况 2。

“I think”的同义替换

I am sure that...	I reckon...
I have no doubt that...	It seems to me that...
My view is that...	To be honest/To be frank, ...
Personally, I am standing on the side of...	As far as I'm concerned, ...

回答方式 A 直接回答 + 原因（+ 例子）

Should we eat vegetables every day? (Part 1)

直接回答	I'm sure that people all need to eat vegetables in daily life
原因	because it can provide enough nutrition for our body.
例子	You know, like cabbage, it is a fibre-rich and low-calorie vegetable. It's also rich in essential vitamins such as B-5.

Should there be any restrictions on the tourism industry? (Part 3)

直接回答	There is no doubt that the tourism industry should have some limitations

原因	because these could always make sure that the tourism industry is gaining their profits reasonably.
例子	You know, I have heard many of the travel agencies force people to buy things in some shops which have some benefit relationships with travel agencies. If tourists don't buy things, they won't leave. This is a really bad action and should be forbidden.

回答方式 B 直接回答 + 原因 + 驳论

Do you think there are enough public gardens in your hometown? (Part 1)

直接回答	I believe that we have enough public gardens in our hometown
原因	because it is easy for me to find the nearest uncrowded garden.
驳论	Even though some people believe that our hometown should have more gardens in different districts, it is money-consuming because we don't have so many people to visit them.

Do you think 'success' is the same as making a lot of money? (Part 3)

直接回答	I totally believe that these two should not be regarded as the same thing
原因	because for different people, success has different meanings and earning a lot of money may be just a kind of success of people who want to be the rich.
驳论	Even though some people believe that earning a lot of money means that they are successful, it's really up to how they earn the money. If they get the money by breaking the law, it will be bad.

回答方式 C 总述 + 群体 / 情况 1+ 群体 / 情况 2

Should children learn how to play musical instruments? (Part 3)

总述	To be honest, I have to say it really depends.
群体 1	For students who are interested or talented in music, their spending time in learning and practising instruments are worthwhile. So they are predisposed to learn how to play the guitar or the piano.
群体 2	But you know, for those who can't understand the tempo, melody or tune, forcing them to learn a musical instrument is time-consuming. So it's unnecessary for them to get involved in a music area.

Do you think the Internet has changed people's reading habits? (Part 3)

总述	To be honest, I have to say it really depends.

群体1	For people who are good at using the Internet and electronic devices, the Internet indeed change their reading habits because we have many electronic reading software or electronic books.
群体2	But you know, for those who have no idea with the Internet or who don't like watching computer screens, they prefer to keep reading paper-based materials. At this point, the Internet doesn't change them a lot.

真题重现

1. Should everyone learn swimming? (Part 3)

There's no doubt that people need to be able to swim because it has become a basic survival skill. Nowadays we have many different kinds of water activities so if we have an emergency in the water, it can save our life.

2. Do you think we should protect famous people's privacy? (Part 3)

Personally, I support that we should protect the private life of celebrities because nobody would like to become the centre of gossip. Even though some people believe that famous people should expose everything to the public, it is unfair for them because they have the right to protect their own private lives.

3. Do you think men and women should share housework? (Part 3)

In my opinion, it really depends on who earns money for the family. If it's the man or woman who makes money, it would be unnecessary for them to share the housework because the one who doesn't have a job should do more. But if the two in family both need to work, they are supposed to do the housework together.

4. Do you think everybody is suitable for becoming a teacher? (Part 3)

It is impossible to say that everybody is suitable to become the teacher because being a teacher requires the person to be patient, friendly, serious and knowledgeable. Not everyone can be patient. For example, my sister who is impetuous told me that she can't stand being a teacher because she doesn't know how to teach them in a nice way when these students can't understand some issues.

5. Do you think it is true that some people use gifts to 'pay off' family and friends instead of spending time with them? (Part 3)

I believe that this is a common phenomenon nowadays because people are all busy and sometimes they don't have time to spend with their families and friends. So they may send some gifts to show their concern to them. Even though it is not a good thing and just like you say, this action is like a 'pay off', it would be better to understand them but not just blame them because earning money is hard.

6. Do you think the government should encourage people to make trips overseas? (Part 3)

I think governments should encourage people to make trips overseas because it is really a good way for people from different cultures to communicate with each other and learn from each other. You know, when I travelled to Japan and America, I learnt many local things and their customs. What's more, it is a good way for people to learn new languages.

拓展练习

1. Do you think computers might one day replace handwriting? (Part 3)
2. Do you think there's too much noise in modern society? (Part 3)
3. Do you think children should learn more about handcraft? (Part 3)
4. Do you think most people's working conditions in your country today are better than in the past? (Part 3)
5. Do you think long working hours can have an effect on the family lives of employees? (Part 3)
6. Do you think advice from young people's parents is important? (Part 3)

5 Type of Questions 类

常见问法

1. What types of...?
2. What kinds of...?
3. What sorts of...?
4. What are...?
5. What makes a...?

题型分析

这类题型通常在 Part 1 和 Part 3 中都有出现，但在 Part 3 中出现的频率较高。当出现在 Part 1 时，通常为常见问法中的前四种，而 Part 3 可能会以上述问法中任何一种形式出现。这类问“种类”的题目多数提问的对象都包含很多种类，比如交通工具、户外活动等。我们可以通过举例子将回答内容丰富一下。有一点需要注意的是，Part 1 的题目多数都是针对考生个人提问的，经常会出现“你最喜欢哪种……？”这种问题，回答完全可以转化为“喜好类”题型的回答方式进行，可见题目都是有一定的互通性的。

解题思路

对于这类需要回答“有哪些种类”的问题，千万不要以为简单列举几个词就完事了，因为这样并不能充分展现考生的口语能力，你回答的框架需要更有层次感。不管出现在 Part 1 还是 Part 3，回答的方式基本上是一致的，即“先总述说有很多类，列举几类。然后从中挑取最典型的一类说起，再说一下原因即可”。还有一种简单易行的方式，那就是“先简单总述一下，然后从中挑选两个最典型的并简单说下原因即可”。因此，这类题型笔者推荐考生采取下列回答方式展开：A. 总述（+ 举例）+ 最典型的例子 + 原因；B. 总述 + 最典型的例子及原因 + 其次典型的例子及原因。

回答方式 A 总述（+ 举例）+ 最典型的例子 + 原因

What types of public transport can be found in your city? (Part 1)

总述	Generally speaking, I'd say there is a wide range of public transport in Guangzhou,
举例	such as metro and mobike.
最典型的例子	But the most popular one would potentially be bus,
原因	and I guess that's mainly because it's very convenient and affordable. You know, bus stops can be seen in every corner of the city and the average bus fare in my city is about two yuan for a single journey.

“popular”的同义替换

prevalent　　influential

widespread　　commonly used

What kinds of films do young people (i.e., people aged 15 to 25) like to watch? (Part 3)

总述	In general, the films that are prevalent with young generations are hugely varied,
举例	including action movies and comedies.
最典型的例子	But the most widely-spread film is definitely sci-fi movies,
原因	probably because it is so thought-provoking, which enables youngsters to explore their own world of imagination.

回答方式 B 总述 + 最典型的例子及原因 + 其次典型的例子及原因

What kinds of outdoor activities are most popular in your country? (Part 3)

总述	Well, I guess there are quite a lot of them.
最典型的例子及原因	The most popular one would be plaza dancing, especially for those middle-aged women. I guess that's because it's pretty easy to learn and doesn't require any specific equipment.
其次典型的例子及原因	Also, a number of people enjoy cycling too. After all, it's a good way to work out for all ages.

What kinds of people like city life? (Part 3)

总述	Well, I assume there are a wide range of them.
最典型的例子及原因	Trendy people would be a typical type, since they can have an access to all the fashions and trends in city life.
其次典型的例子及原因	Besides that, wealthy guys are also fond of living in a city, as it provides them the chance to enlarge their business and wealth easily and rapidly.

Tips

“What 类”是一类特殊的题型，因为它既可以算作之前讲过的“Wh+How often 类”题目，又可以看作“Type of Questions 类”题目。

例题：What kinds of movies do you like to watch?

这道题我们既可以把它当作“Wh+How often 类”来回答，回忆一下可行的回答方式：1. 直接回答 + 原因（+ 例子）；2. 直接回答 + 例子 + 原因；3. 总述（+ 举例）+ 最典型的例子 + 原因；4. 总述 + 情况 1+ 情况 2。以第 4 种这种分类讨论法为例，你可以说“我喜欢看很多种电影。什么情况看悬疑电影，什么情况看喜剧电影。”

同时，我们也可以把它看作“Type of Questions 类”题目，可行的回答方式有：1. 总述（+ 举例）+ 最典型的例子 + 原因；2. 总述 + 最典型的例子及原因 + 其次典型的例子及原因。以第 2 种回答方式为例，你可以说：“我喜欢看很多种电影。最喜欢看的类型是悬疑电影，因为……还喜欢看喜剧电影，因为……”

因此，考生们在遇到这类题型时，一定要灵活应对，原则就是哪种更方便你说，哪种更容易说得更多，就用哪种。另外提醒各位，平时一定要尽可能多地练习哦！

真题重现

1. What types of bags do you use? (Part 1)

Well, I tend to use different types of bags in different occasions, like carrying a clutch for party and a duffle for travelling. But I guess the bag I use most in my daily life would be my backpack. It has ample space so I can put almost everything I need in it, such as my textbooks, laptop and coat.

2. What do you think are the benefits of swimming? (Part 3)

I suppose there are a number of advantages. Most importantly, it's a survival skill which may help me out if I am in an emergency. Also, it's a whole-body sport, making it a perfect way to lose weight.

3. What makes a good teacher?/What are the qualities of a good teacher? (Part 3)

I'd say a good teacher is supposed to have loads of qualities like a sense of responsibility and humour. But I guess the most important one should be patience. You know, it's very likely that students would ask you the same question over and over again and you can't lose your temper. Instead, you have to repeatedly explain until they understand.

4. What kinds of materials do people should read? (Part 3)

I guess the material varies from person to person. The fundamental type, I think would be textbooks, which enables us to acquire knowledge. Another inevitable reading material is history for sure. I always think getting to know your own culture is really important, and history provides us a great chance.

拓展练习

1. What kinds of hats do you have? (Part 1)
2. What are the occasions when people give or receive flowers? (Part 3)
3. What makes a good friend? (Part 3)
4. What kinds of people become (or, work as) school teachers? (Part 3)

6 对比选择类

常见问法

1. What is/are the difference(s) between...and...?
2. Is there any difference between...and...?
3. Compare...with...
4. Do...and...have the same attitude towards sth.?
5. How different is...and...?/How do...and...do sth. differently?
6. Does sb. like...or...?
7. Does sb. prefer...or...?
8. Which does sb. prefer/use more often, ...or...?
9. Would sb. want to do...or...?

题型分析

这类题型可分为“对比类”和“选择类”，通常在 Part 1 和 Part 3 中都有出现。

“对比类”，又称“Difference 类”。在 Part 1 出现时，常见的问法为上述第 1 和第 2 种，考官就 Part 1 的某个话题问一下考生这两种事物或方式有什么区别。在 Part 3 出现时，提问方式可能是常见问法前 5 种中的任何一种，甚至更为开放，考官会针对“两种群体、事物或方式”“某事物过去与现在的变化”“两种社会群体在做某事上的区别”等方面让考生进行对比。

“选择类”，又称“Preference 类”。在 Part 1 出现时，常见问法为上述第 6 种至第 9 种，考官就 A 或 B 问考生更喜欢哪一种，相对简单。但出现在 Part 3 时，不再是针对个人，题目中的 sb. 则变为了国家中的某个群体。

解题思路

对于“对比类”题目，都应尽可能将题目中的两方面的优点或缺点都涉及，不要一味地说某一方面好、另一方面不好。因为这样就把“对比类”题目回答成了“选择类”题目，不够全面。对于“选择类”题目，如果是出现在 Part 1，语言能力较弱的考生，可以选择只解释一方面，这样“选择类”题目就被转换成了“喜好类”题目，可以采用“直接回答 + 原因（+ 例子）”，但语言能力较好的考生，笔者还是建议尽可能两方面都能涉及，比如“你为什么选择 A，为什么不选择 B”。总之，针对“对比选择类”题目笔者推荐考生从下列方式中选取最容易展开的方式展开：A. 直接回答 + 原因 + 反面例子；B. 直接回答 + 原因 + 驳论；C. 总述 + 事物 / 方式 1+ 事物 / 方式 2；D. 总述 + 群体 / 情

况 1+ 群体 / 情况 2。其中，“对比类”常采用 C 和 D 两种，而“选择类”可采用 A 和 B 这两种。

“but”的同义替换

while, by/in contrast, however, on the other hand, on the contrary

表达选择偏好的句型

For me, I prefer…

My preference is…

In my opinion, I'd prefer A rather than B.

Personally, I would rather A than B.

I like A better.

回答方式 A 直接回答 + 原因 + 反面例子

Do you prefer living in a house or a flat? (Part 1)

直接回答	In my opinion, I'd prefer to live in a house rather than live in a flat.
原因	That's simply because there is always a big garden outside of the house where I can grow my favourite flowers or throw some parties during sunny days.
反面例子	But if I live in a flat, I will not have enough space to hold a big party at home.

Do people (in your country) prefer to live in cities or in rural environments? (Part 3)

直接回答	Definitely cities. People in my country are aching to stay in mega cities,
原因	probably because the metropolises are much more efficient and well-developed, which allows their dwellers to have a much better education and social welfare.
反面例子	If urbanites live in rural areas, they won't have so many benefits like more advanced means of transportation and a higher prestige education.

回答方式 B 直接回答 + 原因 + 驳论

Do you prefer eating at home or eating out? (Part 1)

直接回答	For me, I prefer eating at home.
原因	The main reason is that I enjoy cooking. Besides, I suppose eating at home could save me lots of money as the ingredients are not that expensive.

驳论	While eating outside is time-saving and convenient, it is too money-consuming. As a student, I can't afford to eat out all the time. Plus, the food outside is not that safe to eat sometimes, you may get a stomachache if you eat out every day.

Do people prefer to live in modern homes or the older-style homes (e.g., from 50 years ago)? (Part 3)

直接回答	I would say an older-style home with modern equipment is a better idea.
原因	Since we all love retro style decorations but never want to suffer from ancient lifestyle. A house with retro design and decoration but modern equipment would perfectly fit our needs.
驳论	While staying in an older-style home would be rather risky, I bet no one would love to spend a year without lights and E-devices.

回答方式 C 总述 + 事物 / 方式 1+ 事物 / 方式 2

What are the differences between emails and letters? (Part 3)

总述	Well, obviously, there are a number of clear differences.
事物 / 方式 1	Writing e-mails is convenient and time saving, you know, you just need to type the words on your computer and click the send button. People will receive it in a couple of seconds.
事物 / 方式 2	But writing letters is more romantic and sincere, because in China, we have an old saying which means your calligraphy could represent yourself.

In your country, are there any differences between schools in the cities and schools in rural areas? (Part 3)

总述	Well, we do have some differences between downtown and uptown schools.
事物 1	Schools in the urban area are normally equipped with more advanced facilities and professional teachers.
事物 2	On the contrary, badly-maintained equipment and less experienced teachers are way more common in uptown schools.

回答方式 D 总述 + 群体 / 情况 1+ 群体 / 情况 2

What's the difference between where you are living now and where you have lived in the past? (Part 3)

总述	Well, there are a number of clear and distinct differences.

情况 1	The place where I have lived was quite dark and narrow. I used to live in a small flat with both of my grandparents and my parents. I didn't have my own bedroom at that time, let alone a study room.
情况 2	While now, I live in a 3-storey house which has got four bedrooms, two bathrooms, one study room and a big terrace. I also have a big garden where I always hold a BBQ party during the summer time.

What are the differences between the sports that old people and the ones that young people do? (Part 3)

总述	Well, undoubtedly, there are a variety of possible differences here.
群体 1	Old people tend to like some relaxing sports, such as golf and plaza dancing.
群体 2	While, on the other hand, young people love challenges so much that they prefer some more active sports, especially those extreme sports like scuba diving or even sky diving.

真题重现

1. Do you prefer to play indoor games or outdoor games? (Part 1)

Well, personally speaking, I prefer playing outdoor games. You know, the indoor space is not enough if I want to play games with a large group of people. Plus, I am an outdoor person. I remember once I played indoor soccer with my friend, it was a total disaster.

2. Do men and women like the same hobbies? (Part 3)

Well, obviously, there are a number of clear differences. Men tend to prefer sport activities such as football or basketball. In contrast, women prefer things like shopping for clothes, watching TV or chatting online.

3. What are the differences of shopping habits comparing men with women? (Part 3)

Well, not surprisingly, there are a number of underlying differences here. Men tend to rush into the store and grab what they need and leave straight away, while women are more likely to spend quite a lot of time in selecting things. The women also enjoy the whole process of shopping, whereas the men just do it because they have to.

4. What's the difference between eating at home and eating in a restaurant? (Part 3)

Oh, I think there are various differences. The first one that comes to my mind would be the wide range of food selections, since restaurants always gives me the opportunities to try food from different countries. As for my dishes cooked by my mum, I have no choice but to eat Chinese meal.

拓展练习

1. Do you prefer taking photos or shooting videos? (Part 1)
2. What's the difference between men and women's preference on colours? (Part 3)
3. Do most people in your country live in an apartment or a house? (Part 3)
4. Do people in your country prefer to travel by car or by train? (Part 3)
5. What's the difference between services in big shops and small shops? (Part 3)
6. How are toys today different to toys of the past? (Part 3)

7 重要性类

常见问法

1. Is...important?
2. Do you think...is important/necessary?
3. Is it important to...?
4. Does sb. attach a lot of importance to...?

题型分析

这类题型通常在 Part 1 和 Part 3 中都有出现，但多数都出现在 Part 3。这里需要注意的是，很多问题会以“Do you think”开头，比如“Do you think it is important to preserve old buildings?”这里的重点应该是后半句“……是否重要”，即“preserve old buildings 重不重要”。因此，回答时重点不要放在“你觉得”上面。

解题思路

要论证题目中关键词的重要性，除了可以正面说明它发挥的作用，也可以反面论证，即假设没有它会出现怎样的后果，或者先说他人观点，再用驳论的方式反驳他人观点。这样不仅使整个论证更充分，也可以增加句式的丰富程度。因此，针对这种题型，笔者建议考生可以采用下列方式展开回答：A. 直接回答 + 原因（+ 例子）+ 假设没有；B. 直接回答 + 原因 + 驳论；C. 直接回答 + 原因 + 特殊情况。不管是在 Part 1 还是 Part 3，所遇到的题目哪种更容易展开就用哪种。

回答方式A 直接回答 + 原因（+ 例子）+ 假设没有

Are computers important to you? (Part 1)

直接回答	Definitely yes! My computer has become an indispensable part of my life. I can't survive one day without it.
原因 + 例子	Because it's quite useful for my studies. It's a basic tool for research and writing my assignments.
假设没有	Without it, I couldn't get my work done efficiently or have nearly as much fun.

How important is a computer in modern society? (Part 3)

直接回答	Computers have gained increasing importance in our daily lives. I can't survive one day without it.
原因 + 例子	Firstly, it's quite useful for everyone's work or study. Take myself as an example, it's a basic tool for my research and assignment. As you know, I can have access to great deals of online information thanks to it. More importantly, most of the tasks are computer-based, so I have to edit it and send it through office software installed on it. Besides, I can use it for entertainment. When I have got spare time, like at the weekends or on holidays, I use it to play DVDs of live concerts, watch classic comedies and play video games, all of which release my stress and kill time.
假设没有	Without it, I couldn't get any of my work done efficiently or have so much fun.

回答方式B 直接回答 + 原因 + 驳论

Do you think it's important for children to learn how to swim? (Part 1)

直接回答	I think it is necessary for all the students to learn how to swim
原因	because it can increase lung capacity and build up body resistance as well as endurance.
驳论	Even though, some people believe that children are too young to learn swim, as a survival skill, it could save children's lives if or when they face an emergency.

Is it important to preserve old buildings? (Part 3)

直接回答	Of course it is! Preserving the time-honoured buildings is extremely beneficial in my eyes.

原因	That's mainly because it will help boost the local economy and tourism. Renowned historic sites like Windsor Castle, Sagrada Familia, and Eiffel Tower have become the symbol, even landmark, of the city, so they inevitably add great appeal to the place and attract numbers of visitors, thus providing loads of job opportunities to the local residents. At the same time, restoration work requires skilled experts, which creates positions for international talents too.
驳论	Though some people maintain that replacing old buildings with new ones can be more environmentally-friendly, in my opinion, it instead would create more construction waste and consume more energy for transporting materials and instruments.

回答方式 C 直接回答 + 原因 + 特殊情况

Is music an important subject at school in your country? (Part 3)

直接回答	No, I'm afraid it's not, generally speaking.
原因	In most cases, Chinese students tend to spend most of their time and efforts on main subjects like Maths and Chinese. That's because their performance in a music test won't count in the final score and won't determine whether they can apply for their dream school. Teachers in charge of the subject also don't take the lesson very seriously either.
特殊情况	But you have to understand that, for art school students, music as a subject means a lot since it may have a positive impact on their major or future career. That's exactly what they're concerned about.

真题重现

1. Do you think gardens are important for children to see and play in? (Part 1)

It seems to me that gardens are important for children to see and play in because children are born to play. Gardens are safe places for kids and they could get close to nature and acquire knowledge from nature. Even though some people believe that playing in gardens is time-consuming and it is better for children to stay in the classroom, I think it will boost their enthusiasm to study.

2. Is family important? (Part 1)

It is essential without any doubt. Most importantly, it provides us financial support. Parents tend to cover all of our tuition fees and life expenses until we are financially independent, satisfying all of our basic needs until we can rely on our own. Also, family loves and cares us in a way no one else can. It is always there for us, through thick and thin. It is our family that celebrates birthdays or graduations with us and at the same time offers shoulders and ears whenever we are upset. Without our family, we couldn't be who we are today at all.

3. Do you think it is important to send gifts? (Part 3)

Sure it is. Sending gifts to someone is truly a good way to express your love. When you receive a souvenir from a foreign country or a teddy bear as a birthday gift, you must feel touched and satisfied because there is someone who always thinks of you and remembers your important date. Though some people complain it may cost them lots of money to buy fancy presents, you can simply send what you draw or make as a gift. It's not about the price when it comes to the value of a present, but sincerity.

4. Do you think handwriting is very important nowadays? (Part 3)

To be honest, handwriting, to some extent, is not as important as before. People nowadays seldom write by hand. Instead, they type on their phones, their laptops or other electronic devices. It's obviously easier to read, more efficient and more likely to guarantee spelling accuracy. But it doesn't mean typing can replace handwriting at all, mainly because there are still quite a lot of paper tests which require us to write with a pencil and give credit for clear and beautiful handwriting.

拓展练习

1. Do you think it's important to like your teachers? (Part 1)
2. Do you think art classes are necessary? (Why?) (Part 1)
3. Do you think patience is important? (Part 1)
4. How important are weddings in your country? (Part 3)
5. Do you think advice from young people's parents is important? (Part 3)
6. Do family relations attach a lot importance in your country? (Part 3)

8 大群体类

常见问法

1. Do people in your country...?
2. Do young people/old people/children/young adults...?
3. What/Where/How/Why do people...in your country?

题型分析

这类题型多数会在 Part 3 出现。在 Part 3 出现时，关键词“people”的涵盖面会变得非常广，如“年轻人 & 老年人”“男 & 女”“儿童 & 成年人”等，所以要求回答时必须考虑的全面一些。

解题思路

对于这类 Part 3 常见问题，多数学生在慌乱之中，把这道大群体问题回答成了私人问题，这是典型的避重就轻。我们要知道大群体问题一定要从大群体角度回答，而一个大群体永远没办法用一种情况解决。所以，我们采用分类讨论的办法，如之前提到的，可以将“people”进行划分，分为“男 & 女”“老 & 少”“自己代表的一群人 & 另外一群人”等。从人群的年龄、性别、居住地等环境方面讨论，还可通过“以我为中心的”这部分人群和其他人群进行对比讨论。因此，笔者推荐考生采用下列回答方式展开作答：A. 总述 + 群体 1+ 群体 2；B. 总述 + 以我为中心群体 + 其他群体。

“分情况”的同义替换

Well, it depends.

It really depends on...

It is not always the same...

Different people have different preferences/ideas...

回答方式 A 总述 + 群体 1+ 群体 2

What kinds of things do people in your country feel happy about? (Part 3)

总述	Well, it really depends on the age groups.
群体 1	For old people, I suppose they would be happy if they could see their children have a warm and loving family.
群体 2	But for the younger generation, I believe that some new gadgets or exciting trips would be more fulfilling in their lives.

回答方式 B 总述 + 以我为中心群体 + 其他群体

Do people in your country like to go to a cinema to watch a film? (Part 3)

总述	Well, when it comes to the preferences of watching a film, I would say different people have different opinions.
以我为中心群体	Considering the people around me, we all like to go to the cinema to watch movies because we can enjoy the mind-blowing visual and sound effects.

其他群体	But for others, I guess they prefer to download movies from the Internet because it is a lot cheaper.

Tips

或许有考生已经发现“常见问法”中的第3种问法跟“Wh+How often”题目重合了。那这样的“大群体类”题目，我们可以用其回答方式，比如“总述+举例+最典型的例子+原因”回答吗？可以的。

例题： How do children celebrate birthdays in your country?

回答范例： Frankly speaking, children celebrate their birthdays in many ways such as holding a party with friends, having a big meal with the family members or having a short trip to the nearest city. But I guess the most popular one is holding a party with friends, because children could have fun together and parents always prepare a birthday cake that they like. And you know, the most important reason is that they can receive many gifts.

甚至，上述例题也可以转换为“Type of Questions类”题目，比如“你们国家儿童庆祝生日的方式有哪些？”那是不是又可以用这类题型的回答方式回答了呢？ Just try it!

以上范例再次说明了一个问题，任何类型问题的回答方式都不是绝对的，考生在平时练习的过程中一定要灵活应对。

真题重现

1. What kinds of news do people in your country read in newspapers? (Part 3)

Different people have different ideas. Old people may prefer to read the news about international or domestic political issues because they care more about what happened in China and all over the world. But for juveniles or adolescents, they prefer to read entertainment news because they care more about some pop stars.

2. Do people in your country celebrate foreign festivals? (Part 3)

Well, it depends. For old people, they seldom celebrate some foreign festivals because they don't know too much about them. But for the young generation, they're really fond of celebrating foreign festivals such as Christmas and Valentine's Day because they believe that these festivals are fashionable.

3. What helps people to remember things? (Part 3)

Frankly speaking, for the things that can help people to remember things, I would say the things are not always the same. For some busy entrepreneurs or some white collar workers, it is better for them to type these things up in their computer. But for some people who don't have too

many tasks, they can just remember things by using their memory.

拓展练习

1. What kinds of things do people in your country like to collect? (Part 3)
2. Where do people in your country like to go dancing? (Part 3)
3. Do people like to read in your country? (Part 3)

Chapter 4

Part 1 高频话题分类汇总

1. 名字
2. 学习或工作
3. 家乡 & 住所
4. 食物 & 烹饪 & 家务活
5. 交通 & 交通方式 & 噪音
6. 假期 & 周末
7. 休闲 & 娱乐 & 运动
8. 爱好 & 艺术
9. 亲朋好友 & 邻居 & 名人
10. 时间管理 & 日常作息
11. 购物 & 时尚
12. 媒介 & 电子产品 & 社会交往
13. 自然 & 人文环境
14. 聚会 & 礼物
15. 工具类
16. 抽象类

本章，笔者会从2013年—2017年Part 1题库话题中分别挑选一些典型题目作为范例来看看如何运用Chapter 3所述的问答策略。但需要注意的是，实际考试中，并不是说同一个题目必须采用上一章该题目类型下的某一种答题方法，只要能够自圆其说，你同样可以采用同一类型下的其他方法，甚至其他类型问答题的回答方式进行回答。

比如，Do you like...属于“喜好类”题目，但该类型的题目笔者主要归纳了两种回答方式，即A. 直接回答＋原因（＋例子）；B. 直接回答＋例子＋原因。在回答范例部分，书中可能只给出了第一种回答方式下的答案，但大家同样也可以采用第二种方式换个思路回答！

比如，What kinds of birthday gifts do you like to receive?这道题可以看作“Types of Questions类”，也可以看作“喜好类”，可以算是二者的结合。对于这道题，我们可以从两种类型的回答方式中任意选择一种回答方式来作答，但无论使用哪一种方式，切记都要清楚表达自己的观点。

因此，笔者在此要提醒各位，书中所提供的回答方式都不是绝对的，口语也不存在正确答案。你需要学习的是如何快速、轻松地拓展答题思路，以及如何巧妙用词。千万不要让“回答方法”驾驭和限制了思路，相反应当游刃有余地驾驭它们。

1 名字

常见考题

001

What's your name?

How did your parents choose your name?

Does your name have any special meaning?

Do people in your country attach a lot of importance to names?

When people in your country name their children, are there any special customs that are followed?

Have you ever changed your name?

Is there any special ceremony when babies are given their names?

What name do people at home call you?

Are there any big differences between people's names today in your country and people's names many years ago?

Is your surname very common in your country?

Would you like to change your name?

题目 1 Do people in your country attach a lot of importance to names?

解题思路

这道题形式上比较特殊，为“大群体类”和“重要性类”题型的结合。其中，“do people in your country...”为“大群体类”常见问法，而“...attach a lot of importance to...（非常看重）”为典型“重要性类”题目常见问法。另外，这种“一般疑问句”形式的题目，多数情况下还可以按照“观点类”题目展开作答。因此，可供选择的回答方式有很多，这里笔者尝试以“观点类”题型下的“直接回答 + 原因（+ 例子）”这种方式展开作答。

回答范例

Yes, for sure. Chinese people are quite superstitious and they believe a name can somehow determine the baby's future so it's quite essential to pick a prosperous name. They would refer to a dictionary to look for if there is any Chinese character which carries positive meanings. For example, they use ' 平 ' as part of their baby's name to wish their child a secure and peaceful life.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：直接回答 + 原因 + 驳论

题目 2 Would you like to change your name?

解题思路

对于这一类没有明显标志词的“一般疑问句”，笔者将其归类到“观点类”题目。这里笔者仍采用“直接回答 + 原因（+ 例子）”这种方式展开作答。

回答范例

I would say no, even if my name sounds too common. You know, I take it as the first gift from my family and thus value it very much. Also, I believe it carries positive meanings. For instance, one of the characters in my given name ‘ 明 ’ stands for intelligence and uprightness, which reflects my parents' wishes and expectation for me.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：直接回答 + 原因 + 驳论

2 学习或工作

Your Studies/Subjects/Major

常见考题

002

What subjects are you studying?

Among all the subjects you are learning, which is your favourite subject?

And which subject did you like the least?

Do you like your subject/major? (Why?/Why not?)

Why did you choose to study that subject/major?

Is it very interesting?

Do many students in your country study that subject?

What do you plan to do after you finish your studies?

Are you looking forward to working?

题目 1 And which subject did you like the least?

解题思路

这道题属于“喜好类”题目，解释清楚“不喜欢”的原因即可。这里笔者尝试用“直接回答 + 原因（+ 例子）”这种方式展开作答。

学科的种类

science 理科	sociology 社会学
math 数学	geology 地质学
computer 计算机	physics 物理学
computer science 计算机科学	chemistry 化学
psychology 心理学	biology 生物学
economics 经济学	biochemistry 生物化学

回答范例

I would say it was history. I found it extremely boring and difficult to memorise. You know, I always found myself struggling with the important dates and facts in history.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：直接回答 + 例子 + 原因

题目 2 Do you like your subject/major? (Why?/Why not?)

解题思路

这道题也属于“喜好类”题目。我们可尝试用另一种方式“直接回答 + 例子 + 原因”解答。另外，如果你不知道自己专业的名称或工作岗位的名称，建议说一个简单的文学学科类的专业如 Chinese、History 或工作如 Teacher、Office Administrator 等。

专业的类型

Computer Science 计算机科学	Mathematics 数学
Electronic Engineering 电子工程学	Architecture 建筑学
Accounting and Finance 会计金融	Public Relations 公关
Advertising and Marketing 广告与市场	Art Design 艺术设计

回答范例

Yes, I think so, especially when I have the opportunity to go on field trips. I find it useful and interesting to collect the data we need for our research.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：直接回答 + 原因（+ 例子）

题目 3 Why did you choose to study that subject/major?

解题思路

这道题属于“Wh+How often 类”题型中的“Why 类”题目。这里笔者尝试用“（总述 +）原因 1+ 原因 2”这种方式回答。

回答范例

For a couple of reasons. Firstly, because my parents work in this industry and would like me to follow in their footsteps and secondly, because it's very demanding and I do love a challenge.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：直接回答（原因）+ 例子

题目 4 Are you looking forward to working?

解题思路

这道题中的“are...looking forward to...”等同于“are...willing to...”，属于“预测类”题目。上一章笔者推荐了两种回答方式，这里尝试用第 1 种方式“（直接回答 / 总述 +）短期计划 + 长期计划”回答。

回答范例

Yes, I am. Speaking in the short term, I still need to study hard and gain some work experience, maybe through a summer internship or as a volunteer. While in the long run, I need to add more experiences to make my resume look better and get more interviews, which can help me find my ideal job in this competitive world.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：直接回答 + 假设做了 / 假设没做

Science

常见考题

003

Do you like science?
Are there many science museums in your hometown?
Did you like science classes when you were young?
Do you think schoolchildren should study both art classes and science classes?
Do you think science is important to our society?

题目 1 Did you like science classes when you were young?

解题思路

这道题属于“喜好类”题目，笔者尝试用“直接回答 + 例子 + 原因”作答。注意这里以“一般过去时”提问，所以回答时也要用“一般过去时”。

回答范例

I was such a big fan of science when I first learnt it in kindergarten, especially physics. It was a lot of fun to know how everything works in our daily life. Physics lesson was one of the lessons I used to look forward to.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：直接回答 + 原因（+ 例子）

题目 2 Do you think science is important to our society?

解题思路

这道题的标志词为“do you think...is important”，属于“重要性类”题目。回答这类题目时，要论证题目关键词“science”的重要性。除了可以正面说明它发挥的作用，也可以反面论证，即假设没有它会出现怎样的后果，或者先说他人观点，再用驳论的方式反驳他人观点。这里笔者尝试用“直接回答 + 原因（+ 例子）+ 假设没有”这种方式展开作答。

回答范例

Yes, for sure. There is no doubt that science plays an essential role in the development of our society. The fruit of science facilitates our daily life in many ways. Just imagine without science,

there wouldn't be any progress in technology; we wouldn't be able to conveniently communicate with others without social networking apps.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：直接回答 + 原因 + 驳论

Math/Mathematics

常见考题

004

When did you start learning math?
At what age did you start studying mathematics?
Who taught you math?
Do you like math/mathematics?
Is math difficult for you to learn?
Do you like to use a calculator when doing mathematics?
Is it necessary for everyone to learn mathematics?

题目 1 When did you start learning math?

解题思路

这道题属于“Wh+How often类”题型中的“When类”题目。题中有明显限定词“start learning”，明确问的是“开始的时间”，因此采用“直接回答 + 原因（+ 例子）”这种方法更容易展开。另外需要注意的是，不要简单只回答一个具体的时间，这样会显得内容很短，我们可以适度说明一下刚开始接触数学时的感受。

回答范例

Actually, I was sent to study in the math interest class a little bit earlier than students who commonly study in the primary school because my parents hoped that I could be a good student. I can't remember the concrete time but I remembered that my mom always forced me to do a lot of math homework. Even though it was just some simple questions, I was really not into them.

题目 2 Do you like math/mathematics?

解题思路

这道题属于“喜好类”题目。如果是肯定的回答，具体的例子可以怎么写呢？可以尝试说一下喜欢数学的哪个方面，是享受解题的过程还是喜欢研究新的解题方法。至于“享受”和“喜欢”的原因，可以说它能锻炼自己的耐心，或能够培养自己的逻辑能力。这里笔者采用“直接回答 + 例子 + 原因”展开作答。

回答范例

Yes, I do. I'm especially into solving the difficult math problems because I enjoy the feeling to concentrate on the math problems and figure them out.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：直接回答 + 原因（+ 例子）

题目 3 Is math difficult for you to learn?

解题思路

这道题为“观点类”题目常见问法，让你说出你对数学难易程度的看法，考生从自己的角度直接而清晰地回答问题即可。这里尝试用“直接回答 + 原因（+ 例子）”展开作答。

回答范例

It's not really hard for me to figure out the difficult mathematical problems because I am sensitive with numbers. You know, every math problem has clues and if we can find out the clues and make the right connections, then we will get the right answer.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：直接回答 + 原因 + 驳论

题目 4 Do you like to use a calculator when doing mathematics?

解题思路

这道题属于典型的“喜好类”题目。相信大家对“喜好类”题目的套路已经十分熟悉了，基本上一看到就可以反应过来要用“直接回答 + 原因（+ 例子）”或“直接回答 + 例子 + 原因”展开作答。不过这里，笔者要尝试一下用其他类题型的回答方式来对付这道题目，比如“观点类”的“直

接回答 + 原因 + 驳论”。因为像“计算器”这种优缺点十分明显的物品，我们可以很轻易地从两方面回答。

回答范例

As for me, I think using calculator is really time-consuming so I don't enjoy using it. Because you know, you have to press number by number in the keyboard and make sure that you press the right one. Even though some people say that it is convenient and you don't have to count the numbers by yourself, it won't help you to promote your own math strength.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：直接回答 + 原因（+ 例子）

History

常见考题

005

Do you like (to learn about) history?
What historical event do you find most interesting?
Do you think history is important?
Do you like to watch programs on TV about history?
Do you think you (=one) can (really) learn history from films and/or TV programs?
Do you think the Internet is a good place to learn about history?
Can you name a person from history whom you would like to learn more about?
Why would you like to learn more about him/her?

题目 1 Do you think history is important?

解题思路

这道题的标志词为“do you think...is important”，属于“重要性类”题目。这里笔者尝试用“直接回答 + 原因（+ 例子）+ 假设没有”这种方式来回答。

回答范例

Yes, for sure. It's necessary for us all to learn history. You know, we can gain experience from the past and learn a lot from the wise ancient people. Without the lessons from history, we would have to start everything from scratch and make lots of mistakes.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：直接回答 + 原因 + 驳论

题目 2 Do you think the Internet is a good place to learn about history?

解题思路

这道题的标志词为“do you think...”，属于“观点类”题目。主要有三种回答方式，无论使用哪一种方式，切记都要清楚表达自己的观点。这里笔者尝试用“直接回答 + 原因（+ 例子）”展开作答。

回答范例

I reckon my answer may be a yes. It's just super convenient. I mean, as long as Wi-Fi is available, we can have an easy access to a large amount of information related to historical events basically at anytime, anywhere.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：直接回答 + 原因 + 驳论

题目 3 Can you name a person from history whom you would like to learn more about?

解题思路

这道题不属于上一章讨论的典型题目类型，对于这种“一般疑问句”，笔者将其看作“观点类”题目，这里采用“直接回答 + 原因（+ 例子）”展开作答。

回答范例

Well, I quite want to know more about Tang Empress Wu Zetian, simply because she is the first and the only female emperor in China. There are so many stories and TV shows about her, but I will never get bored of reading or watching them.

Study efficiency

常见考题

006

Do you prefer to study in the morning or in the afternoon?
Why do some people find it difficult to focus in the morning?
What do you do to improve your learning efficiency?

题目 1 Do you prefer to study in the morning or in the afternoon?

解题思路

这道题属于“对比选择类”题型中的“选择类”题目。对于语言能力较好的考生，笔者建议尽可能两方面都有所涉及，比如“你为什么在早上学习，为什么不在下午学习”。这里笔者尝试用“直接回答 + 原因 + 反面例子”展开作答。

回答范例

For me, studying in the morning is definitely better. You know, it's the best time to memorise things and the learning efficiency would be higher, no doubt. But if I work in the afternoon, I will feel drowsy and fail to concentrate on my study.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：直接回答 + 原因 + 驳论

题目 2 What do you do to improve your learning efficiency?

解题思路

这道题属于“Wh+How often 类”题型中的“What 类”题目。上一章归纳的常用回答方式有：1. 直接回答 + 原因（+ 例子）；2. 直接回答 + 例子 + 原因；3. 总述（+ 举例）+ 最典型的例子 + 原因；4. 总述 + 情况 1+ 情况 2。这里笔者尝试用第 1 种方式展开作答。

回答范例

I'd like to have some refreshment to study more efficiently, because I think it's a good way to make me feel refreshed and energetic. After having some snacks or drinks, it's like I am recharged and get less distracted.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：总述 + 情况 1+ 情况 2

School

常见考题

007

How old were you when you started school?
How did you get to school each day?
Did you enjoy it? (Why?)
Do you like your high school?
What school/university do you attend?
Have you ever returned to see your old school again?
Do you contact with your friends in high school?

题目 1 How did you get to school each day?

解题思路

这道题属于“Wh+How often 类”题型中的“How 类”题目。上一章归纳的常用回答方式有：1. 直接回答 + 原因（+ 例子）；2. 总述（+ 举例）+ 最典型的例子 + 原因；3. 总述 + 情况 1+ 情况 2。这里笔者尝试用第 2 种方式展开作答。

描述学校及相关

school bus 校车
school canteen 学校餐厅
take the course 选课
drop the course 退课
register 注册
sign up for the course 选课
selective/elective/optional course 选修课
required/compulsory course 必修课
lecture 讲座
seminar 讨论班
credit 学分
introductory course 初级课程
advanced course 高级课程
homework/assignment/project 作业
presentation 课堂发言
reading list 书单
turn in/hand in 上交
deadline 最后期限
due 到期
extension 延期
paper 论文
essay 小论文
term paper 学期报告
thesis 毕业论文

proposal 开题报告
mid-term exam 期中考试
final exam 期末考试
quiz 测验
pop quiz 突击考试
grade/score 分数
pass 及格
passing grade 及格（分）
failing grade 不及格（分）
make up exam 补考
cheat 作弊
study lounge 自习室

回答范例

I used to get to school in many ways. Sometimes my mother took me on her bicycle and sometimes I got there by metro or bus. But I guess among them, I preferred my mother's bicycle because it was faster and more comfortable. I could sit on the seat for a rest and didn't need to wait for the bus or metro.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：总述 + 情况 1+ 情况 2

题目 2 Have you ever returned to see your old school again?

解题思路

对于这类“have you...”开头的题目，之前没有专门的归类。这里，我们可以通过“题目转换法”进行分析。题目问的是“你曾经回过你以前的学校看看吗？”如果是肯定回答，这道题可以转换为“When did you return to see your old school?”或“What did you do when you returned to see your old school?”如果是否定回答，则可以转换为“Why did you never return to see your old school?”这样我们就将问题转换成了熟悉的“Wh+How often 类”题目。这里笔者尝试用最容易的方式“直接回答 + 原因（+ 例子）”展开作答。

回答范例

Yes, I go back to my middle high school every year during the Spring Festival because it's the only time when most of the classmates could get together. I remember last Spring Festival, we went back to our school and there was a new school gate, you know, that was the time for us to realise how fast time flies. It was a pity that we had never taken the photos in front of our old school gate.

Teachers

常见考题

008

Do you like any teacher of yours?
Do you think it's important to like your teachers?
What qualities should a good teacher have?
Do you want to be a teacher in the future?
What kinds of teachers do you like best?
Who's your favourite teacher so far?
Who was your favourite teacher when you were young?
Do you think teachers should be angry at students or not?
Do you like strict teachers?
What's the difference between young and old teachers?
Is it important for teachers to interact with students frequently?
Have you ever had bad teachers before?

题目 1 Do you want to be a teacher in the future?

解题思路

这道题的标志词为“do you want to...in the future”，属于“预测类”题目。这里笔者尝试用“直接回答 + 假设做了”展开作答，假设一下“当了老师之后会有什么好处”，别忘了用“虚拟语气”哦！

回答范例

Why not? I quite like the idea of being a teacher in the future. If I were a teacher, I would have a long summer holiday which can be one of the best perks of that job. I'm really into travelling so I can make full use of this opportunity to explore more about this amazing world.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：（直接回答 / 总述 +）短期计划 + 长期计划

题目 2 Have you ever had bad teachers before?

解题思路

这道题也是以“have you...”开头提问，同样可以进行一下转换。题目问的是“你之前遇到过糟糕的老师吗？”如果是肯定回答，这道题便可以转换为问“为什么你觉得他或她糟糕？”或者“他或她做过什么，让你觉得糟糕？”这样我们就将问题转换成了熟悉的“Wh+How often 类”题目。这里笔者仍尝试用最简单的方式“直接回答 + 原因（+ 例子）”展开作答。

回答范例

To be honest, yes. My math teacher of my senior high school was terrible. You know what, his class was so boring and monotonous that I couldn't concentrate in it. As a result, I was not good at math at all and I failed so many times in the math exam. What a shame!

Work/Job

常见考题

009

What work do you do?/What's your job?
Do you like your job?
Is it very interesting?
What are your responsibilities at work？
Why did you choose to do that kind of work (or that job)?
Will you continue doing this job in the future?
What other job do you think you would enjoy, apart from your present job?
Do you think it's very important for people to do a job that they like?
Would you like to do a different job in the future?
Do you miss being a student?

题目 1 Do you like your job?

解题思路

这道题属于“喜好类”题目。这里笔者尝试用“直接回答 + 原因（+ 例子）”展开作答。

描述各种职业

worker 工人
freelancer 自由职业者
engineer 工程师
architect 建筑师
jewellery designer 珠宝设计师
editor 编辑
entrepreneur 企业家
the self-employed 个体经营户，自营者

回答范例

Absolutely yes, I am really into my job. My job allows me to improve my communication skills and my confidence. You know, I used to be shy and timid and couldn't speak in front of a large group of people, but now I can deliver a speech in public.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：直接回答 + 例子 + 原因

题目 2 Why did you choose to do that type of work (or that job)?

解题思路

这道题属于“Wh + How often 类”题型中的“Why 类”题目。这里笔者尝试用“直接回答（原因）+ 例子”的方式展开作答。

回答范例

Well, the main reason is that this job is well-paid and its income is my bread and butter. Thanks to the decent salary, I bought a modern flat and a fancy car in Beijing last year.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：（总述 +）原因 1+ 原因 2

题目 3 What other job do you think you would enjoy, apart from your present job?

解题思路

这道题属于“观点类”题目，题目问“除了你现在从事的工作，你会想从事什么样的工作？”当然，也可以看作“Type of Questions 类”题目回答。但不管使用什么方式回答，考生都要直接、清晰地表达出自己的观点。这里笔者尝试用“观点类”下的“直接回答 + 原因（+ 例子）”展开作答。

回答范例

I reckon that I may enjoy some jobs related to art. The main reason is that I wanted to be an

artist when I was little, and I was so crazy about painting at that time that my parents sent me to some art school when I was 7 years old. So, I guess I would like to do some design work, like art design, jewellery design, furniture design or things like that.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：总述 + 情况 1+ 情况 2

题目 4 Do you think it's very important for people to do a job that they like?

解题思路

这道题属于“重要性类”题目，因此我们可以按照“直接回答 + 原因（+ 例子）+ 假设没有”或“直接回答 + 原因 + 驳论”的方式作答。但这里笔者想尝试用一下“观点类”（“do you think”）的回答方式“直接回答 + 原因（+ 例子）”，是否可行呢？

回答范例

I'm sure that it's of great importance for people to do a job that they really enjoy. If someone enjoyed doing his or her job, he or she would feel more energetic and be willing to do the job well. Take myself for example, lucky me, I'm doing my dream job now, so I feel so happy everyday even sometimes I'm required to do some extra work.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：总述 + 群体 1+ 群体 2

题目 5 Would you like to do a different job in the future?

解题思路

这道题属于“预测类”题目，笔者尝试用“直接回答 + 假设没做”进行作答。你可能会发现，在“直接回答”之后还可以自然地加上“原因”哦！另外，也可以分长期和短期进行说明，比如“短期可能想进一家 IT 公司，长期可能想造宇宙飞船”，只要能够自圆其说就行。

回答范例

I would say that I quite want to work in a different field. Life is too short, so we need to try as many things as we can. If I kept doing a same job for my whole life, I would feel my life is too boring.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：（直接回答 / 总述 +）短期计划 + 长期计划

3 家乡 & 住所

Hometown

常见考题 010

Where do you come from?
Is that a big city or a small place?
Please describe your hometown a little.
How long have you been living there?
Do you like your hometown?
What do you like most in your hometown?
Is there anything you dislike about it?
Do you think you will continue living there for a long time?
For you, what benefits are there to live in a big city?

题目 1 Where do you come from?

解题思路

这道题属于“Wh+How often 类”题型中的“Where 类”题目。上一章归纳的常用回答方式有：1. 直接回答 + 地点介绍 + 与问题相关的内容；2. 总述 + 情况 1+ 情况 2。不过这道题无法用第 2 种方式展开，所以笔者用第 1 种展开作答。

描述方位

southern *adj.* 南方的，南部的
northern *adj.* 北方的，北部的
eastern *adj.* 东方的，东部的
western *adj.* 西方的，西部的
central *adj.* 中心的
southeast *adj./n.* 东南的 / 东南方

northeast *adj./n.* 东北的 / 东北方
northwest *adj./n.* 西北的 / 西北方
southwest *adj./n.* 西南的 / 西南方

描述城市的类型

a coastal city 沿海城市
ancient capital 古都
an inland city 内陆城市
medium city 中等的城市
a metropolis 大都市
small village 小村庄
capital 首都
remote city 偏远城市
municipality 直辖市
tourist city 旅游城市
modern city 现代都市

回答范例

I was born in Heilongjiang Province which is in the northeast of China. I had stayed there for almost 20 years until I went to university so I can say many things about my hometown because I know it well. I know where you can find delicious food and what kinds of clothes you need to wear in different seasons.

题目 2 Is that a big city or a small place?

解题思路

这道题属于“观点类”题目，考生从自己的角度清晰地回答即可。这里笔者用“直接回答 + 原因（+ 例子）”方式展开作答。

大城市的优缺点

attract many tourists 吸引游客
active and energetic 有活力的
time-honoured 历史悠久的
a fast-paced lifestyle 快节奏的生活
prosperous 繁荣的
high housing price 高房价
spectacular 壮观的
smoggy 雾霾严重的

回答范例

There is no doubt that Beijing is a big city because it has a large population, with a fast-paced lifestyle and booming economic development. I feel energetic living in Beijing as it provides many job opportunities and a range of entertainment facilities.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：总述 + 情况 1+ 情况 2

题目 3 Do you like your hometown?

解题思路

这道题属于非常典型的“喜好类”题目。这里笔者采取“直接回答 + 原因（+ 例子）”方式作答。

描述城市的相关情况

geographic location 地理位置
economy 经济
culture 文化
landscape 风景
cityscape 城市风景
natural landscape 自然风景
scenic spot 景点
splendid scenery 秀丽的风景
shopping centre 商业区
district 区
urban 市区的
suburb 近郊区
outskirts 郊区
skyscraper 摩天大楼
architectural heritage 建筑遗产
cultural sites 文化遗迹
historical sites 历史古迹
high-rise/low-rise building 高 / 矮楼
urban resident 城市居民
tourist city 旅游城市
city planning 城市规划
migrant population 流动人口
matched public installations 配套的公共设施
green space 绿地
brain drain 人才流失
descendant 子孙
motorway 高速公路
urbanisation 城市化
low-noise residential area 低噪音小区
entertainment facility 娱乐设施
infrastructure 基础设施

回答范例

Well, I don't think people will say no to this question, especially for me. My hometown has a good geographic location, many natural landscapes and different kinds of architectural heritage. You know, as a tourist city, Guangzhou is close to Hong Kong and it has many famous museums.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：直接回答 + 例子 + 原因

题目 4 Do you think you will continue living there for a long time?

解题思路

这种关于未来的讨论是“预测类”的常见问题。上一章提到的两种回答方式还记得吗？ 1.（直

接回答 / 总述 +）短期计划 + 长期计划；2. 直接回答 + 假设做了 / 假设没做。这里笔者尝试用第 2 种方式“直接回答 + 假设做了”进行回答，注意虚拟语气用法哦！

回答范例

I am pretty sure that I will leave here in the future. If I lived here, I would lose some chances to see the outside world. You know, I am young and I want to learn and try more new things.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：（直接回答 / 总述 +）短期计划 + 长期计划

题目 5 For you, what benefits are there to live in a big city?

解题思路

对于这类题目，我们既可以把它归类到“Wh+How often 类”题目，也可以归类到“Type of Questions 类”中。因为通常 benefits 都不止一个好处，这样我们可以谈谈都有什么好处。这里笔者采用“Type of Questions 类”下的“总述 + 最典型的例子及原因 + 其次典型的例子及原因”这种方式来回答。

回答范例

Generally speaking, I would say there is a wide range of benefits. The most important one is that a big city has better medical facilities and educational environment. Also, it provides young generations with more opportunities of employment.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：总述（+ 举例）+ 最典型的例子 + 原因

Countryside

常见考题

011

Would you like to live in the countryside in the future?
What do people living in the countryside like to do?
What are the benefits of living in rural areas?

题目 1 Would you like to live in the countryside in the future?

解题思路

这道题属于“预测类”题目。这里笔者尝试用“直接回答 + 假设做了”这种方式展开作答，假设一下做这个事情会带来的好处。

描述乡村及相关

rural 乡村的
field 田野，田地
agriculture 农业
village 村庄
farm 农场
crop 庄稼，作物
hill 小山丘
mountain 山岭
river 河流
stream 溪流
lake 湖泊
pond 池塘
tree 树木
grassland 草地
irrigation 灌溉
calm 平静的
a slow pace of life 慢节奏的生活
live a quiet life 过平静的生活
breathe fresh air 呼吸新鲜空气
get away from the hustle and bustle of city life 远离城市生活的喧嚣
enjoy country walks 享受乡村散步

回答范例

Of course I would love to. If I lived in a rural area, I would be able to breathe fresh air, enjoy country walks beside the pond, which would be a good chance to get away from the hustle and bustle of city life.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：（直接回答 / 总述 +）短期计划 + 长期计划

题目2 What do people living in the countryside like to do?

解题思路

这道题属于“Wh+How often类”题型中的“What类”题目。上一章归纳的常用回答方式有：1. 直接回答 + 原因（+ 例子）；2. 直接回答 + 例子 + 原因；3. 总述（+ 举例）+ 最典型的例子 + 原因；4. 总述 + 情况1+ 情况2。这里笔者尝试用第3种方式展开作答。

回答范例

The choices are various, but playing mahjong, a traditional table game, would be the most popular one. Since it provides a good way to loosen up for all the villagers.

Accommodation/Housing/Home

常见考题

012

What kinds of housing/accommodations have you lived in?
Do you live in a house or a flat?
Who do you live with?
How long have you lived there?
Do you like the surroundings of your home?
Do you plan to live there for a long time?
Can you describe the place where you live?
Which room does your family spend most of the time in?
What do you usually do in your house/flat/room?
Are the transport facilities to your home very good?
Do you prefer living in a house or a flat?
Would you like to live in a bigger house (or flat)?
Please describe the room you live in.
What's your favourite room in your home?
What part of your home do you like the most?
Are you willing to live in the countryside in the future?
Do you think your future home will be in your country, or overseas?

题目 1 What kinds of housing/accommodations have you lived in?

解题思路

这道题的标志词为“what kinds of...”，属于“Type of Questions 类”题目。回答该题目的主要方式为：1. 总述（+ 举例）+ 最典型的例子 + 原因；2. 总述 + 最典型的例子及原因 + 其次典型的例子及原因。这里笔者尝试用第 1 种方式展开作答。

描述 House 的种类

single-family house 独立屋
cottage 小木屋
villa 别墅
courtyard houses 四合院
bungalow 平房

描述 Flat 的种类

duplex 复式公寓套房
dormitory 宿舍
on the second floor 在三楼
thirty-storey apartment block/tower block/high rise 三十层高的公寓大楼/高层建筑

回答范例

Generally speaking, I'd say I lived in quite a few types of accommodations like the dormitory on campus and my grandparents' single-family house in the suburb. But I would say I love to stay in my father's duplex most. That's mainly because it is on the twentieth floor, only below the top floor, which allows me to enjoy the gorgeous bird's eye view of my neighborhood. It's really something!

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：总述 + 最典型的例子及原因 + 其次典型的例子及原因

题目 2 Who do you live with?

解题思路

这道题属于“Wh + How often 类”题型中的“Who 类”题目，这里笔者尝试用“直接回答 + 人物介绍 + 与问题相关的内容”这种方式展开作答。

回答范例

At the moment, I live in a villa with my parents who take care of me even though they are busy with work most of the time. We have lived there since I finished my primary school, so more than ten years. We normally spend time watching TV in the living room together at night on weekdays.

题目3 Do you like the surroundings of your home?

解题思路

这道题属于“喜好类”题目。这里笔者用“直接回答 + 原因（+ 例子）”这种方式展开作答。

描述地理位置

suburb 近郊
rural area 郊区
urban area 市区
city centre/downtown 市中心
seaside 海边
on campus 校园内

描述室内环境

entertainment and sports facilities 娱乐和运动设施
rear garden 后花园
swimming pool 游泳池
lawn 草坪
fountain 喷泉
park view 园林景观
streetscape 街景
ocean view 海景
river view 江景

回答范例

Frankly speaking, I'm quite fond of the surrounding of my house. Because they provide a lot of convenience to my daily life. You know, there is a large shopping centre only a step away from my house where I can buy all of my daily necessities. Also, there is a national park close to my house, so I can always enjoy a stunning park view from my living room.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：直接回答 + 例子 + 原因

题目4 What do you usually do in your house/flat/room?

解题思路

这道题属于“Wh+How often 类”题型中的“What 类”题目。上一章归纳的常用回答方式有：1. 直接回答 + 原因（+ 例子）；2. 直接回答 + 例子 + 原因；3. 总述（+ 举例）+ 最典型的例子 + 原因；4. 总述 + 情况 1+ 情况 2。这里笔者尝试用第 4 种方式展开作答。

回答范例

To be honest, I have to say it really depends on whether I am busy or not. Like, for example, if I've got exams to prepare and deadlines to meet, I would work on my assignment at my desk on

my laptop. Whereas in contrast, if I have plenty of spare time, I would watch variety shows on TV all day on my king size bed.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：直接回答 + 例子 + 原因

题目 5 Would you like to live in a bigger house (or flat)?

解题思路

这道题中的“would like to”等同于“want to/are willing to”，属于“预测类”题目。这里笔者采用“直接回答 + 假设做了”这种方式回答，假设一下住在某一种大小的房子下会有什么样的体验。

回答范例

Definitely I want to live in somewhere bigger in the future if I could, because if I lived in a spacious villa which covers more than two-hundred square metres, I would possibly have much room to hold a party or gathering and also, there could be extra space for guests to stay overnight.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：（直接回答 / 总述 +）短期计划 + 长期计划

题目 6 What's your favourite room in your home?

解题思路

这道题的关键词是“favourite（最喜欢的）”，因而也属于“喜好类”题目。笔者尝试用“直接回答 + 例子 + 原因”这种方式展开作答。

描述室内环境

tidy and neat 干净整洁的
spacious 宽敞的
well-furnished 布置得当的
well-designed 设计精美的
cozy 温馨的
homey 如家般温馨的

描述 Bedroom

king size bed 特大号床
beautiful bedding 美丽的床上用品
pillows 枕头
soft sheets 床单
duvet 羽绒被
quilt 被子
electric blanket 电热毯
wardrobe 衣柜
dressing table 梳妆台
lamp 台灯

cloak room 衣帽间　　closet 壁橱
curtain 窗帘　　bookshelf 书柜

描述 Living room

coffee table 茶几　　couch/sofa 沙发
home theatre 家庭影院　　armchair 扶手椅
home audio system 家庭音响组合设备

描述 Dining room

dining table 饭桌　　cupboard 橱柜

回答范例

I'd say I like my bedroom best, you know, especially the king size bed. Nothing is as good as leaning on my soft pillows and enjoying my favourite Korean drama on my bed.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：直接回答 + 原因（+ 例子）

题目 7　Do you think your future home will be in your country, or overseas?

解题思路

这道题属于“预测类”题目。上一章笔者推荐了两种回答方式，这里尝试用第 1 种方式“（直接回答 / 总述 +）短期计划 + 长期计划”回答。

回答范例

Speaking in the short term, I think I would live in the UK, for a year or so. You know, I'm going to study there for my master's degree and I won't leave till I graduate. But in the long term, I would live in my country for sure because that's where I grew up and got used to everything from food to climate.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：直接回答 + 假设做了 / 假设没做

4 食物 & 烹饪 & 家务活

Food

常见考题

013

What is your favourite food?
When do you usually eat that food?
What was your favourite food when you were a child?
Did that change when you became an adult?
Is food important to you?
What food do you usually eat?
What kinds of food do you particularly like?
How often do you eat that?
When was the last time you ate that?
If you had children, what food would you recommend they eat?
Do you usually eat the same food every day?
Is there any food you don't like?
Which do you prefer to eat, lunch or dinner? (Why?)
Do you think there are any benefits from eating breakfast?
Are you willing to try some new food?
Which do you prefer—to eat one big meal or to eat several small snacks?
What do you consider to be a healthy diet?
In the past few years, have there been any changes to what people in your country eat?

题目 1 What kinds of food do you particularly like?

解题思路

这道题的标志词为“what kinds of...do you like”，属于“Type of Questions 类”和“喜好类”题目的结合。因此，可供考生选择的回答方式很多。这里笔者尝试用“喜好类”下的“直接回答 + 例子 + 原因”展开作答。

描述食物

flavour 风味 / 口味
taste 味道
sour 酸的
sweet 甜的
salty 咸的
spicy 辣的
bitter 苦的
bland 淡而无味的
strong 浓烈的
fishy smell 鱼腥味
fresh 新鲜的
well-prepared 准备得当的
savory 风味十足的
authentic 地道的
juicy 多汁的
tender 嫩的
crisp 脆的，酥脆的
chewy 耐嚼的
springy 有弹性的

回答范例

As for me, I like to eat meat, especially medium rare steak. You know, it tastes tender and juicy, which makes it a savory treat.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：直接回答 + 原因（+ 例子）

题目 2 Which do you prefer—to eat one big meal or to eat several small snacks?

解题思路

这道题的标志词为“which do you prefer, ...or...”，属于“对比选择类”题型中的“选择类”题目。上一章笔者推荐了两种回答方式，这里采用“直接回答 + 原因 + 反面例子”展开作答。

回答范例

For me, eating small snacks several times is definitely a better choice. You know, it's better for digestion and thus healthier. But if I have one big meal, I would feel uncomfortable for eating too much at one time.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：直接回答 + 原因 + 驳论

题目 3 What do you consider to be a healthy diet?

解题思路

这道题的标志词为“what do you consider...”等同于“what do you think”，属于“观点类”题目。上一章推荐了三种回答方式，无论使用哪一种方式，切记都要清楚表达自己的观点。这里笔者尝试用“直接回答 + 原因（+ 例子）”展开作答。

回答范例

I think a healthy diet should involve proper portion of fruits and vegetables, which I think would be rich in vitamins and minerals. Just like the old saying goes, an apple a day keeps a doctor away.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：直接回答 + 例子 + 原因

Vegetables & Fruits

常见考题

014

What kinds of fruit do you like? (Why?)
Did you like to eat fruit when you were a child?
Is it important to eat fruit?
What's your favourite vegetable and fruit?
How often do you eat fruits?
Are there any special fruits in your hometown?
Should we eat vegetables every day?

题目 1 What kinds of fruit do you like? (Why?)

解题思路

这道题的标志词为“what kinds of...do you like”，属于“Type of Questions 类”和“喜好类”题目的结合。因此，可供考生选择的回答方式很多。这里笔者尝试用“Type of Questions 类”下的“总述（+ 举例）+ 最典型的例子 + 原因”展开作答。

描述各种水果

apple 苹果
pear 梨
apricot 杏
peach 桃
grape 葡萄
banana 香蕉
pineapple 菠萝
plum 李子
watermelon 西瓜
orange 橙
lemon 柠檬
mango 芒果
strawberry 草莓
medlar 欧楂果
mulberry 桑椹
nectarine 油桃
cherry 樱桃
pomegranate 石榴
persimmon 柿子
blackberry 黑莓
avocado 鳄梨
kiwi fruit 猕猴桃
lychee 荔枝
mandarin orange 柑橘
pomelo 柚子
lime 青柠檬
durian 榴莲
mangosteen 山竹
rambutan 红毛丹
pinang 槟榔
longan 龙眼
sorb 山梨

回答范例

As for me, I love to eat various fruits, from mangoes and berries to bananas. But I think my favourite one would be bananas because I enjoy the flavour and the fact that they are convenient to take to school, and they fill me up easily.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：直接回答 + 例子 + 原因

题目 2 Should we eat vegetables every day?

解题思路

这道题的标志词为“should...”，属于“观点类”题目。这里笔者尝试用“直接回答 + 原因（+ 例子）”展开作答。

描述各种蔬菜

tomato 番茄，西红柿
cucumber 黄瓜
asparagus 芦笋
aubergine, eggplant 茄子
bean 菜豆
beet, beetroot 甜菜
potato 马铃薯
carrot 胡萝卜

cauliflower 菜花，花椰菜
pumpkin 南瓜
cabbage 圆白菜，卷心菜
lettuce 莴苣
marrow 西葫芦
celery 芹菜
onion 洋葱
leek 韭菜
radish 萝卜
mushroom 蘑菇
broccoli 西兰花
cress 水芹，水田芥

回答范例

Yes, for sure. Eating vegetables everyday is necessary simply because you can't find another food group as perfectly matched to our everyday needs as vegetables. You know, there are various proteins, fibre and vitamins that cannot be found in other food like meat.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：直接回答 + 原因 + 驳论

Snacks

常见考题

015

What kinds of snacks do you like to eat?
Is it healthy to eat snacks?
Do your parents allow you to eat snacks?
What was the most popular snack when you were young?
What kinds of snacks do children in your country like to eat nowadays?

题目 What kinds of snacks do you like to eat?

解题思路

这道题的标志词为“what kinds of...do you like”，属于“Type of Questions 类”和“喜好类”题目的结合。因此，可供考生选择的回答方式很多。这里笔者尝试用“Type of Questions 类”下的“总述（+ 举例）+ 最典型的例子 + 原因”展开作答。

描述各种小吃

biscuits 饼干
cookies 曲奇
crackers 薄饼干
cake 蛋糕

muesli bar 麦片条，能量棒
muffin 英格兰松饼
waffle 华夫饼
donut 甜甜圈
dried fruit 水果干
walnut 胡桃
hazelnut 榛子
peanut 花生
chestnut 栗子
pastry 油酥糕点
chips, crisps 薯条
popcorn 爆米花
chocolate 巧克力
ice-cream 冰淇淋
sweets, lollies, candy 糖果

回答范例

Generally speaking, I am a big fan of all kinds of snacks, from muffins, donuts to dried fruits. But I guess my favourite one would be milk chocolate. You know, it's smooth and sweet, which can not only give me energy but also put me in a good mood for a whole day.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：总述 + 最典型的例子及原因 + 其次典型的例子及原因

Cooking

常见考题

016

Do you often do any cooking?
What cooking experience have you had?
Do you know how to cook?
Do you like cooking? (Why/Why not?)
Who taught you to cook?
Have you thought about learning how to cook?
What do you like to cook?
Do you think everyone should learn how to cook? (Why?)
Do you eat at home or do you usually eat outside?
When you were a child, did you ever help your parents to prepare a meal?
Do you think children should help their parents prepare meals?

题目 1 Do you like cooking? (Why/Why not?)

解题思路

这道题属于“喜好类”题目。这里笔者尝试用“直接回答 + 原因（+ 例子）”展开作答。

描述调料及烹饪方式

seasoning 调味料
ingredient 食材
salt 盐
sugar 糖
sauce 酱
soy sauce 酱油
MSG 味精
pepper 胡椒
chili 辣椒
ginger 姜
spring onion 大葱
sesame oil 芝麻油
garlic 大蒜
onion 洋葱

spice 香料
curry 咖喱
peel 削皮
stir 搅拌
dice 切成块
slice 切成片
chop 剁
steam 蒸
stir-fry 炒
pan-fry 煎
stew 炖
roast 烤
boil 水煮

回答范例

To be honest, cooking is really not my thing mainly because I am not very good at it. I mean, I have no idea how to make the dish delicious with the right portion of seasonings. I would either make it too salty or too blend.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：直接回答 + 例子 + 原因

题目 2 What do you like to cook?

解题思路

这道题属于“Wh+How often 类”题型中的“What 类”题目。上一章归纳的常用回答方式有：1. 直接回答 + 原因（+ 例子）；2. 直接回答 + 例子 + 原因；3. 总述（+ 举例）+ 最典型的例子 + 原因；4. 总述 + 情况 1+ 情况 2。这里笔者尝试用第 1 种方式展开作答。

回答范例

As a person who does not enjoy cooking very much, I like to cook noodles most. And I guess the reason is that it's no trouble at all. I mean, all I need to do is to put the noodles and other ingredients like meat balls and vegetables into the boiling water and wait for about 2 minutes until it's done.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：总述 + 情况 1+ 情况 2

Housework

常见考题

017

Do you do housework at home?
Do you like to do housework?
Do you think men and women should share housework?
What kinds of housework do you dislike to do?
Did you help your parents do housework when you were young?
Do you think children should do housework?
Do you think it's important for children to do some housework?
Have there been any changes in the housework people do?

题目 1 What kinds of housework do you dislike to do?

解题思路

这道题的标志词为“what kinds of...do you dislike”，属于“Type of Questions 类”和“喜好类”题目的结合。因此，可供考生选择的回答方式很多。这里笔者尝试用“Type of Questions 类”下的“总述（+ 举例）+ 最典型的例子 + 原因”展开作答。注意这道题中“最典型的例子”需要描述的是“你最不喜欢的家务活是哪种”。

描述具体家务

household chores 家务活
do the grocery shopping 买菜
do the cooking 烹饪
set the table 摆放餐具
do the dishes 洗碗
take out the trash/garbage 倒垃圾
do the laundry 洗衣服
hang the clothes out 晾衣服

do the ironing 熨衣服
fold the clothes 叠衣服
sweep the floor 扫地
vacuum the carpet 用吸尘器清理地毯
mop the floor 拖地
polish the furniture 擦亮家具
dust the furniture 拂去家具灰尘
make the bed 铺床
water the flowers 浇花

回答范例

I'd say there are a variety of household chores I can't stand, like, doing laundry, doing dishes and vacuuming. But I think the one I like least would be cooking. It's quite time-consuming. I mean, it would take me more than 2 hours to do the grocery shopping, get the ingredients ready and cook them all.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：直接回答 + 原因（+ 例子）

题目 2 Do you think children should do housework?

解题思路

这道题属于“观点类”题目。笔者尝试用“直接回答 + 原因（+ 例子）”这种方式展开作答。

回答范例

In my opinion, children are supposed to do housework. I believe it's a good way to cultivate a sense of responsibility. I mean, sharing the household chores for their family can make them feel they're parts of the family, so it's their duty to make it organised and tidy.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：直接回答 + 原因 + 驳论

5 交通 & 交通方式 & 噪音

Transport

常见考题

018

How did you come here (=get here) today?
Why did you choose that form of transport?
Do you like to take public transport?
Do you think public transport system could be further improved?
What is the most popular means of transport in your hometown/country?
Can you compare the advantages of planes and trains?
Is driving to work popular in your country?
Do you think people will drive more in the future?
Would you ride bikes to work in the future?
What will become the most popular means of transportation in your country?
Do you prefer public transportation or private transportation?

题目 1 Do you like to take public transport?

解题思路

这道题属于“喜好类”题目。这里笔者尝试用“直接回答 + 原因（+ 例子）”展开作答。

描述各种交通工具

tube 地铁（英式）
subway 地铁（美式）
tram 电车
bike/bicycle 自行车
motorcycle 摩托车
car 小汽车
jeep 吉普车
lorry 卡车（英式）
truck 卡车（美式）
scooter 电动自行车，小摩托
coach 大客车
taxi 计程汽车，出租汽车
railway 铁路
railway system 铁路系统
high-speed train 高铁
bullet train 子弹头高速列车

ship 船
aeroplane/airplane 飞机
spaceship 宇宙飞船
helicopter 直升飞机
first-class cabin 一等舱
second-class cabin 二等舱

回答范例

Yes, it's really a smart way to take public transport because you know, there're many modes of transportation to satisfy our different travel demands. For example, I can take flights to any European country and I can also take a bus to go to school. Everytime, when I have the plan to go outside, I can always find the cheapest way from those public transportation.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：直接回答 + 例子 + 原因

题目 2 What is the most popular means of transport in your hometown/country?

解题思路

这道题属于“Wh+How often 类”题型中的“What 类”题目。上一章归纳的常用回答方式有：1. 直接回答 + 原因（+ 例子）；2. 直接回答 + 例子 + 原因；3. 总述（+ 举例）+ 最典型的例子 + 原因；4. 总述 + 情况 1+ 情况 2。但这道题目中有明显的限定词“the most popular”，所以分情况讨论的方式不太好展开。这里笔者尝试用第 1 种方式展开作答。

回答范例

I am pretty sure that the most popular means of transportation in my hometown is the subway because everyday, whenever you take the subway, you will always feel crowded. The most crowded subway line in Guangzhou is Line 3; I have never found a seat in this line and I had no idea why we always have so many passengers.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：直接回答 + 例子 + 原因

题目 3 Do you prefer public transportation or private transportation?

解题思路

这道题的标志词为“do you prefer, ...or...”，属于“对比选择类”题型中的“选择类”题目。答题时主要的思路是先表明立场，再说选择方的好处和没选择方的坏处。这里笔者尝试用“直接回答 + 原因 + 反面例子”这种方式展开作答。

回答范例

If I have the chance, I will choose to use private transport so that I don't need to walk to a tube station or a bus stop every day. It's a waste of time. Apart from that, the public transport is always overcrowded and the cabin could be very smelly during the summer. So if I take a bus or a subway, I will sweat and feel uncomfortable.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：直接回答 + 原因 + 驳论

Bus & Taxi

常见考题

019

Do you prefer taking a bus or taxi?
How often do you take the bus?
When was the first time you took a taxi?
What are the advantages of taking a taxi compared with buses?
Is it convenient to take the bus/taxi in your city?
Do you often travel by bus or taxi?
Have you ever travelled by bus or by taxi?

题目 1 How often do you take the bus?

解题思路

这道题属于“Wh+How often 类”题型中的“How often 类”题目。上一章归纳的常用回答方式有：1. 直接回答 + 原因（+ 例子）；2. 直接回答 + 例子 + 原因；3. 总述 + 情况 1+ 情况 2。这里笔者尝试用第 1 种方式展开作答。

回答范例

I take the bus once in a blue moon, because the bus in China, especially during rush hours, is always overcrowded. There was a time I took the bus to my school at 8 a.m., you know, I felt like a ham in the middle of the sandwich. It was really a horrible experience. So I decided to walk to school after that.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：总述 + 情况 1+ 情况 2

题目 2 When was the first time you took a taxi?

解题思路

这道题属于“Wh+How often 类”题型中的“When 类”题目。题中有明显限定词“the first time”，明确问的是“第一次”，因此采用“直接回答 + 原因（+ 例子）”这种方法更容易展开。这里需要特别注意一下时态，在回忆过去发生的事情时要用过去时。

回答范例

If I'm not mistaken, the first time I took a taxi was when I was a primary school student, about 10 years ago. At that time, my parents was so swamped with their work that they couldn't pick me up at school. They asked my teacher to order a taxi for me and send me home.

题目 3 What are the advantages of taking a taxi compared with buses?

解题思路

这道题看似像“对比选择类”题目，实则已经做出了选择。题目问“比起公交车，乘出租车的好处有哪些”，换种说法就是“你认为乘出租车有哪些好处”，可以按“观点类”来解答，可以按“Wh+How often 类”解答，还可以按“Type of Questions”解答。另外，这种有明显优缺点的事物，通常可以采用“驳论法”。这里笔者尝试用“直接回答 + 原因（+ 例子）”展开作答。

回答范例

Well, I have to say there are many advantages of taking a taxi compared with buses. To begin with, taxi driver is just like your personal driver, you can ask him/her to stop at any place you want. But if you take a bus, you may need to walk for a while. Take myself for example, my place is not that close to the bus stop so I need to walk for quite a long time to get home.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：直接回答 + 原因 + 驳论

Bicycle

常见考题

020

How often do you ride bicycles?
Is it difficult to learn how to ride a bicycle?
Is it popular to ride bicycles in your country?
When was the last time you used your bicycle?
Do you think bicycles are very convenient for people to use in modern life?
How would you teach your children how to ride a bicycle?

题目 1 Is it popular to ride bicycles in your country?

解题思路

这道题的标志词为“is it popular...”，属于“喜好类”题目。另外，这种“一般疑问句”形式的题目也可以看作“观点类”题目。因此，可供考生选择的回答方式有多种，但无论使用哪一种，切记都要表达清楚自己的观点。这里笔者以“直接回答 + 原因（+ 例子）”这种最常用的方式展开作答。

描述单车及其好处

bike-sharing 共享单车
in full swing 如火如荼
environmentally friendly, environment-friendly 环保的
smart locks 智能锁
cash deposit 押金
pedal to work 骑自行车上班
reduce road congestion 减少道路拥堵的情况
curb carbon dioxide emissions 减少二氧化碳排放

回答范例

I would say so, you know the bike-sharing is in full swing in China, especially among young people. The reason why it is so popular is that it's so easy to find one along the street and it's very user-friendly, you just download a bike-sharing app and scan the QR code on the bike to turn on the smart locks. It is also very environment-friendly, as it can encourage people to pedal which can definitely reduce road congestion.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：直接回答 + 原因 + 驳论

题目 2 Do you think bicycles are very convenient for people to use in modern life?

解题思路

这道题属于“观点类”题目。笔者依然按照“直接回答 + 原因（+ 例子）”这种方式展开作答。

回答范例

I suppose it is very convenient for people to use bicycles in modern life. You know, the big cities are always heavily congested all the time, and it will be even worse during rush hours. So bike is always a good vehicle to beat other public transportation. Take myself for example, I prefer to pedal to work as it can be even faster compared with a bus or other vehicles.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：总述 + 群体 / 情况 1+ 群体 / 情况 2

Walking

常见考题

021

Do you like walking? (Why?/Why not?)
Where do you walk?
Would you say that your city is a good place for walking?
Do you like to walk on your own or with others?
Did you walk a lot when you were a child?
Did you like walking when you were a child?
What do you think are the benefits of walking?

题目 1 Do you like walking? (Why?/Why not?)

解题思路

这道题属于“喜好类”题目。这里笔者尝试用“直接回答 + 原因（+ 例子）”展开作答。

回答范例

Absolutely, I really enjoy walking. I do believe it is a very good aerobic exercise. Particularly after dinner, I often spend at least one hour strolling along the river banks next to my flat. Besides, I

think that is the secret why I always keep in a good shape.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：直接回答 + 例子 + 原因

题目 2 What do you think are the benefits of walking?

解题思路

这道题属于“观点类”题目和“Type of Questions 类”题目的结合。通常被问及 benefits 的事物都不止一个好处，我们可以谈谈都有什么好处，这样完全可以按照“Type of Questions 类”回答。这里笔者尝试用“观点类”下的“直接回答 + 原因（+ 例子）”这种方式展开作答。

回答范例

I think there are loads of benefits that people can gain from walking. Nowadays, majority of the office workers sit in front of the computers for a whole day which is not good for their spine as well as the whole body. They can easily get sore shoulders and spine after a long day work. So it's better to walk as much as possible.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：总述（+ 举例）+ 最典型的例子 + 原因

Noise

常见考题

022

Do you mind noises?
What types of noise do you come across in your daily life?
Are there any sounds that you like?
Where can you (=one) hear loud noise?
Do you think there's too much noise in modern society?
Are cities becoming noisier?

题目 1 Do you mind noises?

解题思路

对于这一类没有明显标志词的“一般疑问句”，笔者将其归类到“观点类”题目。这里笔者仍采用“观点类”下的常见回答方式“直接回答 + 原因（+ 例子）”展开作答，我们只要说清楚自己在不在意噪音即可。

回答范例

Yes. I don't think people would say no to this question because noises will make people feel uncomfortable, anxious, and even can't focus on their work. These days, my neighbour is redecorating his house. You know, I just can't stay in my home since I get a headache with this kind of sound and I can't do anything with my bad mood.

题目 2 What types of noise do you come across in your daily life?

解题思路

这道题的标志词为“what types of...”，属于“Type of Questions 类”题目。这里笔者采用“总述（+ 举例）+ 最典型的例子 + 原因”这种方式回答，其中“最典型的例子”这一描述在此变为“最常见的噪音”。

描述各种噪音

decibel 分贝
sound pollution 噪音污染
noise of traffic 交通噪音
buzz, ringtones 手机铃声
SMS alerts 短信铃声
cry 哭声
laughter 笑声
music sound 音乐声

回答范例

There are many different types of noise in my life such as traffic, buzzing and the sound of advertisements. But the most common is the noise of people's conversation because no matter where you are, people just keep talking all the time. You know, the decibel is really high in the public places and people just speak loudly.

6 假期 & 周末

Holidays & Festivals

常见考题

023

What public holidays do you have in your country?
Do you like public holidays?
Which public holidays do you like the most?
What do you usually do during public holidays?
What do other people in your country usually do on public holidays?
What would you like to do during the next public holiday?
Do you think public holidays are important?
Do you think there should be more public holidays in your country?

题目 1 What do you usually do during public holidays?

解题思路

这道题属于“Wh+How often 类”题型中的“What 类”题目。上一章归纳的常用回答方式有：1. 直接回答 + 原因（+ 例子）；2. 直接回答 + 例子 + 原因；3. 总述（+ 举例）+ 最典型的例子 + 原因；4. 总述 + 情况 1+ 情况 2。这里笔者尝试用第 4 种方式展开作答。

描述中国节假日

New Year's Day 元旦
Women's Day 三八妇女节
International Labour Day 五一国际劳动节
National Day 国庆节
China's Army Day 建军节

描述中国传统节日

the Spring Festival 春节
the Spring Festival Eve 大年三十
the Lantern Festival 元宵节
the Qingming Festival 清明节
the Dragon-boat Festival 端午节
the Mid-Autumn Festival 中秋节
the Double Ninth Festival 重阳节

描述传统节日的活动

Chinese lunar new year 中国农历新年
family reunion 家人团聚
do some catching up 唠家常
red envelope 红包
lucky money 压岁钱
firecracker 鞭炮
feast on the Spring Festival Eve 年夜饭
spring roll 春卷
strengthen family ties/family bonding 增进家人感情
pay a new year call 拜年
festival lantern 花灯
go to the fair 逛庙会
zongzi/rice dumplings 粽子
lion dance 舞狮
dragon-boat race 赛龙舟
rice balls 汤圆
mooncake 月饼
enjoy the full moon 赏月

回答范例

In different public holidays, I will do different things. In the Spring Festival, I set off some firecrackers, catch up with my friends and learn how to make dumplings. Actually, I have learnt it for more than 10 years. In the Dragon-boat Festival, I will eat the pyramid-shaped rice dumplings (or we say zongzi) and watch the dragon-boat races. I was so excited about the races.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：直接回答 + 例子 + 原因

题目 2 Do you think public holidays are important?

解题思路

这道题的标志词为“do you think...are important”，属于“重要性类”题目。回答这类题目时，要论证题目关键词“public holidays”的重要性。除了可以正面说明它发挥的作用，也可以反面论证，即假设没有它会出现怎样的后果，或者先说他人观点，再用驳论的方式反驳他人观点。这里笔者尝试用“直接回答 + 原因（+ 例子）+ 假设没有”这种方式展开作答。

回答范例

Yep, I think public holidays are important because it is a good way to preserve the various customs and traditions in our country. You know, we can learn the origin of the Mid-Autumn Festival when we enjoy the full moon and eat mooncakes. If our country didn't have public holidays anymore, people would forget these festivals and our customs about how to celebrate these festivals.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：直接回答 + 原因 + 驳论

Weekends

常见考题

024

How do you usually spend your weekends?
What do you usually do on weekends?
What do other people in your hometown (or, in your country) usually do on weekends?
When do you spend time with your family?
What did you do last weekend?
What are you going to do next weekend?
Is there anything new that you would like to do on weekends?
Do you like working on weekends?
Do you think employees should have to work on weekends?
Do you feel that weekends now are more important to you than when you were a child?

题目 1 When do you spend time with your family?

解题思路

这道题属于“Wh+How often 类”题型中的“When 类”题目。上一章归纳的常用回答方式有：1. 直接回答 + 原因（+ 例子）；2. 直接回答 + 例子 + 原因；3. 总述 + 情况 1+ 情况 2。这里笔者尝试用第 1 种方式展开作答。

回答范例

After work, I can only go back home during weekends because my workplace is far away from my home. Every Friday, I go back home after I finish work, and I will go back to my dorm on Sunday evenings. It's just like my study life in my boarding high school.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：总述 + 情况 1+ 情况 2

题目 2 Is there anything new that you would like to do on weekends?

解题思路

对于这一类没有明显标志词的“一般疑问句”，笔者将其归类到“观点类”题目。另外，这道题也可以转换为“你喜欢尝试一些没接触过的事物吗”，这样就被转换成了“喜好类”题目，尝试一下用“直接回答 + 例子 + 原因”回答，看看可行吗？

回答范例

Well, if I had a chance, I would learn a new sport, such as golf, baseball or scuba diving. Because weekends are always two days and I don't want to waste my weekends just sleeping or staying at home. I want to use it to do some significant things, and especially the things that I have never known before.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：直接回答 + 原因 + 驳论

题目 3 Do you like working on weekends?

解题思路

这道题属于“喜好类”题目。这里笔者尝试用“直接回答 + 原因（+ 例子）”展开作答。

回答范例

No, I really don't like working on weekends because the work will definitely influence my sleep quality. But you know, I am not the person who could decide whether to work on weekends; in fact, my boss does. Just like, last Friday, my boss gave me some files and asked me to classify them before Monday. I had no choice but to work.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：直接回答 + 例子 + 原因

7 休闲&娱乐&运动

Leisure/Free time & Relaxation

常见考题

025

When do you have free time?
What do you do in your spare time?
What do you do to relax?
How do you usually spend your evening?
What do you usually do after work/after classes?
Do you prefer to stay at home in the evenings or do you prefer to go out?
Do you spend your free time at home or outside?
When do you usually go out, in the daytime or in the evening?
What do you always do when going out?
Do you like to spend your free time with family or friends?
Do you think modern lifestyles give people enough time for leisure?
Do you think people today have more time to relax than in the past?
What can people do to find more time for relaxing?
Do you think it is important for people to have leisure time (or, relax) in the same way?
What do you think are the good points and the possible bad points about having leisure time?
If you had a child, what leisure places would you go to with your child?

题目1 What do you do in your spare time?

解题思路

这道题属于“Wh+How often类”题型中的“What类”题目。上一章归纳的常用回答方式有：1. 直接回答+原因（+例子）；2. 直接回答+例子+原因；3. 总述（+举例）+最典型的例子+原因；4. 总述+情况1+情况2。这里笔者尝试用第4种方式展开作答。

描述休闲活动

recreational activity 休闲活动　　hang out with friends 和朋友出去玩

individual sports 个人运动
team sports 团队运动
brisk walking 健步走
work out/keep fit 健身
jogging 慢跑
rock climbing 攀岩
bungee jumping 蹦极
have a barbecue 烧烤
amusement park 娱乐公园

回答范例

It is not always the same. If I had more than three-hours spare time, I would watch a movie; but if I only had maybe one hour to take a rest, I would just read some interesting fiction or modern novels to kill time.

题目 2 Do you prefer to stay at home in the evenings or do you prefer to go out?

解题思路

这道题的标志词为“do you prefer, ...or...”，属于“对比选择类”题型中的“选择类”题目，答题时主要的思路是先表明立场，再说选择方的好处和没选择方的坏处。这里笔者尝试用“直接回答 + 原因 + 驳论”这种方式展开作答。

回答范例

Between these two, I prefer to go out at night because there is no ultraviolet rays and it is quiet outside, so I can thoroughly relax. Even though, some of the people believe that going out at night is not really safe, I just take a walk near my house so I don't think it is unsafe.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：直接回答 + 原因 + 反面例子

题目 3 Do you like to spend your free time with family or friends?

解题思路

很多考生一看到“like”这个标志词就想到这道题属于“喜好类”题目，但我们再仔细看一下，它后面还有一个“or”，所以这道题更符合“对比选择类”题型中的“选择类”题目。这里要注意的是，“对比选择类”题目和“喜好类”题目本来就是互通的，只不过前者是问两方面，因此要求我们在回答时，尽量按照两方面都提一句的“驳论法”或 if 条件句这种反面论证方法。这里笔者尝试用“直接回答 + 原因 + 驳论”展开作答。

回答范例

I prefer to spend my free time with my family because you know, nowadays, I am really busy with work, and I even don't have enough time to accompany with my family to have a meal. When I think of it, I feel really upset. Even though some of my friends think that talking with friends is a good way to relieve pressure, you know, we can use our mobile phone to do this. But for family, chatting with them on phone is not enough.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：直接回答 + 原因 + 反面例子

Video games

常见考题

026

Do you play video games?
What kinds of video games do you like to play?
Is it good for young people to play video games?

题目 1 What kinds of video games do you like to play?

解题思路

这道题的标志词为“what kinds of...do you like”，属于“Type of Questions 类”和“喜好类”题目的结合。因此，可供考生选择的回答方式很多。这里笔者尝试用“Type of Questions 类”下的“总述（+ 举例）+ 最典型的例子 + 原因”展开作答。

回答范例

I love to play different kinds of video games like action video games, casual video games and social network games. But I think the most prevalent one would definitely be role-playing games. It's an exciting experience for me to be in the role of one or more adventurers who specialise in specific skill sets while progressing through a storyline.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：总述 + 最典型的例子及原因 + 其次典型的例子及原因

题目 2 Is it good for young people to play video games?

解题思路

这道题的标志词为“is it...for...to do...”，属于“观点类”题目。这里笔者尝试用“直接回答 + 原因（+ 例子）”这种最常用的方式展开。

回答范例

Well, I think it is bad for young people to play video games because it wastes too much of their precious time. These days, we can see many examples of young people addicted to video games. They don't want to study and some of them even drop out of school. It is really bad.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：直接回答 + 原因 + 驳论

Indoor games

常见考题

027

Do you play any indoor games?
Do you prefer to play indoor games or outdoor games?
What indoor games did you play when you were a child?
Is there any particular indoor game that you liked (when you were a child)?
What sorts of indoor games do children play now?

题目 1 Do you prefer to play indoor games or outdoor games?

解题思路

这道题的标志词为“do you prefer, ...or...”，属于“对比选择类”题型中的“选择类”题目，答题时主要的思路是先表明立场，再说选择方的好处和没选择方的坏处。这里笔者尝试用“直接回答 + 原因 + 驳论”这种方式展开作答。

描述各种室内游戏

board games 桌游
play chess 下棋
play Chinese checkers 下跳棋
play go 下围棋

play cards 打牌
complete a jigsaw puzzle 拼拼图
play bowling 打保龄球
video games 电子游戏
intellectual 益智的

回答范例

I would say playing indoor games works better for me. It's usually less exhausting and more relaxing. You can just sit on a sofa while you are playing chess or cards. Although outdoor activities allow you to get connected to nature and enjoy plenty of sunshine, it could also bring you lots of inconvenience when the weather is changeable. Say, you have to reschedule your hiking trip if it rains.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：直接回答 + 原因 + 反面例子

题目 2 What sorts of indoor games do children play now?

解题思路

这道题的标志词为“what sorts of...”，属于“Type of Questions 类”题目。这里笔者采用“总述（+ 举例）+ 最典型的例子 + 原因”这种方式回答，其中“最典型的例子”这一描述在此变为“最流行的游戏”。

回答范例

Kids today can have different types of indoor games to choose, from puzzles, checkers to cards. But I think the most prevalent one would definitely be video games. You know, these kinds of games can not only bring the joy of competition and cooperation, but also offer stunning visual and sound effects. They serves as the main pastime for the young.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：总述 + 最典型的例子及原因 + 其次典型的例子及原因

Outdoor activities

常见考题

028

Do you like outdoor activities?

What outdoor activities/sports do you (most) like to do? (Why?)
How much time do you spend outdoors every week?
How often do you do outdoor activities?

题目 How often do you do outdoor activities?

解题思路

这道题属于“Wh+How often 类”题型中的“How often 类”题目。上一章归纳的常用回答方式有：1. 直接回答 + 原因（+ 例子）；2. 直接回答 + 例子 + 原因；3. 总述 + 情况 1+ 情况 2。这里笔者尝试用第 2 种方式展开作答。

回答范例

Well for me, I do outdoor activities quite often, almost on a daily basis, especially cycling. You know, I can get a great workout and at the same time, I've got a chance to explore every corner of the city that I live in.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：总述 + 情况 1+ 情况 2

Sports

常见考题

029

Do you like sport?
What kind of sports do you like?
How often do you play that sport?
What are the appropriate ways to do sports?
What are the differences when boys and girls play sports?
What sports are most popular with young people today?
Do you participate in any sports with your friends?
Is there any sport that you have never played that you would like to try?

题目1 What kind of sports do you like?

解题思路

这道题的标志词为“what kind of...do you like”，属于“Type of Questions类”和“喜好类”题目的结合。因此，可供考生选择的回答方式很多。这里笔者尝试用“Type of Questions类”下的“总述（+举例）+最典型的例子+原因”展开作答。

描述运动及相关

light 轻度的
moderate 适度的
vigorous 剧烈的
strenuous 消耗体力的
laid-back 放松的

work out 锻炼
strength 力量
flexibility 柔韧性
endurance 耐力
potential 潜力

与play搭配的球类

badminton 羽毛球
table tennis 乒乓球
tennis 网球
golf 高尔夫球

soccer 足球
hockey 曲棍球
volleyball 排球

与do搭配的运动

yoga 瑜伽
gymnastics 体操
aerobics 有氧运动
tai chi 太极

kung fu 功夫
judo 柔道
karate 空手道
taekwondo 跆拳道

与go搭配的活动

swimming 游泳
bungee jumping 蹦极
bowling 保龄球
diving 潜水

surfing 冲浪
jogging 慢跑
hiking 登山
plaza dancing 广场舞

与运动相关的设备

bat (baseball, softball, cricket) 球拍
racket (badminton, tennis, squash) 球拍
birdie 羽毛球
tennis ball 网球
stick (hockey) 球棍

helmet 头盔
glove 手套
football pitch 足球场
basketball court 篮球场
badminton court 羽毛球场

tennis court 网球场

回答范例

Well, I'm really into aerobics like yoga, jogging and swimming, but my favourite one would be yoga. Because you know it's the most effective way to lose weight or stay in shape.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：直接回答 + 原因（+ 例子）

题目 2 **Is there any sport that you have never played that you would like to try?**

解题思路

对于这类题目，我们既可以把它归类到“Wh+How often 类”题目（如：What kind of sports do you like to try in the future?），也可以归类到“Type of Questions 类”中。因为通常 sport 都不止一类，如无氧运动、有氧运动或极限运动。这里笔者采用“Type of Questions 类”下的“总述 + 最典型的例子及原因 + 其次典型的例子及原因”这种方式来回答。

回答范例

Definitely extreme sports. I always want to try scuba diving to fulfill my dream of exploring the underwater world. Besides that, I think windsuit flying is another unique experience, it's really cool to fly with a suit, right?

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：直接回答 + 原因（+ 例子）

Swimming

常见考题 030

Do you like swimming?
How often do you swim?
Should everyone learn swimming? (Why?)
Is it difficult to learn how to swim?
What's the difference between swimming in the pool and swimming in the sea?
Do you prefer to swim in the sea or in a swimming pool?

Do you think swimming should be taught in school?

What do you think are the benefits of swimming？

题目1 Should everyone learn swimming? (Why?)

解题思路

这道题的标志词为“should...”，属于“观点类”题目。这里笔者尝试用“直接回答＋原因（＋例子）”展开作答。

描述游泳及相关

swimsuit 泳衣
bikini 比基尼
trunks 男士游泳裤
ear plug 耳塞
swimming cap 泳帽
swimming goggles 泳镜
swimming ring 游泳圈
life ring 救生圈
life jacket 救生衣
breaststroke 蛙式
freestyle 自由式
butterfly stroke 蝶泳
back stroke 仰泳
swimming pool 泳池
lane 泳道
water play facilities 水上游乐设施
water slide 水上滑梯
children's pool 儿童泳池
diving platform 跳水台
locker 储物柜
dressing room 更衣室

回答范例

Absolutely! Swimming is a sport beneficial to all ages. It allows people to burn calories and release pressure at the same time. In a scorching summer, it's also a good way to cool down your body.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：总述＋群体1+群体2

题目2 What's the difference between swimming in the pool and swimming in the sea?

解题思路

这道题的标志词为“what's the difference between...and...”，属于“对比选择类”题型中的“对比类”题目。这里笔者尝试用“总述＋情况1+情况2”这种方式展开作答。

回答范例

I guess you would find lots of differences in them. Swimming in a pool would be safer, as there are quite a few life guards who would save you immediately if you are in danger. Though at the same time, swimming in the sea could be more fun and more likely for you to get connected to nature.

Activity near water

常见考题 031

What activities would you do if you were spending some leisure time at a beach or near the ocean?

Why do some people like water sports?

What do you think are the advantages and disadvantages of travelling on the oceans?

Do you think it's important to learn how to swim?

Do you think it's best for a child to be taught how to swim by a parent or by someone else?

题目 1 What activities would you do if you were spending some leisure time at a beach or near the ocean?

解题思路

这道题可以看作“Wh+How often 类”题型中的“What 类”题目，也可以看作“Type of Questions 类”题目。这里笔者尝试用“总述（+ 举例）+ 最典型的例子 + 原因”展开作答。

描述海边活动

beach sports 海滩运动
water sports 水上活动
scuba diving 水肺潜水
fishing 钓鱼
island hopping 越岛作战；跳岛游
jet skiing 水上摩托车，喷气式滑水车运动
kayaking 皮划艇；皮艇运动
nightlife 夜生活
parasailing 帆伞运动，驾帆伞滑翔
sunbathing 日光浴
sailing 帆船运动
sightseeing 观光，游览
skydiving 跳伞运动
snorkeling 浮潜，潜水，浅滩潜水
spa 水疗
surfing 冲浪
walks & hikes 徒步旅行，远足
water skiing 划水
windsurfing 风帆冲浪
wreck diving 沉船潜水

snorkeling 浮潜
beach towels 沙滩毛巾
sandals 凉鞋
flip flops 人字拖
sunglasses 墨镜
sunscreen lotion 防晒霜
sunstroke 中暑
sun lounger 沙滩椅
build sandcastles 用沙子堆城堡

回答范例

If I've got a chance to hang on at the beach or somewhere near the sea, I'm sure there should be a lot for me to do like surfing, diving or riding waves. But I think my favourite one would be simply sunbathing. I quite enjoy the feeling of lying on the sun chair and do nothing.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：直接回答 + 原因（+ 例子）

题目 2 Do you think it's important to learn how to swim?

解题思路

这道题的标志词为“do you think it's important...”，属于“重要性类”题目。回答这类题目时，要论证题目关键词“learn how to swim”的重要性。除了可以正面说明它发挥的作用，也可以反面论证，即假设没有它会出现怎样的后果，或者先说他人观点，再用驳论的方式反驳他人观点。这里笔者尝试用“直接回答 + 原因 + 驳论”这种方式展开作答。

描述游泳的优缺点

survival skills 生存技能
increases lung capacity 增加肺活量
build up body resistance 增强抵抗力
alleviate pain of joints 减缓关节疼痛
a whole body movement 一项全身性运动
aerobic exercise 有氧运动
chock 呛
give rise to rhinitis 引起鼻炎

回答范例

I think it is necessary to learn how to swim because it can increase lung capacity and build up body resistance. Even though, some people believe that children are too young to learn swim, as a survival skill, it could save our lives when we face an emergency.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：直接回答 + 原因（+ 例子）+ 假设没有

8 爱好 & 艺术

Hobby

常见考题

032

Have you got a hobby? If so, what is it?
Is it an expensive hobby in your country?
What hobbies are usually expensive in your country?
What do you like about your hobby?
How much time do you spend on your hobby?
Is your hobby a common hobby in your country?
What do teenagers like doing in your country?
Are there any new hobbies that you would like to take up?

题目 1 Have you got a hobby? If so, what is it?

解题思路

对于这类“Have you...”开头的题目，之前我们已经提到过要转换提问方法。这道题非常明显，可以转换为“What's your hobby”，这样就可以按照“Wh+How often 类”下的“What 类”展开作答。这里笔者尝试用最容易的方式“直接回答 + 原因（+ 例子）”展开作答。

回答范例

Yes, my hobby is watching movies because it is a good way to get your attention and it may help you forget all the troubles temporarily. Last time, I watched an American supernatural horror film called IT. It was so horrific and I was really scared but I almost forgot all my bad feelings of the previous day.

题目 2 Are there any new hobbies that you would like to take up?

解题思路

对于这一类没有明显标志词的“一般疑问句”，笔者将其归类到“观点类”题目。
这里笔者尝试用“直接回答 + 原因（+ 例子）”这种方式展开作答。

回答范例

Yes, I intend to start learning HTML web page design because it is really a great way to make some money. You know, if I can make attractive websites, it's something I can do from anywhere and is always in demand.

Music & Musical instruments

常见考题

033

Do you like music?/Do you often like to listen to music?
When do you listen to music?
How much time do you spend listening to music every day?
What kinds of music do you like to listen to?
What's your favourite kind of music?
How often do you listen to (that type of) music?
When did you start listening to this type of music?
Where do you listen to it?
Why do you listen to music?
How do you feel when you listen to this music?
Do you prefer buying a CD of your favourite singer or attending his or her concert?
Have you ever been to a musical performance?
Have you ever learnt to play a musical instrument?
Is music an important subject at school in your country?
Did you often listen to music when you were a child?
What kinds of music are (most) popular in your country?

题目 1 What kinds of music do you like to listen to?

解题思路

这道题的标志词为“what kinds of...do you like”，属于“Type of Questions 类”和“喜好类”题目的结合。因此，可供考生选择的回答方式很多。这里笔者尝试用“Type of Questions 类”下的“总述 + 最典型的例子及原因 + 其次典型的例子及原因”展开作答。

描述音乐的类型

pop music 流行音乐
classical music 古典音乐
country music 乡村音乐
punk music 朋克音乐
blues 蓝调音乐
rap 说唱音乐
jazz 爵士音乐
rock and roll 摇滚音乐
folk music 民俗音乐
light music 轻音乐
electronic music 电子音乐
dance music 舞曲
hip-hop music 嘻哈音乐
gospel music 福音音乐

描述音乐元素

instrument 乐器
tune 音调，旋律
melody 旋律
text/lyrics 歌词
beat 节拍
rhythm 节奏
catchy 朗朗上口的，让人容易记住的
cover 翻唱
concert 音乐会
gig 小型音乐会
chart 排行榜

描述听音乐的好处

soothe one's heart 抚慰心灵
cheer sb. up when sb. feel depressed 情绪低落时，使某人振作
improve one's English listening skill 提升英语听力
feel relaxed and get refreshed 放松身心，缓解疲劳
get refreshed and energetic 缓解疲劳，变得精力充沛
unlock one's emotions 释放情绪

回答范例

Well, I guess there are quite a lot of music styles I love. I have to say my favourite would be dance music. And that's because it always has so strong beats that whenever I hear it, I can't help dancing to it, which really cheers me up when I feel upset. Also, rock and roll is cool too. It conveys emotions in such a strong way that I always get refreshed and energetic after listening to it.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：总述（+ 举例）+ 最典型的例子 + 原因

题目 2 Why do you listen to music?

解题思路

这道题属于“Wh + How often 类”题型中的“Why 类”题目。上一章归纳的常用回答方式有：1.（总述 +）原因 1+ 原因 2；2. 直接回答（原因）+ 例子。这里笔者尝试用第 1 种方式展开作答，回答的内容其实就是 music 的好处或功能。

回答范例

Well, I have to say it really depends on the situation. Like, before bed, I would listen to some light instrumental music because it tends to have soft melody which helps me to sleep well. But when I get up every morning, I prefer music type with fast tempo like electronic music. You know, I need something to make me alert and refreshed so that I can be energetic enough to deal with my busy schedule.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：直接回答（原因）+ 例子

题目 3 Do you prefer buying a CD of your favourite singer or attending his or her concert?

解题思路

这道题的标志词为“do you prefer, ...or...”，属于“对比选择类”题型中的“选择类”题目，答题时主要的思路是先表明立场，再说选择方的好处和没选择方的坏处。这里笔者尝试用“直接回答 + 原因 + 反面例子”这种方式展开作答。

描述听现场音乐的好处

feel the exciting atmosphere 感受激动人心的气氛
enjoy the incredible stage effect 享受惊人的舞台特效
meet one's idol in person 亲眼看到偶像
ask one's idol for an autograph 向偶像索要签名
scream and shout with other fans 和其他粉丝一起尖叫和呼喊
make friends with people who share the same taste in music 结交拥有同样音乐品味的人

描述听 CD 的好处

enjoy it anytime anywhere with a walkman 随时随地随身听
have better sound quality 拥有良好的音质
much more affordable 更实惠
easy to preserve and collect 易于保存和收集

回答范例

Well, I would probably go for purchasing an album of my favourite artist. You know, CDs are much more affordable than a ticket to the concert. They normally only cost you around 100RMB. But if I go to a concert, ticket fee may cost me thousands, which is simply insane!

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：直接回答 + 原因 + 驳论

题目 4 Have you ever learnt to play a music instrument?

解题思路

又是一道“Have you...”开头的题目，这道题通过转换法可以转换为“What instrument have you ever learnt to play”，可以按照“Wh+How often 类”下的“What 类”展开作答。这里笔者尝试用最容易的方式“直接回答 + 原因（+ 例子）”展开作答。

描述乐器的类型

violin 小提琴
viola 中提琴
cello 大提琴
bass 低音提琴
guitar 吉他
trombone 长号
saxophone 萨克斯管
piccolo 短笛
flute 长笛
oboe 双簧管
clarinet 单簧管
tuba 大号
trumpet 小号
xylophone 木琴
bass drum 大鼓
snare drum 小鼓

回答范例

Yes, and I'm glad that I have. I've played piano since a very young age, like 7 years old or so. It was after a concert I went to that inspired me because the pianist was so talented. I still remember those days when I began to have piano lessons and practiced day by day, which was exhausting but worth it.

Singing

常见考题

034

Do you often (like to) sing?
When do you like to sing?
Do you prefer to sing at home or at a place such as a karaoke bar?
How much time do you spend in singing every day?
What kinds of music do you like to sing?
Who's your favourite singer?
What's your favourite song?
What are the benefits of singing?
Is it difficult to sing well?
Do you want to be a singer?

题目 1 Do you often (like to) sing?

解题思路

这道题是典型的“喜好类”题目。题目的关键词是“sing”，所以回答应该围绕“sing”展开而不是一味列举音乐种类和喜欢听音乐的原因。这里笔者尝试用“直接回答 + 例子 + 原因”展开作答。

描述唱歌及相关

sing out of tune 唱跑调	vocal range 音域
hum 哼唱	high key 高音调

回答范例

Well, in general, I would say that I am totally mad about singing. To be more specific, I enjoy singing pop songs and I guess that is potentially because the lyrics can always exactly describe my feelings, so it's pretty easy for me to learn them by heart.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：直接回答 + 原因（+ 例子）

题目 2 Who's your favourite singer?

解题思路

这道题是典型的“Who 类”题目，其回答方式为：直接回答 + 人物介绍 + 与问题相关的内容。

回答范例

I'd say it's Eason Chan, a well-known Hong Kong singer who features his amazing voice. Once you hear his singing, you'll love it immediately as he puts a lot of emotions in the song and sings it right to your heart.

Dancing

常见考题

035

How often do you dance?
Is dancing difficult to learn?
Would you learn dancing in the future?
Where do people in your country like to go dancing?
Did you like to dance when you were a child?

题目 1 Is dancing difficult to learn?

解题思路

对于这一类没有明显标志词的“一般疑问句”，笔者将其归类到“观点类”题目。这里笔者采用“总述 + 群体 1+ 群体 2”这种方式展开作答。

回答范例

I have to say that it depends. For the people who have good body balance and rhythm, dancing may not be really hard for them; but for the people like me who has no idea about how to make perfect dance movements, I'll say it is really hard.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：直接回答 + 原因（+ 例子）

题目2 Would you learn dancing in the future?

解题思路

这道题的标志词为“would you...in the future”，属于“预测类”题目。这里笔者采用“直接回答+假设做了”这种方式回答，假设如果未来学了舞蹈会怎样。

描述舞蹈的种类

cha-cha 恰恰
latin dance 拉丁舞
samba 桑巴舞
ballet 芭蕾舞
Chinese dance 中国舞
jazz 爵士舞
tap dance 踢踏舞
waltz 华尔兹
rumba 伦巴
folk dance 民族舞
hip-hop 嘻哈
tango 探戈
modern dance 现代舞
break dance 霹雳舞
pop jazz dance 爵士舞
fitness dance 健美操
belly dance 肚皮舞
aerobic dance 有氧舞
zumba 尊巴舞
pole dance 钢管舞

回答范例

I really want to learn how to dance in the future, especially hip-hop because I think it is really cool and the rhythm is easily followable. What's more, it can keep me fit. If I could dance, I would join some dancing clubs and maybe meet more friends and perform on the stage. That is one of my dreams.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：直接回答+假设没做

Handcrafts

常见考题

036

Have you learnt any skill from school to make something by hand?
Do you think it is important to learn those skills?
Is there anything you want to make by hand in the future?
Do you like collecting things made by hand?

Are handcrafts popular in your country?
Do you think making handcrafts are meaningful activities?

题目 1 Do you think it is important to learn those skills?

解题思路

这道题的标志词为“do you think it is important to...”，属于“重要性类”题目。回答这类题目时，要论证题目关键词“learn those skills”即“学习手工”的重要性。除了可以正面说明它发挥的作用，也可以反面论证，即假设没有它会出现怎样的后果，或者先说他人观点，再用驳论的方式反驳他人观点。这里笔者尝试用“直接回答 + 原因 + 驳论”这种方式展开作答。

回答范例

Yes, for sure. It's necessary to learn handcraft skills. The main reason is that it plays an important role in cultivating our sense of and appreciation for beauty. Although some people consider it useless, impractical and a waste of time, making handcraft provides lots of practice in eye-hand coordination, which would benefit our development.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：直接回答 + 原因（+ 例子）+ 假设没有

题目 2 Do you like collecting things made by hand?

解题思路

这道题属于典型的“喜好类”题目，解释清楚“喜欢或不喜欢”的原因即可。这里笔者尝试用“直接回答 + 例子 + 原因”这种方式展开作答。

描述手工艺品

handmade 手工的
antique 古董
exquisite 高雅的，精致的
artefact/artifact 工艺品
weaving 编织品
pottery 陶瓷
paper crafts/paper-cutting 纸制品 / 剪纸
embroidery 刺绣
tint 色调
pattern 图案
string 绳子
bead 珠子
fold 折
glue 粘贴
appreciate in value 升值

回答范例

Not really, no. Especially collecting handcrafts like vases. They are heavy, huge and useless, taking up so much space and I'm sure they would cost me an arm and a leg.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：直接回答 + 原因（+ 例子）

题目 3 Do you think making handcrafts are meaningful activities?

解题思路

这道题为“观点类”题目常见问法，让你说出对手工制作的看法，考生从自己的角度直接而清晰地回答问题即可。这里笔者尝试用“直接回答 + 原因（+ 例子）”展开作答。

回答范例

From my perspective, making handcrafts should be highly valued. That's probably because it can showcase talent and skills of artisans and more importantly, it kind of represents cultural and religious significance. You know, the tint and pattern on a piece of pottery can tell a lot about the dynasty when it was made.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：直接回答 + 原因 + 驳论

Photography

常见考题

037

Do you take photos a lot while travelling?
Do you have many photos of childhood?
Do you prefer taking photos or shooting videos?
Do you like to take photographs? (Why?)
Do you prefer to take photos yourself or to have other people take photos? (Why?)
How long have you liked taking photographs?
How (Why) did you become interested in photography?
How often do you take photographs?

In what situations do you take photographs?
What kind of photos do you like to take? (Why?)
Do you prefer to take pictures of people or of scenery?
Who do you take photos of?
Do you keep your photographs on your computer?
Are there any photos on the walls of your home?
Do you frame (or have you framed) any of your photos? (If yes, which? And why?)
Do you prefer to send postcards to people or to send photos that you took yourself? (Why?)

题目 1 What kind of photos do you like to take? (Why?)

解题思路

这道题的标志词为“what kind of...do you like”，属于“Type of Questions 类”和“喜好类”题目的结合。因此，可供考生选择的回答方式很多。这里笔者尝试用“Type of Questions 类”下的“总述（+ 举例）+ 最典型的例子 + 原因”展开作答。

描述拍照及相关

photography 摄影
photographer 摄影师
photo album 相册
portrait 半身画像
landscape 风景照
selfie 自拍
capture 捕捉
precious 珍贵的
photogenic 上镜的

回答范例

Well, for me, taking photos has been part of my life. I love to take various pictures including portraits, landscapes and still life. But the one I fancy most would be selfies. I mean, when I'm doing selfie, I always can capture myself in the best way and I feel good for getting likes after putting them on the social networking websites.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：总述 + 最典型的例子及原因 + 其次典型的例子及原因

题目 2 Do you prefer to send postcards to people or to send photos that you took yourself? (Why?)

解题思路

这道题的标志词为“do you prefer, ...or...”，属于“对比选择类”题型中的“选择类”题目，答

题时主要的思路是先表明立场，再说选择方的好处和没选择方的坏处。这里笔者尝试用“直接回答+原因+反面例子”这种方式展开作答。

回答范例

I would probably go for photos I took. And the reason is that I believe my friends or family would expect to receive something unique, something they can't find elsewhere. But if I send them postcards, it is very likely to disappoint them as there could be many people who keep the same copy of it.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：直接回答+原因+驳论

Painting & Drawing

常见考题

038

Do you like painting or drawing?
What kinds of things do you like to draw?
Is it easy to learn how to draw?
What can you learn from western paintings?
What benefits can you get from painting as a hobby?

题目1 Do you like painting or drawing?

解题思路

这道题中有一个“or”，所以这道题更符合“对比选择类”题型中的“选择类”题目。但需要注意的是，“选择类”和“喜好类”的题目本来就是互通的，所以只要能够自圆其说，采用“喜好类”的回答方式作答也是可以的。这里要区分一下paint和draw的区别：paint泛指有颜色的画，比如油画、水彩画或水墨画，而draw通常是指铅笔、钢笔或粉笔画。这里笔者采用“直接回答+原因（+例子）”这种方式来回答。

回答范例

I am not really an artistic person. So for these two, I don't like them at all because I always draw something that nobody could understand. I still remember when I was in my primary school, I drew an apple but almost all my classmates thought it was an heart-shaped image. I was so

ashamed.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：直接回答 + 原因 + 驳论

题目 2 Is it easy to learn how to draw?

解题思路

这道题为“观点类”常见问法。对于这类提问难易程度的问题，比如“学画画简单吗？”“学音乐简单吗？”“学舞蹈简单吗？”等，我们均可以采用“总述 + 群体 / 情况 1+ 群体 / 情况 2”这种方式作答，因为不同的人群对这个问题肯定会有不同的看法。

回答范例

It is hard to say. I am the kind of person who has no idea about how to draw pictures because I always fail to construct the object in my mind. But my sister who is a painter could always draw things vividly. Maybe for people who have that talent, it must be easy for them to learn how to draw.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：直接回答 + 原因（+ 例子）

Art

常见考题

039

Do you like art?
What benefits does (participating in) art bring to people?
How important do you think art is in the lives of people?
Why do you think people like to have a painting (or other artwork) in their homes?
Have you ever been to an art gallery before?
How often do you visit art galleries?
Do you think art classes are necessary? (Why?)
How do you think art classes affect children's development?

题目1 Do you like art?

解题思路

这道题属于“喜好类”题目，回答的方式相信大家已经很熟悉了。在给出范例之前，让我们看看归纳的万能观点。你会发现这些理由不仅能用在艺术类话题，还能用在运动、摄影、阅读等爱好类话题。平时多细心总结，这样才能使备考事半功倍！

喜欢艺术的万能理由

free sb. from the stress 让某人释放压力
get distracted from one's problems 从困难中分散注意力
release one's hidden/repressed emotions 释放某人隐藏的 / 压抑的情绪
add spice to one's life 为生活增添情趣
keep sb. occupied 集中注意力

回答范例

Definitely yes. I am extremely keen on art. To be more specific, painting a portrait is really my thing. When I get started, I would concentrate on how to perfectly use colour and shadow to make it look real so that I would get distracted from the daily worries and troubles. And when the work is done, I feel a great sense of achievement.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：直接回答 + 原因（+ 例子）

题目2 How do you think art classes effect children's development?

解题思路

这道题属于“观点类”题目，本质上问的是艺术的好处。这里笔者尝试用“直接回答 + 原因 + 驳论”这种方式展开作答。

描述艺术的好处

make use of one's imagination 利用想象力
improve creativity 提高创造力
boost creative inspiration 激发创作灵感
express one's inner thoughts and feelings 表达内心的想法和感受
help sb. to communicate in a different, personal language 有助于利用不同的个人语言去交流
enhance one's hand-eye coordination 加强手和眼睛的协调
develop sth. as a life-long hobby 将……发展成终身爱好

回答范例

Personally, art lessons involving painting or handcraft benefit children so much. The primary reason is that, when they draw out things that don't exist in this world but coming out from their head, they are using their imagination to a great extent, which serves as a great way to improve their creativity. Though some parents consider art classes a waste of time and something distracting their children from study, I believe they are necessary as an outlet for stress from some academic subjects.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：直接回答 + 原因（+ 例子）

Museum

常见考题

040

Are there many (or, any) museums in your hometown?
Do you think museums are useful for visitors to your hometown/country?
Do you often visit a museum?
Did you go to any museums when you were a child?
When was the last time you visited a museum?
Do you think museums are important?
Do you think it's suitable for museums to sell things to visitors?

题目 1 Do you often visit a museum?

解题思路

这道题可以归为两类题型：一是“Wh+How often 类”题目，因为 do you often 其实也在间接询问 how often；二可以将其看作“观点类”题目。不管看作哪一类题目，都可以用同一种方式回答，即“直接回答 + 原因（+ 例子）”。

回答范例

No, I never go to the museum because I am not interested in having a close observation with the artefacts, especially those traditional artefacts. What's more, all the things in the museum could be found on the Internet. I just need to enter a key word of what I want to learn into the computer, and then I could get everything.

题目 2 Do you think it's suitable for museums to sell things to visitors?

解题思路

这道题属于“观点类”题目。回答该题目的主要方式为：1. 直接回答 + 原因（+ 例子）；2. 直接回答 + 原因 + 驳论；3. 总述 + 群体 / 情况 1+ 群体 / 情况 2。这里笔者用第 2 种方式来回答。

回答范例

Yes, I'm pretty sure that a museum should have a store to sell things to visitors because I know how I feel when I pay a visit to the museum. I want to buy some souvenirs or get info about it. Even though some people say that museum is a non-profit institution, I think it won't force customers to buy its products. So it's OK.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：总述 + 群体 / 情况 1+ 群体 / 情况 2

9 亲朋好友 & 邻居 & 名人

Family

常见考题

041

Do you live with your family?
Do you think family members should live together? (Why?/Why not?)
Do you prefer to spend time with your family or with your friends?
How often do you meet with your family?
How do you spend the time with your family?
Do you want to live with your family in the future?
Are you close to all of your family members?
How has your family influenced you?
Who do you feel is the most important member of your family?
Which do you think is more important, your family or your friends?

题目 1 How often do you meet with your family?

解题思路

这道题属于“Wh+How often 类”题型中的“How often 类”题目。上一章归纳的常用回答方式有：1. 直接回答 + 原因（+ 例子）；2. 直接回答 + 例子 + 原因；3. 总述 + 情况 1+ 情况 2。这里笔者尝试用第 2 种方式展开作答。

回答范例

I meet with my family on a regular basis, something like three to four times a week. We like to have a big meal together in some of the fancy restaurants which are located in the heart of my city, because we all think family is the most important and we should spend more time with each other to enhance our family bond.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：总述 + 情况 1+ 情况 2

题目 2 Do you want to live with your family in the future?

解题思路

这道题的标志词为“do you want to...in the future”，属于“预测类”题目。这里笔者采用“（直接回答 / 总述 +）短期计划 + 长期计划”这种方式展开作答。

回答范例

Not really, but I have to live with them in the next few years as I am still a student and can't afford live by myself. After I graduate from my university, I'd like to have my own flat or share a house with my best friends.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：直接回答 + 假设做了 / 假设没做

题目 3 How has your family influenced you?

解题思路

这道题属于“Wh+How often 类”题型中的“How 类”题目。上一章归纳的常用回答方式有：1. 直接回答 + 原因（+ 例子）；2. 总述（+ 举例）+ 最典型的例子 + 原因；3. 总述 + 情况 1+ 情况 2。

这里笔者尝试用第2种方式展开作答。

回答范例

I have to admit that my family has a huge impact on me. You know, the living and eating habits, lifestyle and things like that. But I would say the most important influence they left on me is good manners, because people tend to like the one who is polite and well-behaved.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：直接回答 + 原因（+ 例子）

Relatives

常见考题 042

Do you have many relatives?
When you were a child, which of your relatives did you see most often?
In the future, do you think you will have more opportunities to see your relatives?

题目1 Do you have many relatives?

解题思路

对于这一类没有明显标志词的“一般疑问句”，笔者将其归类到“观点类”题目。这里笔者仍采用“观点类”下的“直接回答 + 原因（+ 例子）”方式展开作答。

回答范例

Yes, I'm from a very big family. In my parents' generation, they didn't have the one-child policy, so my grandma from my father's side has four children including my dad, and my grandma from my mum's side gave birth to eight children. So there is no wonder that I have so many aunties and uncles.

题目2 When you were a child, which of your relatives did you see most often?

解题思路

这道题目类型我们之前没有专门讲过，但可以看出来它应该属于“Wh+How often类”题型。

同理，回答该题目的主要方式为：1. 直接回答 + 原因（+ 例子）；2. 总述 + 情况 1+ 情况 2。但题目中有明显的限定词“most often”，所以采用第 1 种方式更容易展开。

回答范例

I saw my grandparents most often when I was a child. The main reason is that I lived not that far from my grandparents whose place was within walking distance of my home. So I spent all the weekend at my grandparents' place before I entered to university.

Friends

常见考题 043

Do you have many friends?
Do you like having a best friend or many good friends?
What do you usually do with friends together?
How often do you talk to your friends?
How do you communicate with your friends?
How often do you like to hang out with friends?
Who do you usually like to hang out with?
Where do you like to go when you hang out with your friends?
Do you like to go out with a big group or just few friends?
Do you spend more of your free time with your friends or family?

题目 1 Do you like having a best friend or many good friends?

解题思路

这道题属于“对比选择类”题型中的“选择类”题目，当然也可以按“喜好类”题型作答。这里笔者尝试用“选择类”下的“直接回答 + 原因 + 驳论”这种方式展开作答。

描述朋友及相关

a long time friend of mine 相识很久的老友
buddies 兄弟
fellows 伙伴，兄弟（多指男性）
bff (best friend forever) 永远的最好的朋友
gal pals 女性伙伴
bestie 最好的朋友，闺蜜
folks 家人，亲属；父母亲
peers 同龄伙伴
joined at the hip 密不可分的
like two peas in a pod 一模一样的
like peas and carrots 形影不离的

回答范例

I prefer to have a best friend instead of many good friends. This is due to the fact that I'm not an outgoing person, I feel more comfortable when I stay with just one best friend. Then we have a quality time and share all the secrets with each other. But if I have many good friends, I need to spend more time and energy to deal with the relationship with them, which I don't think I can handle all by myself.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：直接回答 + 原因（+ 例子）

题目 2 Who do you usually like to hang out with?

解题思路

这道题属于“Wh+How often 类”题型中的“Who 类”题目。这里笔者还是用“直接回答 + 人物介绍 + 与问题相关的内容”这种方式展开作答。

回答范例

I usually hang out with my best friend Jessy who is a long time of mine. We got to know each other when we were seven years old. In other words, we have known each other for more than fifteen years. She is very warm-hearted, whenever I face some difficulties, she is always the first one who helps me out. I'm so glad to have her as my bestie.

题目 3 Do you spend more of your free time with your friends or family?

解题思路

这道题属于“对比选择类”题型中的“选择类”，答题时主要的思路是先表明立场，再说选择方的好处和没选择方的坏处。具体回答方式有两种：1. 直接回答 + 原因 + 反面例子；2. 直接回答 + 原因 + 驳论。这里笔者采用第 1 种方式回答。

回答范例

Well, personally speaking, I spend more time with my buddies than with my family. As my friends are all of my age, we have lot of things in common and have much to share with each other. If I spend more time with my family, I always feel so anxious because there is a huge gap between my family and me.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：直接回答 + 原因 + 驳论

Friendship

常见考题 044

Do you think friendship is important?

Do you think it's easy for people to make friends at work?

Is it important for people to have good relationships with colleagues at their workplace? (Why?)

Would you say the students (at your school/university) have a good relationship with each other?

How would you describe a good relationship?

Do you ever help a friend by giving advice?

题目 Do you think friendship is important?

解题思路

这道题的标志词为“do you think...is important”，属于“重要性类”题目。回答这类题目时，要论证题目关键词“friendship”的重要性。除了可以正面说明它发挥的作用，也可以反面论证，即假设没有它会出现怎样的后果，或者先说他人观点，再用驳论的方式反驳他人观点。这里笔者尝试用“直接回答 + 原因（+ 例子）+ 假设没有”这种方式展开作答。

回答范例

I would say that friendship plays an important role in my life. My friends are always there to give me some valuable and helpful advice when needed and comfort me to overcome problems. I guess no one could survive without any friends around.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：直接回答 + 原因 + 驳论

Visitors

常见考题

045

Do you often invite friends to visit your home?
Do you like visitors coming to your home?
Do people often visit you at your home?
How often do visitors come to your home?
When do visitors come to your home?
Do you prefer to have friends visit you, or relatives?
What do you usually do together with your visitors?
When someone visits you, how do you usually show hospitality (or, entertain them)?

题目 1 Do you like visitors coming to your home?

解题思路

这道题属于“喜好类”题目。回答方式主要有两种：1. 直接回答 + 原因（+ 例子）；2. 直接回答 + 例子 + 原因。这里笔者用第 2 种方式来回答。

回答范例

Personally speaking, I quite like visitors coming to my home, especially my close friends and relatives. I like to invite them to my place and I always cook a big meal for them. I suppose it's a really good way to bring us closer together.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：直接回答 + 原因（+ 例子）

题目 2 When do visitors come to your home?

解题思路

这道题属于“Wh+How often 类”题型中的“When 类”题目。上一章归纳的常用回答方式有：1. 直接回答 + 原因（+ 例子）；2. 直接回答 + 例子 + 原因；3. 总述 + 情况 1+ 情况 2。这里笔者尝试用第 3 种方式展开作答。

回答范例

It really depends. My close friends come to visit me during the weekend, so we like to do something to just chill, like watching TV while snacking. But for my relatives, they only visit me during some Chinese traditional festivals, like the Spring Festival or the Mid-Autumn Festival. We just meet up and have a family reunion dinner together.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：直接回答 + 原因（+ 例子）

Celebrity

常见考题

046

Who is your favourite celebrity in your country?
Do you like any foreign celebrities?
Would you want to be a celebrity in the future?

题目 1 Who is your favourite celebrity in your country?

解题思路

这道题属于“Wh+How often 类”题型中的“Who 类”题目。这里笔者用“直接回答 + 人物介绍 + 与问题相关的内容”这种方式展开作答。

描述明星及相关

a die-hard fan 死忠粉
politician 政客
pop singer, pop star 流行歌手
movie star 电影影星
TV host/presenter 电视节目主持人
world-famous 举世闻名的
well-known 有名的

回答范例

Well, I would say I am a die-hard fan of Jay Chou who is one of the most well-known pop singers in China. He is a very talented person, you know, he's not only a good singer but also an excellent composer; the majority of songs he's sung were composed by himself.

题目 2 Would you want to be a celebrity in the future?

解题思路

这道题属于“预测类”题目，这里笔者用“直接回答 + 假设做了”展开作答。

回答范例

Yes, I would like to be a celebrity in the future. If I were a celebrity, I would have some beautiful countryside villas, a couple of fancy cars and visit all the places I want. However, on the other hand, my private life would be exposed to the public, which is not good.

10 时间管理 & 日常作息

Time

常见考题

047

Do you usually wear a watch?
What do you use your watch for?
Do you often look at your watch?
Do you think everyone should wear a watch?
Do you think time is very important?
When does time seem to move fast and when does it seem to move slowly?

题目 1 Do you usually wear a watch?

解题思路

这道题不属于上一章讨论的典型题目类型，对于这种“一般疑问句”，笔者将其看作“观点类”题目，按照“直接回答 + 原因（+ 例子）”展开作答。

回答范例

Yes, I wear my watch on an almost daily basis. I think it's very easy to check the time by just looking at my watch, especially when my phone is out of battery. Also, it's a good accessory for me if I wear a nicely designed watch.

题目 2 What do you use your watch for?

解题思路

这道题的标志词为“what...for”，属于“Wh+How often 类”题型。之前讲过，这类题目的主要回答方式有：1. 直接回答 + 原因（+ 例子）；2. 直接回答 + 例子 + 原因；3. 总述 + 情况 1+ 情况 2。这里笔者尝试用第 3 种方式来回答。

回答范例

Well, I mainly use my watch for checking time. If my phone is out of battery, I have to use an alternative way to check time. I also use my phone to have a track of how many steps I walked or how much calories I burnt everyday.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：直接回答 + 原因（+ 例子）

题目 3 Do you think time is very important?

解题思路

这道题属于“重要类”题目，当然也可以按照“观点类”题目回答。这里笔者尝试用“观点类”下的“直接回答 + 原因（+ 例子）”展开作答。

回答范例

There is no doubt that time is a very important and expensive thing in my life. It is precious. We can use time to achieve our dream and to do the things we like. If we used up all of the time, we would die. So now, I try my best to use every second in my life effectively. I work really hard and I just don't want to waste time.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：直接回答 + 原因 + 驳论

Time management

常见考题

048

Are you good at organising time?
How do you usually organise time?
Do you think young people organise their time in the same way?
How would you teach your children time management?

题目 1 Are you good at organising time?

解题思路

对于这一类没有明显标志词的“一般疑问句”，笔者将其归类到“观点类”题目。这里我们仍采用“直接回答 + 原因 + 驳论”这种方式展开作答。

回答范例

Yes, I'm very organised because I always plan what I need to do tomorrow in advance so that I don't need to worry about forgetting the things. Even though my mom believed that I always misremembered the time, I think she worried too much.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：直接回答 + 原因（+ 例子）

题目 2 How do you usually organise time?

解题思路

在 Part 1 中，“How 类”问题是一类特别容易跑题的题型，多数考生不知道这类问题的本质是什么。比如，这道题问的是“通常你如何规划时间”，很多考生可能会回答成“自己每天的时间安排——一般早上会做些什么，下午又做了什么”。这就是典型的跑题。这道题我们应该回答的是“通常，我会用 to do list 按照时间把要做的事情写下来，从而安排自己的事情”。这里笔者尝试用“直接回答 + 原因（+ 例子）”展开作答。

回答范例

I prefer to use a To-do list to organise my time. To-do list is very convenient because I can write down all the things that I need to do from the most important one to the least important one in

it. You know, every day, I just need to check my list, and I will know what I should do at first.

题目 3 How would you teach your children time management?

解题思路

这道题类型同上一题，所以笔者仍采用“直接回答 + 原因（+ 例子）”展开作答。另外，考生也可以用分情况讨论的办法，即“总述 + 情况 1+ 情况 2”这种方式作答，可以针对不同年龄的孩子采用不同的方法。

回答范例

I will set a good example for them to teach them time management because I think parents are their first teachers and it is effective to teach them by being their model. I can show them how I manage the time and how I can finish things on time. Sometimes, I will make some mistakes to let them understand that if we don't organise time, we will lose some opportunities.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：总述 + 情况 1+ 情况 2

Punctuality

常见考题

049

In your country is it important to be on time (=be punctual)? (e.g., for meetings, work, classes)
Do you like to be on time?
Is being on time important to you?
How do you think these people could improve and be on time more often?

题目 1 Do you like to be on time?

解题思路

这道题属于“喜好类”题目，我们只要能解释清楚原因即可。回答该题目的主要方式为：1. 直接回答 + 原因（+ 例子）；2. 直接回答 + 例子 + 原因。这里笔者用第 1 种方式展开作答。

回答范例

Yes, I'd like to be on time. I don't like being late and I can't bear with someone who is always late. It's quite important to be punctual, as it shows your respect and good manners towards other people. I don't feel comfortable if I know someone is waiting for me.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：直接回答 + 例子 + 原因

题目 2 Is being on time important to you?

解题思路

这道题属于“重要性类”题目。回答该题目的主要方式为：1. 直接回答 + 原因（+ 例子）+ 假设没有；2. 直接回答 + 原因 + 驳论；3. 直接回答 + 原因 + 特殊情况。这里笔者用第 1 种方式作答，最后假设学生高考没有准时到考场，会发生什么样不好的结果。

回答范例

Yes, being on time is an important rule that we all need to follow in the society. Because you know, nobody will wait for you freely if you are late. If a student didn't arrive on time for participating the college entrance exam, no one would allow him/her to come in. It means that this student has to wait for one more year.

Being late

常见考题

050

Are you ever late for anything?
How do you feel when you are late?
What excuses do you use when you late?
What excuses do people have when they late?
If you could go back in time, what would you do (i.e., what would you do differently)?
What would you do if you were late for a meeting?
Were there any serious consequences when you were late?
Do you like it when others are late?
How do you feel when others are late?

题目 1 What excuses do you use when you late?

解题思路

这道题属于“Wh+How often 类”题型中的“What 类”题目。上一章归纳的常用回答方式有：1. 直接回答 + 原因（+ 例子）；2. 直接回答 + 例子 + 原因；3. 总述（+ 举例）+ 最典型的例子 + 原因；4. 总述 + 情况 1+ 情况 2。这里笔者尝试用第 1 种方式展开作答。当然第 3 种方式也是可行的，比如迟到的理由取决于是什么事情，不同的事情迟到，可能会有不同的理由。

回答范例

To be honest, I've used so many excuses when I am late for something. For majority of the case, I would blame on the busy traffic in my city, especially during rush hours. For example, I was late for my class yesterday, when our class monitor asked me to tell him the reason why I was late, I said there was a traffic accident happened on my way to school.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：总述 + 情况 1+ 情况 2

题目 2 What would you do if you were late for a meeting?

解题思路

这道题同上一题，这里笔者采用“总述 + 情况 1+ 情况 2”这种方式展开作答。

回答范例

Well, I would say it really depends. If I were late for a meeting with my bestie, I would say sorry to her and explain the reasons why I was late; while if I were late for a very important company meeting, I would make an apology in front of all the people and make a promise that I will be on time next time.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：直接回答 + 例子 + 原因

Being in a hurry

常见考题

051

Do you like to finish things quickly?

When was the last time you did something in a hurry?

What kinds of things will you never do in a hurry?

Why do people make mistakes more easily when they are in a hurry?

题目1 Do you like to finish things quickly?

解题思路

这道题属于“喜好类”题目，我们只要能解释清楚原因即可。这里笔者尝试用“直接回答 + 原因（+ 例子）”这种方式回答。

回答范例

Finishing things quickly is beneficial. First, it could save much time for us. We will have time to do some other things such as doing exercise, hanging out with friends or even going to interest classes. What's more, finishing things quickly could stop procrastination. I really hate the feelings when I have too much unfinished tasks.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：直接回答 + 例子 + 原因

题目2 When was the last time you did something in a hurry?

解题思路

这道题属于“Wh+How often类”题型中的“When类”题目。题中有明显限定词“the last time”，明确问的是“上一次”，因此采用“直接回答 + 原因（+ 例子）”这种方法更容易展开。

回答范例

At the end of the last semester, I had to finish five final papers in just a week, and you know, the professors required us to write at least 5-pages and double space papers, so I had to write them as quickly as I can. Otherwise, I would have got a D. During that week, I just wrote all the time, and I even didn't know what I was trying to prove in my paper.

题目 3 What kinds of things will you never do in a hurry?

解题思路

这道题属于“Wh+How often 类”题目，也可以按照“Type of Questions 类”回答。这里笔者按照“What 类”下的“总述 + 情况 1+ 情况 2”这种方式回答，讨论一下在不同的紧急情况下，分别不会做什么事情。

回答范例

It is not always the same. If my paper is important and I only have one chance to hand in it, I will never do it in a hurry because you know, nobody would like to get bad grades, especially these unchangeable grades. And if I have stomachache these days, I will never eat meals quickly. Otherwise, I don't like to waste time in eating foods.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：直接回答 + 原因（+ 例子）

Forget & Bring things

常见考题

052

Did you ever forget to bring something?
Have you ever forgotten something important?
What do you remember to do every day?
How do you remind yourself?
What helps people to remember things?
Why do old people forget about things easily?
What kinds of things do you have to bring when you go out?
Do you carry different things in the morning and in the evening?

题目 1 Have you ever forgotten something important?

解题思路

对于这类“have you...”开头的题目，之前笔者提到可以用“题目转换法”。还有一种更为直接的方式，那就是把它看作“观点类”题目。这里笔者尝试用“观点类”下的“直接回答 + 原因 + 驳

论”展开回答。

回答范例

In my freshman year, I forgot to prepare a presentation for my English class. It was not the final presentation but it accounted for 20%. So it was still important. You know, almost everyone gave a well-prepared presentation, and I was the only one who apologised for my mistake. Even though my professor forgave me, I still felt bad and I swore I would never do it again.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：直接回答 + 原因（+ 例子）

题目 2 How do you remind yourself?

解题思路

这道题属于“Wh+How often 类”题型中的“How 类”题目。上一章归纳的常用回答方式有：1. 直接回答 + 原因（+ 例子）；2. 总述（+ 举例）+ 最典型的例子 + 原因；3. 总述 + 情况 1+ 情况 2。这里笔者尝试用第 3 种方式展开作答，讨论一下根据不同的事情，分别都用了什么样的方式。

回答范例

Well, there are many effective ways to remind me of some tasks or appointments. For the important deadlines, I will use schedules which include all the important dates to remind myself. But for some appointments, I will use the APP to remind me.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：直接回答 + 原因（+ 例子）

题目 3 What kinds of things do you have to bring when you go out?

解题思路

对于这类题目，我们既可以把它归类到“Wh+How often 类”，也可以归类到“Type of Questions 类”。这道题，笔者采用“Type of Questions”下的“总述 + 最典型的例子及原因 + 其次典型的例子及原因”这种方式回答。

回答范例

Generally speaking, there is a wide range of things that I want to bring. But the most important one is the key of my house. You know, no matter what happens, I can go back home. I will also

bring my mobile phone because it is the tool that I can access with others. I can also use it to solve many problems if I need to.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：总述（+ 举例）+ 最典型的例子 + 原因

Daily routine

常见考题

053

What part of your day do you like best?
What's your daily routine?
What is the busiest part of the day for you?
What's the difference of routine between you and your teenager's times?

题目 1 What part of your day do you like best?

解题思路

这道题属于“喜好类”题目，但和常规喜好题不一样的是，这一题没有用一般疑问句，而是用了特殊疑问句。但回答方式还是一致的，笔者尝试用“直接回答 + 原因（+ 例子）”展开作答。

回答范例

I like the dusk best because it is quiet and peaceful. Unlike mornings which are always busy, dusks are comfy. I don't need to worry about being late at school. After dinner, I can take a walk with my dog, and it is an amazing time to enjoy the sunset.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：直接回答 + 例子 + 原因

题目 2 What's your daily routine?

解题思路

这道题属于“Wh+How often 类”题型中的“What 类”题目。这里笔者用“总述 + 情况 1+ 情况 2”这种方式回答，按照时间分类讨论一下，比如工作日和周末各有什么样的时间安排。

回答范例

During the weekdays, I always get up at 7 a.m. because the school will start at 8 a.m.. After finishing school, I will go back home at 6 p.m. and cook my dinner. Then it is necessary for me to take a walk at 8 p.m.. While on the weekends, I will sleep for the whole morning, and then stay in my bed and watch the movies.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：直接回答 + 原因（+ 例子）

Sleeping

常见考题

054

How many hours do you sleep every day?
Is it necessary to take a nap every day?
Do old people sleep a lot? Why?
How to have a good sleep?
Do you like to get up early in the morning?
Can you sleep well if you are in a noisy environment?

题目 1 Do you like to get up early in the morning?

解题思路

这道题属于“喜好类”题目，这里笔者用“直接回答 + 原因（+ 例子）”这种方式展开作答。

回答范例

Nope, I don't like getting up early in the morning because it makes me feel so tired and I can't concentrate on my work then. Every night, I still have too much stuff to do so I have to stay up late. If I still need to get up early, I will be dizzy.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：直接回答 + 例子 + 原因

题目 2 Can you sleep well if you are in a noisy environment?

解题思路

这道题同之前那道“have you ever forgotten something important”，也是一道询问考生自身情况的题目，笔者同样把它归为“观点类”题目，这里采用“直接回答 + 原因（+ 例子）”展开作答。

回答范例

No, I can't. I'm easily influenced by the noise, so I can't focus on myself. When I began my study in the university, I chose to live in a dorm which had four beds in one room, and I had to live with three roommates. One of my roommates played computer games every night which meant that he needed to talk with his partner. You know, I couldn't fall asleep until he went to bed.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：直接回答 + 原因 + 驳论

Dream

常见考题

055

Do you often have dreams at night?
Have you had a bad dream before?
What was the strangest dream you have had?
What do you usually dream about?
Do you think dream will affect our lives? (Why?)

题目 1 Do you often have dreams at night?

解题思路

这道题的标志词为“often”，可归类为“Wh+How often 类”题型中的“How often 类”题目。对于这类问频率的题目，我们可将其转化成“喜好类”题目——经常做一件事就意味着我们喜欢做，不经常做的事很可能就是不喜欢。但这道题有点特殊，因为做梦并不是主观可以控制的，但其实依旧可采用喜好题的思路去回答。这里笔者尝试用“How often 类”下的“总述 + 情况 1+ 情况 2”展开作答。

回答范例

Not always the same. You know, dreams are not things that we can control. If I am so tired, I will have lots of dreams at night because I heard that too many dreams means that we don't have high quality sleep. But if I don't have many things to worry about, I can always sleep like a baby without having dreams.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：直接回答 + 原因（+ 例子）

题目 2 Have you had a bad dream before?

解题思路

这类题目之前已经出现过，我们可以按“观点类”的答题方式回答。但这道题很难采用分情况讨论的办法，因为每个人都做过噩梦，没办法找到一个合理的分类。因此，笔者采用“直接回答 + 原因（+ 例子）”展开作答。

回答范例

I think everyone has nightmares, so do I. I think bad dream has a direct connection with your mind before falling asleep. I remembered that when I got bad grades, I dreamed about being blamed by my parents, and I cried for a whole night.

题目 3 What was the strangest dream you have had?

解题思路

这道题属于“Wh+How often 类”题型中的“What 类”题目，但跟上一题一样同样无法分情况讨论，因此我们可直接采用“直接回答 + 原因（+ 例子）”，说清楚梦境即可。

回答范例

I think it was about the dream of being a dancer. Actually, I have no idea about how to dance so when I dreamed about being a dancer, it was really weird. It seemed that I learnt how to dance just in a day and I could be a top dancer in the club. It was impossible.

11 购物 & 时尚

Shopping

常见考题

056

Do you like shopping?
Is there anything you don't like about shopping?
Do you prefer shopping alone or with others?
What type of shop do you prefer to go to?
Do you like shopping for clothes or other goods on the Internet?
What are some differences between men and women and shopping?

题目 1 Do you like shopping?

解题思路

这道题属于典型“喜好类”题目，笔者直接采用“直接回答 + 原因（+ 例子）”进行回答。

回答范例

Yes, I am a shopaholic. I would say shopping is a great stress reliever for me. So when I feel so stressed out, I always go to the big shopping mall which is next to my flat and shop many stuff like cosmetics, clothes and things like that.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：直接回答 + 例子 + 原因

题目 2 Do you like shopping for clothes or other goods on the Internet?

解题思路

这道题问的是“你喜欢在网上买衣服或其他东西吗”，属于“喜好类”题型，所以我们可以按照“喜好类”去回答。同时，也可以将这道题目稍微转换一下，题目其实也是在问“你喜欢在网上还是

线下实体店买东西？”这样，我们也可以按照“选择类”回答了。这里笔者尝试用“选择类”下的“直接回答 + 原因 + 反面例子”这种方式回答一下。

回答范例

No, I still prefer physical stores to online stores. The main reason is that I can feel the fabrics and try it on at brick and mortar retailers. If I buy clothes on the Internet, I can't really be sure whether I can fit it on or not. Besides, if the size is not OK, I need to send it back which is time-consuming.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：直接回答 + 原因（+ 例子）

Street markets

常见考题 057

Do you like visiting street markets?
Are street markets very common in your country (or, where you live)?
What is usually sold in these street markets?
Do you prefer to shop at a street market, or in normal shops and shopping malls?
What do you think are the differences between a street market and a supermarket?
Would you visit a street market in a foreign country (if you were visiting that country)?

题目 1 What is usually sold in these street markets?

解题思路

这道题属于“Wh+How often 类”题型中的“What 类”题目。上一章归纳的常用回答方式有：1. 直接回答 + 原因（+ 例子）；2. 直接回答 + 例子 + 原因；3. 总述（+ 举例）+ 最典型的例子 + 原因；4. 总述 + 情况 1+ 情况 2。这里笔者尝试用第 4 种方式展开作答，即讨论在不同的路边集市会卖不同的东西。

回答范例

OK then, I think there are so many things that you can find in the street markets. Some of the street markets mainly sell local street food and some home-made special drinks; while some others sell clothes, accessories or even electronic devices.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：直接回答 + 例子 + 原因

题目 2 What do you think are the differences between a street market and a supermarket?

解题思路

这道题的标志词为“what are the differences between...and...”，属于“对比选择类”题型中的“对比类”。主要有以下两种回答方式：1. 直接回答 + 原因 + 反面例子（if 条件句）；2. 直接回答 + 原因 + 驳论。题目问的是路边摊和超市有哪些不同，这里笔者用第 1 种方式展开作答。

回答范例

Well, I would say there are huge differences between a street market and a supermarket. For example, the price of a product in a supermarket is higher than their counterparts. Like, I can buy one apple for 3RMB in a street market, while if I buy the same thing in a supermarket, I need to pay 5RMB.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：直接回答 + 原因 + 驳论

Colours

常见考题

058

What colours do you like?
What's your favourite colour?
Are there any colours you dislike? (Why?)
Are colours important to you?
Were colours important to you when you were a child?
When you are buying something, is the colour important to you?
Do you like to wear bright-coloured clothes?
Do you usually wear clothes in your favourite colour?
Do you prefer light or dark (or, bright) colours?
What's the most popular colour in your country?

Are there any colours that have a special meaning in your country?
What's the difference between men and women's preference on colours?
Do colours affect your mood?
What colour would you choose to paint the walls of your room?
Is there any colour you would not want your walls to be? (Why?)
Do you think different types of people like different colours?

题目 1 What colours do you like?

解题思路

这道题属于“喜好类”题目，这里笔者尝试用“直接回答 + 原因（+ 例子）”这种方式展开作答。但其实，这道题也可以按照“Types of Questions 类”进行回答，无论使用哪种方式，都要清楚地表达出自己的观点。

描述各种颜色

beige 象牙白
cream 奶油色
cooper 铜色
navy 海军蓝
tan 黄褐色
multi-coloured 多彩的
metallic 金属色

回答范例

Personally speaking, I like blue most, especially the sky blue. This colour always puts me in a good mood whenever and wherever I see it. So, I painted my bedroom in sky blue. Also, I like to shop many things in blue, like my clothes, my backpack, pencil box and things like that.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：总述（+ 举例）+ 最典型的例子 + 原因

题目 2 Do you like to wear bright-coloured clothes?

解题思路

这道题属于典型的“喜好类”题目。这里笔者尝试用“直接回答 + 原因（+ 例子）”展开作答。

回答范例

I am so crazy about bright colours, so I bought many clothes in bright colours which put me in a good mood whenever I wear them. Even during winter time, you can easily pick me out in a gloomy and cloudy day, as I wear a bright yellow winter coat pretty much everyday.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：直接回答 + 例子 + 原因

题目 3 What's the most popular colour in your country?

解题思路

这道题属于“Wh+How often 类”题型中的“What 类”题目。上一章归纳的常用回答方式有：1. 直接回答 + 原因（+ 例子）；2. 直接回答 + 例子 + 原因；3. 总述（+ 举例）+ 最典型的例子 + 原因；4. 总述 + 情况 1+ 情况 2。这里笔者尝试用第 2 种方式展开作答；当然你也可以分情况讨论，比如不同时期可能流行不同的颜色。

回答范例

I would say red is the most popular colour in China. Especially during the Chinese Spring Festival, you can see many red things like red lanterns and red couplets. This is due to the fact that we do believe that red things can expel the evil spirits.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：总述 + 情况 1+ 情况 2

题目 4 Do colours affect your mood?

解题思路

对于这一类没有明显标志词的“一般疑问句”，笔者将其归类到“观点类”题目。这里笔者仍采用“观点类”下的“总述 + 情况 1+ 情况 2”这种方式展开作答。

回答范例

I think so, colours do affect my mood. If I wear something with bright colours, like yellow, red or other warm colours, I will feel so energetic for the whole day. But if I wear dark colours, I'll feel a bit of 'blues'. So that's the reason why I prefer to wear clothes with bright colours.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：直接回答 + 原因（+ 例子）

Clothes

常见考题

059

What clothes do you usually like to wear?

Do/Did you wear the same clothes at school and at home?

Will you change your clothes when you go home today?

Did you have any special clothes to wear when you were a child? And did you like them?

题目 1 What clothes do you usually like to wear?

解题思路

这道题属于“Wh+How often 类”题型中的“What 类”题目。上一章归纳的常用回答方式有：1. 直接回答 + 原因（+ 例子）；2. 直接回答 + 例子 + 原因；3. 总述（+ 举例）+ 最典型的例子 + 原因；4. 总述 + 情况 1+ 情况 2。这里笔者尝试用第 1 种方式展开作答。

描述服装的风格

vintage style 复古风

British style 英伦风

casual style 休闲风

French effortlessly chic 法式随性风

simple style 简约风

bohemian style 波西米亚风

回答范例

I usually like to wear some casual clothes because I'd like to wear something really comfortable. For example, a white cotton T-shirt, a pair of blue jeans with a pair of trainers.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：总述 + 情况 1+ 情况 2

题目 2 Will you change your clothes when you go home today?

解题思路

这道题的标志词为“will you change...”，属于“预测类”题目。本题问的是当天的计划，因此笔者尝试用“（直接回答 +）短期计划 + 长期计划”这种方式回答，把回家后的时间分为“刚到家那会儿”和“睡觉时”，分别会穿不一样的衣服。

描述服装的种类

outfit 整套服装
cardigan 开襟羊毛衫
trench coat 风衣
lingerie 女士内衣
nightwear 睡衣
jumpers 针织套衫；无袖连衣裙
blouse 女士衬衣
shirt 男士衬衫
underwear 内衣
socks 袜子
skirt 裙子
coat 大衣
jacket 夹克
pants 裤子（美式）
trousers 裤子（英式）
T-shirt T 恤
hat 帽子
cap 棒球帽
dress 连衣裙
suit 套装
costume 戏装

回答范例

Yes, I will change my clothes when I get home today. I'd like to put on some comfortable home wear clothes made by cotton immediately after I reach home. And then before I hit the sack, I would like to put on my favourite pajamas. It won't make me feel cozy and comfortable if I wear my outfit for the whole day at home.

Shoes

常见考题

060

Do you like shopping for shoes? (Why?/Why not?)
How often do you buy shoes?
How long is it since you bought some shoes?
What kinds of shoes do you usually buy (or, prefer to buy?)
What's your favourite type of shoes?
Do you prefer comfortable shoes or good-looking shoes?
Do you spend a lot on shoes?
Have you ever bought shoes online? If not, will you?
Do you know anyone who likes to buy a lot of shoes?

题目1 How often do you buy shoes?

解题思路

这道题属于“Wh+How often类”题型中的“How often类”题目。上一章归纳的常用回答方式有：1. 直接回答 + 原因（+ 例子）；2. 直接回答 + 例子 + 原因；3. 总述 + 情况1+ 情况2。这里笔者尝试用第1种方式展开作答。

回答范例

To be honest, I rarely buy new shoes. You know, my mum she is a shopaholic and she buys shoes and clothes for me every now and then. So, I don't need to shop by myself which is a really good thing as I have a really bad sense of direction; I always feel so lost when I am in a big shopping mall.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：直接回答 + 例子 + 原因

题目2 Have you ever bought shoes online? If not, will you?

解题思路

这道题问的是“你曾经从网上买过鞋子吗？如果没的话，以后会从上面买吗？”转换一下，其实这道题目是问“你会从网上买鞋子吗？”可以直接按照“观点类”题目回答，这里笔者用“直接回答 + 例子 + 原因”展开作答。

描述各种鞋子

high-heeled shoes 高跟鞋	boots 靴子
slippers 拖鞋	sandals 凉鞋
sneakers 运动鞋（美式）	leather shoes 皮鞋
trainers 运动鞋（英式）	flat shoes 平底鞋
sport shoes 运动鞋	flip flops 人字拖

回答范例

Yes, I have bought plenty of shoes online. My favourite website of buying shoes is shoeaholics.com where you can have different types of shoes range from flip flops to high heels. What I like most about buying shoes online is that I can always filter the categories, which I can choose one ideal pair among variety of commodities.

题目 3 Do you know anyone who likes to buy a lot of shoes?

解题思路

这道题比较特殊，问的是“你认识喜欢买很多鞋子的人吗”，仔细想一下，其实这道题完全可以转换为“Who do you know likes to buy a lot of shoes?”这样就可以将其转换为“Who 类”来回答，即“直接回答 + 人物介绍 + 与问题相关的内容”。

回答范例

Yes, my bestie Jessy is a shoeaholic. She has a really big shoes closet to display all her shoes at her place. One time, she bought ten pair of shoes in a day, which sounds really crazy to me.

Bags

常见考题

061

Do you like bags?
What types of bags do you like?
Do you usually carry a bag (when you go out)?
What types of bags do you use (in your everyday life)?
Do you have different bags for different occasions (or, different purposes)?
What do you put in these bags?
What sorts of bags do women like to buy?

题目 1 What types of bags do you use (in your everyday life)?

解题思路

这道题的标志词为“what types of...”，属于“Type of Questions 类”题目。这里笔者采用“总述（+ 举例）+ 最典型的例子 + 原因”这种方式回答，其中“最典型的例子”这一描述在此变为“最常用的包包”。

描述各种包包

backpack 双肩包
clutch/hand bag 手包
cross body bag 斜挎包
leather bag 皮质包

shoulder bag 单肩包
tote (bag) 手提袋
bum bag 腰包
coin purse 零钱包
duffle bag 行李袋
satchel 牛津包

回答范例

Well, I like all different types of bags. But in terms of which type I use most, I would say is my sports bag. It is a very big one so I can put all the stuff I need every day in this bag; apart from that, this bag is well-designed, so it can fit all my outfits.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：总述 + 最典型的例子及原因 + 其次典型的例子及原因

题目 2 Do you have different bags for different occasions (or, different purposes)?

解题思路

这道题不属于上一章讨论的典型题目类型，对于这种“一般疑问句”，笔者将其看作“观点类”题目，采用“直接回答 + 原因（+ 例子）”展开作答。

回答范例

Absolutely yes. I will take different bags for different occasions. That's simply because I need to wear different clothes to different places, so I do need different bags to fit my different clothing style. For instance, I just take a tote bag for daily use, but if I go to some fancy balls, I would take a clutch with delicate design.

Hats

常见考题 062

Do you like to wear hats?
What kinds of hats do you have?
Where do you like to buy hats?
Is wearing hats popular in your country?

题目 1 Do you like to wear hats?

解题思路

“时尚类”话题基本上都会有“你是否喜欢……”这种问题，时刻记住要用简单的方式去回答。这类问题的一个加分点在于考生可以说出具体喜欢这类物品中的哪一种，比如帽子类中的牛仔帽。这里笔者尝试用“直接回答 + 原因（+ 例子）”这种最常用的方式展开作答。

描述各种帽子

sunbonnet 太阳帽
knitted hat 针织帽
beret 贝雷帽
bucket hat 渔夫帽（指有边的圆帽）
straw hat 草帽
cowboy hat 牛仔帽
bowler hat 圆顶礼帽

回答范例

I am a person who really loves to wear hats because I think hats are practical, attractive and fun to wear during hot, sunny summer months. You know, I always wear sunbonnets when I go to school every day; it could match my clothes and block UV radiation. Sometimes, I can also wear a cowboy hat which makes me look cool.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：直接回答 + 例子 + 原因

题目 2 What kinds of hats do you have?

解题思路

这道题的标志词为“what kinds of...”，属于“Type of Questions 类”题目。这里笔者采用“总述（+ 举例）+ 最典型的例子 + 原因”这种方式回答，但回答的思路跟之前有些不一样。因为答案为否定的，所以这个回答方式里的“总述 + 举例”就相应变成了“直接回答”，“最典型的例子”自然成为了“唯一拥有的帽子”。如果考生不知道怎么说各种类型的帽子时，这不失为一种好的回答办法！

回答范例

Actually, I am not the type of person who loves to buy hats and wear hats. So the only hat that I have is a cowboy hat. I bought it to protect myself from the sun for a spring outing, but I don't think it worked.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：总述 + 最典型的例子及原因 + 其次典型的例子及原因

题目 3 Where do you like to buy hats?

解题思路

这道题属于“Wh+How often 类”题型中的“Where 类”题目。上一章归纳的常用回答方式有：1. 直接回答 + 地点介绍 + 与问题相关的内容；2. 总述 + 情况 1+ 情况 2。这里笔者尝试用第 2 种方式展开作答，分情况讨论一下分别去什么地方买什么样的帽子。

可以买到帽子的商店

up-market shop 精品店
chain store 连锁商店
bazaar 集市
hypermarket (尤指市郊的) 超大型自助商场
garment boutique 服装精品店
mega-store 大型商店
bargain counter 廉价货柜台
yardsale 庭院旧货出售
sales booth 销售摊位
sales kiosks 售货亭
shopping mall 购物商场
shopping centre 大型购物中心
corner shop 住宅区附近的小商店
plaza 多功能购物中心
department store 百货商店

回答范例

It really depends because I will never buy things just in one place. You know, sometimes, I will go to the department store to buy some high quality hats. These hats are expensive but durable, and they could also protect UV. But for some fashionable hats, I would go to some up-market shops to buy them. Even though most of them are cheap, they look so cool.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：直接回答 + 地点介绍 + 与问题相关的内容

Jewellery

常见考题

063

What's your attitude toward jewellery?
What kind of jewellery do you like to buy?

Why do so many people choose to buy expensive jewellery to maintain value?

How often do you wear jewellery?

题目 1 What's your attitude toward jewellery?

解题思路

这道题的标志词为“what's your attitude toward”，等同于“what do you think about”，属于“观点类”题目。这里笔者尝试用“直接回答 + 原因（+ 例子）”这种方式展开作答。

回答范例

I would say jewellery is beautiful and they are very good accessories for ladies. I think some of jewellery like diamonds really fit to evening gowns, especially when you attend a ball or some important events, like your wedding.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：表态 + 原因 + 例子

题目 2 What kind of jewellery do you like to buy?

解题思路

这道题可以看作“Type of Questions 类”，也可以看作“Wh+How often 类”题型中的“What 类”题目。这里笔者以“What 类”下的“总述 + 情况 1+ 情况 2”这种方式展开作答。

回答范例

Frankly speaking, I love buying all different kinds of jewellery, but sometimes it depends on my budget. If I have a lot of money, I would like to buy some gold jewellery or diamonds. However, I'm still a student and can't afford too expensive jewellery, I just buy some cheap ones with good designs.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：直接回答 + 原因（+ 例子）

Watch

常见考题

064

Do you wear a watch?
How often do you wear a watch?
What was your first watch like?
What kinds of watches do you like to wear?

题目 What kinds of watches do you like to wear?

解题思路

这道题的标志词为“what kinds of...do you like”，属于“Type of Questions 类”和“喜好类”题目的结合。因此，可供考生选择的回答方式很多。这里笔者尝试用“喜好类”下的“直接回答 + 原因（+ 例子）”展开作答。

描述各种手表

wrist watch 手表
shockproof 防震的
waterproof 防水的
keep good time（钟、表等）走得准
mechanical watch 机械表
quartz watch 石英手表
antique watch 古董手表
smart watch 智能手表
sports watch 运动手表
electronic watch 电子手表
smart watch 智能手表
hands 指针
watch-face 表盘
buckle 表扣
bracelet 表带
scratch resistance 抗划伤性
water resistance 防水性

回答范例

Well, I would say that I am a big fan of the sports wrist watch. This type of watch usually has so many functions, like recording how many calories I burn each day, checking my heart beats while I'm doing some workout. You know, I am a huge fan of outdoor activities. So, this type of watch is really useful for me.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：总述（+ 举例）+ 最典型的例子 + 原因

Mirror

常见考题

065

Do you have a mirror at home?
How often do you look at yourself in the mirror every day?
Have you ever bought clothes without looking into mirrors?
Do you think mirror is necessary?
Have you ever bought mirrors?
Would you use mirrors to decorate rooms?

题目 1 Do you have a mirror at home?

解题思路

对于这种“一般疑问句”，笔者将其看作“观点类”题目，这里采用“总述 + 情况 1+ 情况 2”这种方式展开作答。

回答范例

Well, I do have several mirrors at home. My dressing table in my bedroom has got a big mirror which is very convenient for me when I need to put on make-up. Besides, there is another big mirror in my bathroom that I can check whether my teeth are clean after brush.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：直接回答 + 原因（+ 例子）

题目 2 Do you think mirror is necessary?

解题思路

这道题属于“观点类”题目，这里笔者采用“直接回答 + 原因（+ 例子）”这种方式展开作答。

回答范例

Yes, I do believe that a mirror is a necessity in our daily life and no one can live without it. This is simply because people nowadays care more about their appearance. For example, girls like to keep a small mirror in their make-up bag so that they can easily reapply lipstick after dinner.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：直接回答 + 原因 + 驳论

12 媒介 & 电子产品 & 社会交往

News

常见考题 066

Are you interested in the news?
What kinds of news are you most interested in?
Why do you want to know the latest news?
How do you normally get news?
How important is it to you to get the news every day?
Do you think the Internet is a good way to get news?

题目 1 Why do you want to know the latest news?

解题思路

这道题属于“Wh + How often 类”题型中的“Why 类”题目。这里笔者尝试用“直接回答（原因）+ 例子”的方式展开作答。

回答范例

Well, I would say the main reason is that news could be a good topic to talk with some new friends or start a conversation with some strangers. For example, if I can't find any topics to talk about, I will mention the lastest news.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：（总述 +）原因 1+ 原因 2

题目 2 How do you normally get news?

解题思路

这道题属于“Wh+How often 类”题型中的“How 类”题目。上一章归纳的常用回答方式有：1. 直接回答 + 原因（+ 例子）；2. 总述（+ 举例）+ 最典型的例子 + 原因；3. 总述 + 情况 1+ 情况 2。这里笔者尝试用第 1 种方式展开作答。

回答范例

Personally speaking, I normally get news from the Internet. As I don't read newspapers or watch TV, I mainly get news from some news apps on my phone, such as Wangyi News or BBC News Apps. Reading news is a great way to kill time when I am wating for the bus.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：总述 + 情况 1+ 情况 2

Newspaper & Magazine

常见考题

067

Do you often read newspapers?
Which do you prefer reading, magazines or newspapers?
What kinds/types of newspapers (or magazines) do you usually read?
How old were you when you first started to read newspapers?
Do you think it's important to read newspapers? (Why?/Why not?)
Why do (you think) people read newspapers?
What different types of newspapers are there in your country?
What kinds of news do people in your country read in newspapers?
Do you prefer to read about domestic (or local) news or international news? (Why?)
Do you think newspapers will be very important to you in the future?
What are some methods that newspapers use to attract readers?
What influence do you think newspapers have on society?

题目1 Do you often read newspapers?

解题思路

这道题属于“Wh+How often类”题型中的“How often类”。之前也提到过，“How often类”题目可以转换成“喜好类”题目来回答。这里尝试用“直接回答+原因（+例子）”这种方式来回答。

回答范例

Well, I seldom read newspapers because I think the news is redundant. You know, we can find out what's happened just from the headlines. So why do I waste much time to read the texts? I really think buying newspapers is money-consuming as I only read the titles.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：直接回答+情况1+情况2

题目2 Which do you prefer reading, magazines or newspapers?

解题思路

这道题的标志词为“which do you prefer, ...or...”，属于“对比选择类”题型中的“选择类”题目，答题时主要的思路是先表明立场，再说选择方的好处和没选择方的坏处。这里笔者尝试用“直接回答+原因+反面例子”这种方式展开作答。

回答范例

To some extent, they're the same, but I prefer reading magazines. You know, they're more abundant than newspapers, so I won't feel bored when I read them. If I choose to read a newspaper, I could only read a large number of words, and I'm sure that I can finish reading all parts of the newspaper in an hour.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：直接回答+原因+驳论

题目3 What kinds/types of newspapers (or magazines) do you usually read?

解题思路

这道题的标志词为“what types of...”，属于“Type of Questions类”题目。这里笔者采用“总述（+举例）+最典型的例子+原因”这种方式回答，其中“最典型的例子”这一描述在此变为“最

有趣的版块”。

描述报纸及相关

daily 日报
morning edition 晨报
evening edition 晚报
government organ 官报
party organ 党报
political news 政治报纸
the front page 头版，第一版
article 报道
headline 标题
banner headline 通栏标题
byline 标题下的署名行
big news 头条新闻
hot news 最新新闻
exclusive news 独家新闻
scoop 抢先报道的新闻；独家新闻
criticism 评论
review/comment 时评
book review 书评
topicality 时事性，时事问题
city news 社会新闻
letters 读者投书栏
cartoon/comics 漫画
serial story 连载小说
obituary notice 讣告
public notice 公告
advertisement 广告
classified ad 分类广告
flash-news 大新闻
the sports page 体育版，运动栏
entertainment news 娱乐报
literary criticism 文学评论，文学批评
Sunday features 周日特刊
news beat 记者负责的报道领域
'Braille' edition 点字版（供盲人阅读）

回答范例

Generally speaking, there is a wide range of newspapers that I can read such as entertainment news, the sports page and political news. But the most interesting one for me to read is the sports column because I am a sports fan and I don't want to miss any of my favourite sporting events. So I have to read it to get the latest sports news.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：总述 + 最典型的例子及原因 + 其次典型的例子及原因

题目 4 How old were you when you first started to read newspapers?

解题思路

之前没有专门讲过“How old 类”的题型，但不难发现这道题可以转化成询问时间的“When 类”题目。因此，笔者可将其归类到“Wh+How often 类”题型中，可按照“When 类”的回答方式回答。这道题中有明显的限定词“first”，明确问的是“第一次”，因此采用“直接回答 + 原因（+ 例子）”这种方法更容易展开。

回答范例

I can't remember the exact time but I remember that in first grade, my school had already booked the studying newspaper for us. So I would suppose that I started to read a newspaper in my primary school. The name of the newspaper was 'Student Times'.

题目 5 Do you prefer to read about domestic (or local) news or international news? (Why?)

解题思路

这道题的标志词为“do you prefer, ...or...”，属于“对比选择类”题型中的“选择类”题目，答题时主要的思路是先表明立场，再说选择方的好处和没选择方的坏处。这里笔者尝试用“直接回答 + 原因 + 驳论”这种方式展开作答。

回答范例

Well, between the two, I would go with reading domestic news because I think they are closer to my life. You know, I can find out the news about food security, the change in government policy and education. Even though some people believe that international news are much more comprehensive, they are useless to our life.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：直接回答 + 原因 + 反面例子

题目 6 Do you think newspapers will be very important to you in the future?

解题思路

这道题的标志词“do you think...be important to...”和“will be...in the future”，属于“重要性类”和“预测类”题目的结合。此外，还可以按照“观点类”的题目来回答，比如“总述 + 情况 1+ 情况 2”，可以从报纸的种类考虑，哪一类报纸会对自己越来越有用，而哪一类报纸对自己无用。这里笔者尝试用“直接回答 + 原因（+ 例子）”这种简单易行的方式展开作答。

回答范例

I think newspapers are becoming less important to me in the future because what I can find out from the newspapers could also be learnt online. What's more, finding some information online is more effective and convenient. For example, we can find all the information about the news online but actually, the newspaper only publish the limited information in an issue.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：总述 + 情况 1+ 情况 2

Books

常见考题

068

Do you like reading books? (Why or why not?)
What (kinds of) books do you like to read?
How often do you read?
Do you have many books at home?
Did you read much when you were a child?
For children, what do you think are the benefits of reading?
Do people in your country do enough reading?
Do people in your country like to read?
Do you like to buy books or borrow books?
Will you read books on electronic devices?

题目 1 Do you like reading books? (Why or why not?)

解题思路

这道题属于“喜好类”题目，这里笔者仍采用“直接回答 + 原因（+ 例子）”这种方式回答。

回答范例

Well, I don't like reading books because I think it is tedious. You know, in the past, reading books is the only way to kill time but now, we have several methods to have fun. We can play computer games, watch movies or chat with friends. So I don't want to just sit there and read books.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：直接回答 + 例子 + 原因

题目2 What (kinds of) books do you like to read?

解题思路

这道题的标志词为“what kinds of...do you like”，属于“Type of Questions类”和“喜好类”题目的结合。因此，可供考生选择的回答方式很多。这里笔者尝试用“Type of Questions类”下的“总述（+举例）+最典型的例子+原因”展开作答。

描述各种图书

love stories 恋爱类
adventure 探险类
horror 恐怖类
detective stories 侦探类
history 历史类
philosophy 哲学类
poem 诗歌类
novel 小说类
short stories 短篇小说
an autobiographical novella 一部自传体小说

回答范例

There are several kinds of books that I enjoy reading such as short stories, science fiction and autobiographical novellas. Among which I like adventure stories most because in these stories, there are many imaginary plots. These creative parts attract me.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：总述+最典型的例子及原因+其次典型的例子及原因

题目3 Did you read much when you were a child?

解题思路

对于这一类没有明显标志词的“一般疑问句”，笔者将其归类到“观点类”题目。这里仍采用“直接回答+原因（+例子）”这种方式展开作答。

回答范例

I read a lot of books when I was little because my grandfather is a professor who loves reading and he has a significant influence on me. He always brought me to the bookstore during the weekend and bought several books for me. That's why I have a good habit of reading.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：直接回答+原因+驳论

题目 4 Do you like to buy books or borrow books?

解题思路

这道题的标志词为“do you like to...or...”，属于“对比选择类”题型中的“选择类”题目，答题时主要的思路是先表明立场，再说选择方的好处和没选择方的坏处。这里笔者尝试用“直接回答 + 原因 + 驳论”这种方式展开作答。

回答范例

Personally speaking, I prefer buying books. Because I am a bookworm, I enjoy collecting different types of books and putting them in order on my bookshelf. Although borrowing books from library saves money, I can't take them off my bookshelf whenever I want to read them, because they are not my personal property.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：直接回答 + 原因 + 反面例子

TV/Television

常见考题

069

Do you like watching TV?
Do you watch TV often?
What TV programs are you interested in?
What types of TV programmes do you (most) like to watch?
What's your favourite TV program?
When do you watch TV?
Do you like to watch TV programs alone or with others?
Did you watch much TV when you were a child? (How much?)
What types of programs did you watch when you were a child?
Do you think TV has changed since you were a child?

题目1 What TV programs are you interested in?

解题思路

这道题属于“Wh+How often类”题型中的“What类”题目。上一章归纳的常用回答方式有：1. 直接回答 + 原因（+ 例子）；2. 直接回答 + 例子 + 原因；3. 总述（+ 举例）+ 最典型的例子 + 原因；4. 总述 + 情况1+ 情况2。这里笔者尝试用第1种方式展开作答。

描述各种电视节目

reality show 真人秀
chat show 访谈节目
fashion show 时装秀
quiz show 智力竞赛
talk show 脱口秀
talent show 选秀节目

回答范例

I am interested in entertainment programs because I'd like to watch some funny shows to cheer me up. Watching TV is a good way for me to relax. The entertainment programs usually put me in a good mood.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：总述 + 情况1+ 情况2

题目2 When do you watch TV?

解题思路

这道题属于“Wh+How often类”题型中的“When类”题目。上一章归纳的常用回答方式有：1. 直接回答 + 原因（+ 例子）；2. 直接回答 + 例子 + 原因；3. 总述 + 情况1+ 情况2。这里笔者尝试用第1种方式展开作答。

回答范例

I always watch TV at night before I go to bed. I think watching some entertainment shows is a good way to release my pressure and help me to get a good sleep. You know, when I focus on the content of the TV show, I almost always forget my boring tasks. So, I will fall asleep in a good mood.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：总述 + 情况1+ 情况2

题目 3 Do you like to watch TV programs alone or with others?

解题思路

这道题的标志词为“do you like to...or...”，属于“对比选择类”题型中的“选择类”题目，答题时主要的思路是先表明立场，再说选择方的好处和没选择方的坏处。这里笔者尝试用“直接回答 + 原因 + 驳论”这种方式展开作答。

回答范例

Well, personally speaking, I prefer to watch programs with others. For me, watching TV is a great family activity. I really enjoy talking with my family members about the TV programs. While watching TV by myself is so boring, I can't share my feelings and emotions with others immediately which will make me frustrated.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：直接回答 + 原因 + 反面例子

Films/Movies

常见考题

070

Do you like to watch films?
What kinds of movies do you like best?
Do you prefer foreign films or domestic films?
How often do you go to a cinema to watch a movie?
What was the first film that you watched?

题目 1 What kinds of movies do you like best?

解题思路

这道题的标志词为“what kinds of...do you like”，属于“Type of Questions 类”和“喜好类”题目的结合。但这道题有明确的限定词“like best”，所以按照前一类题型回答不太合适，这里笔者采用“喜好类”下的答题方式“直接回答 + 原因（+ 例子）”尝试作答：先说自己喜欢爱情电影，因为爱情电影里男主角都很帅，比如电影《泰坦尼克号》里的莱昂纳多·迪卡普里奥。

回答范例

Well, I'm crazy about romance movies. You know, the stars in this kinda movie are all good-looking. For example, my favourite movie is 'Titanic' , which starred Leonardo DiCaprio. I am a huge fan of his.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：直接回答 + 例子 + 原因

题目 2 Do you prefer foreign films or domestic films?

解题思路

这道题的标志词为“do you prefer, ...or...”，属于“对比选择类”题型中的“选择类”题目，答题时主要的思路是先表明立场，再说选择方的好处和没选择方的坏处。这里笔者尝试用“直接回答 + 原因 + 驳论”这种方式展开作答。

回答范例

Well, I prefer foreign movies, especially the Hollywood movies. The main reason is that I can learn different culture as well as a second language from this kind of movie, while I can't learn foreign culture and English from Chinese movies.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：直接回答 + 原因 + 反面例子

Advertisement

常见考题

071

Are there many advertisements in your country?
Why do you think there are so many advertisements now?
What are the various places where we see advertisements?
Do you like advertisements?
How do you feel about advertisement?
What kind of advertisement do you like the most?
Do you often see some advertisements in the place where you live?

How do you like advertisements on TV?
Do they encourage/persuade you to buy some related products?
How do you like advertisements on the Internet?

题目 1 Are there many advertisements in your country?

解题思路

这道题属于“观点类”题目。这里笔者采用“直接回答 + 原因 + 驳论”这种方式展开作答。

回答范例

I do believe that there are many advertisements in China and you know, we can find them everywhere, on the road, in the bus or on TV. Even though people would say that compared with the number of the products, the amount of ads is not too much. I have to say that advertising occupies too much of our life.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：直接回答 + 原因（+ 例子）

题目 2 Why do you think there are so many advertisements now?

解题思路

这道题属于“Wh + How often 类”题型中的“Why 类”题目。上一章归纳的常用回答方式有：1.（总述 +）原因 1+ 原因 2；2. 直接回答（原因）+ 例子。这里笔者尝试用第 1 种方式展开作答。

回答范例

Well, the main reason is that we have more and more products in the world, so the companies have to release the advertisement to enhance the competitiveness. What's more, it's also because we have more ways to find ads.

题目 3 How do you feel about advertisements?

解题思路

这道题的标志词为“how do you feel about...”，属于“观点类”题目。这里笔者尝试用“直接回答 + 原因 + 驳论”这种方式展开作答。当然，你也可以分情况讨论，比如将广告进行分类，对“公益广告”和“销售产品的广告”分别有什么感受。

回答范例

I would say that advertisements are time-consuming and dull, especially when you want to watch the videos quickly, the 60 second advertisement is so long. Even though some people believe that advertisements provide us a good way to know more about the products, most of the products are useless to us. In other words, we will never buy them.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：总述 + 情况 1+ 情况 2

Computer

常见考题

072

How often do you use computer?
What kinds of computers are popular in your country?
What do you usually use your computer for?
Who taught you how to use a computer?
Do you think computers have changed your life a lot?

题目 1 How often do you use computer?

解题思路

这道题属于“Wh+How often 类”题型中的“How often 类”题目。上一章归纳的常用回答方式有：1. 直接回答 + 原因（+ 例子）；2. 直接回答 + 例子 + 原因；3. 总述 + 情况 1+ 情况 2。这里笔者尝试用第 3 种方式展开作答。

回答范例

It is not always the same because you know, as a student, I am not allowed to use computer on weekdays even though I want to do some research. My parents don't want me to play computer games too much. But during the weekends, I can do whatever I like with my computer, so I often use my computer for the whole day. I can watch a movie, chat with my friends, or play online games.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：直接回答 + 例子 + 原因

题目 2 What do you usually use your computer for?

解题思路

这道题的标志词为“what...for”，属于“Wh+How often 类”题目，这里笔者用“总述 + 情况 1+ 情况 2”这种方式来回答。

回答范例

It really depends. If I have unfinished essays, then I will definitely use my computer to write them. But if I have nothing important to do, computer becomes an effective way to kill time. I can use it to watch movies and chat with my friends.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：直接回答 + 原因（+ 例子）

题目 3 Who taught you how to use a computer?

解题思路

这道题属于“Wh+How often 类”题型中的“Who 类”题目。这里笔者还是用“直接回答 + 人物介绍 + 与问题相关的内容”这种方式展开作答。

回答范例

My father, who is an engineer, taught me how to use a computer. When I was 12 years old, he brought a new tool from the USA, and he called it computer. The screen was amazing to me, a 12-year old girl, and he taught me how to type words.

题目 4 Do you think computers have changed your life a lot?

解题思路

这道题属于“观点类”题目。上一章归纳的常用回答方式有：1. 直接回答 + 原因（+ 例子）；2. 直接回答 + 原因 + 驳论；3. 总述 + 情况 1+ 情况 2。这里笔者采用第 1 种方式回答。当然，你也可以用第 3 种分情况讨论，比如说一下在不同的方面分别产生了什么改变。

回答范例

There is no doubt that computers have totally changed my life because I can solve all the problems by using computers. Last week, when I wanted to buy some balloons, I opened my computer and ordered them online. And I can also use computers to hand in the papers and talk with my professors.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：总述 + 情况 1+ 情况 2

Mobile phone

常见考题

073

How often do you use your mobile phone?
Can you describe your mobile phone ?
What was your first mobile phone?
Would you buy a new one in the future?
How has your mobile phone changed your life?

题目 1 How often do you use your mobile phone?

解题思路

这道题属于“Wh+How often 类”题型中的“How often 类”题目。上一章归纳的常用回答方式有：1. 直接回答 + 原因（+ 例子）；2. 直接回答 + 例子 + 原因；3. 总述 + 情况 1+ 情况 2。这里笔者尝试用第 3 种方式展开作答。

回答范例

It depends. On weekdays, when I study in my school, I am not allowed to use my phone during the day, so I only can use my phone at night. But during the weekends, I use it almost all day, because it is a good thing to kill my time.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：直接回答 + 原因（+ 例子）

题目 2 What was your first mobile phone?

解题思路

这道题属于“Wh+How often 类”题型中的“What 类”题目。上一章归纳的常用回答方式有：1. 直接回答 + 原因（+ 例子）；2. 直接回答 + 例子 + 原因；3. 总述（+ 举例）+ 最典型的例子 + 原因；4. 总述 + 情况 1+ 情况 2。题目中有明确的限定词“first”，无法采用第 3 和第 4 种方式；这里笔者尝试用第 1 种方式展开作答。

回答范例

I got my first mobile phone when I was 12 years old. When I studied in junior high school, I had to live in school dorm, so my mom bought me a traditional handset which could only make phone calls. The brand was Nokia.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：直接回答 + 例子 + 原因

题目 3 How has your mobile phone changed your life?

解题思路

这道题属于“Wh+How often 类”题型中的“How 类”题目。上一章归纳的常用回答方式有：1. 直接回答 + 原因（+ 例子）；2. 总述（+ 举例）+ 最典型的例子 + 原因；3. 总述 + 情况 1+ 情况 2。这里笔者尝试用第 1 种方式展开作答。

回答范例

It brings convenience to my life because I can contact with the person I want to find no matter where I am. Sometimes, I also can facetime with them. It is like that I am still with them. When I studied in the USA, I always missed my family members, and thanks to my phone, I could talk with them every day.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：总述 + 情况 1+ 情况 2

Communication

常见考题

074

Are you good at communicating with others?
How do you usually communicate with your friends?
How often do you communicate with your parents?
Do you think there is any difference between communicating with friends and parents?

题目 How often do you communicate with your parents?

解题思路

这道题属于“Wh+How often 类”题型中的“How often 类”题目。上一章归纳的常用回答方式有：1. 直接回答 + 原因（+ 例子）；2. 直接回答 + 例子 + 原因；3. 总述 + 情况 1+ 情况 2。这里笔者尝试用第 2 种方式展开作答。

回答范例

Well, to be honest, I only occasionally talk to my parents. The only time we can sit in the same table and have a real conversation with each other is during dinner time. My folks are so quite busy with their work, I have piles of homework everyday. So, we don't really talk that often.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：总述 + 情况 1+ 情况 2

Social network

常见考题

075

What kinds of social networking websites do you like to use?
Are you a social person?
What kinds of people do you like to be friends with on those websites?
Is it easy to find real friends on a social networking website?
What kinds of chatting app or software do you like to use?

题目 1 Is it easy to find real friends on a social networking website?

解题思路

这道题属于“观点类”题目，这里笔者尝试用“直接回答 + 原因（+ 例子）”这种方式展开作答。

回答范例

Yup, I think so. I am quite busy with my work and don't have too much time socialising with others after work. So, the social networking website is a good place for me to meet people. Thanks to it, I met my bestie who shares the same taste in music. We still hang out a lot if both of us are not too busy.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：总述 + 情况 1+ 情况 2

题目 2 What kinds of chatting app or software do you like to use?

解题思路

这道题的标志词为“what kinds of...do you like”，属于“Type of Questions 类”和“喜好类”题目的结合。因此，可供考生选择的回答方式很多。这里笔者尝试用“喜好类”下的“直接回答 + 例子 + 原因”展开作答。

回答范例

I would say WeChat. I use it to contact with my friends pretty much everyday. The main reason why I like to use this app is that it is really convenient. You can use it at any time and any place as long as you connect to the Internet.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：总述（+ 举例）+ 最典型的例子 + 原因

The Internet

常见考题

076

Do you ever use the Internet?
What do you do on the Internet?
Is there anything you don't understand about the Internet?
Do you think the Internet is a good thing?
Do you think the use of the Internet needs to be controlled?

题目 1 What do you do on the Internet?

解题思路

这道题属于“Wh+How often 类”题型中的“What 类”题目。上一章归纳的常用回答方式有：1. 直接回答 + 原因（+例子）；2. 直接回答 + 例子 + 原因；3. 总述（+ 举例）+ 最典型的例子 + 原因；4. 总述 + 情况 1+ 情况 2。这里笔者尝试用第 2 种方式展开作答。

回答范例

There are multiple things for me to do on the Internet. For example, I'd like to watch movies on the net. It costs me about 50 yuan to watch a movie in the cinema. However, it's usually free or cheaper when I watch a movie on the net. It can help me save money.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：总述 + 情况 1+ 情况 2

题目 2 Do you think the Internet is a good thing?

解题思路

这道题属于“观点类”题目。回答该题目的主要方式为：1. 直接回答 + 原因（+ 例子）；2. 直接回答 + 原因 + 驳论；3. 总述 + 群体 / 情况 1+ 群体 / 情况 2。这里笔者用第 1 种方式来回答。

回答范例

I do believe that Internet has an important influence on us. It makes our life more convenient. For instance, when I meet some difficult questions during my study, it is more efficient to look up the information that I need if I use Internet.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：总述 + 群体 1+ 群体 2

Email & Letters

常见考题

077

Do you write many letters or emails?
Do you prefer to write letters by hand or to use a computer?
Which do you write more often, emails or letters?
How often do you write an email or a letter?
What do you usually write about?
Who do you usually write to?
Is it hard to think of what to write?
What kind(s) of letter/email do you think is (are) the hardest to write?
How do you feel when you receive a letter or email?
What kinds of emails (or letters) do you receive that make you feel happy?
Do you think people will still write letters in the future?
What sorts of letters or emails are the most difficult to reply to?
Which do you prefer, to make a phone call or write an email?

题目 1 Do you prefer to write letters by hand or to use a computer?

解题思路

这道题的标志词为“do you prefer, ...or...”，属于“对比选择类”题型中的“选择类”题目，答题时主要的思路是先表明立场，再说选择方的好处和没选择方的坏处。这里笔者尝试用“直接回答 + 原因 + 驳论”这种方式展开作答。

回答范例

Well, I am pretty sure that nobody would like to choose writing by hands unless they don't know how to use a computer. Writing by using a computer is time-saving, environmentally friendly and convenient. Even though some people believe that writing letters by hands is more sincere, I think sincerity is less important than efficiency.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：直接回答 + 原因 + 反面例子

题目 2 Which do you write more often, e-mails or letters?

解题思路

这道题带有选择倾向，可以将其看作是“对比选择类”题型中的“选择类”题目。对于这种题目，哪个方面好展开，我们就侧重哪方面来回答。这里笔者采用“直接回答 + 原因 + 驳论”的方式来回答。

回答范例

I write e-mails frequently. This is an easy way to ask my professors questions, connect with my team members or send some files. However, some of my relatives don't know how to write e-mails, I have to write them letters which take ages to deliever to their door.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：直接回答 + 原因 + 反面例子

题目 3 What kind(s) of letter/email do you think is (are) the hardest to write?

解题思路

这道题的标志词为“what kind(s) of...”，属于“Type of Questions 类”题目。这里笔者采用“总述（+ 举例）+ 最典型的例子 + 原因”这种方式回答，其中“最典型的例子”这一描述在此变为“最难写的信”。

回答范例

Writing letters is a hard thing no matter what kinds of letter I need to write. One time, I needed to write thank-you notes to my friends, it took me more than one hour to finish it. But I think the hardest one is the letter of apology because you really need to pay attention to your diction and tone. You have to write in a sincere way in order to get the forgiveness.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：总述 + 最典型的例子及原因 + 其次典型的例子及原因

题目 4 What kinds of emails (or letters) do you receive that make you feel happy?

解题思路

这道题的标志词为“what kinds of...”，属于“Type of Questions 类”题目。这里笔者依旧采用“总述（+ 举例）+ 最典型的例子 + 原因”这种方式回答，其中“最典型的例子”这一描述在此变为“最让我感到开心的信”。

回答范例

I receive many emails a day, such as advertisements and notices from school. Recently, I would say my uni offer is the only letter which made me feel excited, because you know, I am applying for my postgraduate school now. So I am looking forward to receiving my unconditional offer.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：总述 + 最典型的例子及原因 + 其次典型的例子及原因

13 自然 & 人文环境

Climate & Weather

常见考题 078

What's the climate (or weather) like in your hometown?

Would you say the weather in your hometown is generally good, or bad weather?

Would you say there have been any changes in the climate (in your hometown) in the recent past?

题目1 What's the climate (or weather) like in your hometown?

解题思路

这道题属于“Wh+How often类”题型中的“What类”题目。上一章归纳的常用回答方式有：1. 直接回答 + 原因（+ 例子）；2. 直接回答 + 例子 + 原因；3. 总述（+ 举例）+ 最典型的例子 + 原因；4. 总述 + 情况1+ 情况2。这里笔者尝试用第1种方式展开作答。

描述气候或各种天气

climate（中长期的）气候
weather（短期的）天气
tropical 热带的
subtropical 亚热带的
temperature 温度
sunny 晴天
cloudy 多云
overcast 阴天
light rain 小雨
moderate rain 中雨
heavy rain 大雨
moderate snow 中雪
heavy snow 大雪
light snow 小雪
rainstorm 暴雨
thunderstorm 雷雨
fog 雾
smog 雾霾
frost 霜冻
sleet 雨夹雪
typhoon 台风
sandstorm 沙尘暴
hot 热的
warm 温暖的
cool 凉爽的
chilly 寒冷的
cold 寒冷的
freezing 严寒的，冰冻的
mild 温和的
changeable 多变的

回答范例

I'd say we have subtropical climate in Guangzhou.You know, it's located in the south of China, which means scorching summers and warm winters.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：总述 + 情况1+ 情况2

题目2 Would you say there have been any changes in the climate (in your hometown) in the recent past?

解题思路

对于这种“一般疑问句”，笔者将其看作“观点类”题目展开作答。回答该题目的主要方式为：

1. 直接回答 + 原因（+ 例子）；2. 直接回答 + 原因 + 驳论；3. 总述 + 群体 / 情况 1+ 群体 / 情况 2。这里笔者用第 1 种方式来回答。

回答范例

I guess it's a yes. The weather in my hometown today is much more changeable than before. I mean, in the morning you may enjoy plenty of sunshine but end up getting caught in torrential rain in the afternoon.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：直接回答 + 原因 + 驳论

Rain

常见考题

079

Do you like rainy days? (Why?/Why not?)
Does it rain much in your hometown?
In what season does it rain the most?
What do you do on rainy days?
How does rain affect your life?
Do you think rain is good?
Does rain ever affect transportation in your hometown?
Would you prefer to have, more rain or less rain (in your hometown)?
Is there any part of your country where it doesn't rain much?
Can you remember a time when it rained particularly heavily in your hometown?
Do you think the seasons have changed in recent years, compared to the past?

题目 1 Do you like rainy days? (Why?/Why not?)

解题思路

这道题属于“喜好类”题目，这里笔者用“直接回答 + 原因（+ 例子）”这种方式展开作答。

描述下雨及相关

drizzle 毛毛雨
shower 阵雨
downpour 暴雨
torrential rain 倾盆大雨

lightning 闪电
damp 潮湿的
raincoat 雨衣
rain boot 雨靴
umbrella 雨伞
a drop of rain 一滴雨
a flash flood 山洪暴发
to get caught in the rain 淋雨
to get drenched 淋湿
to pour down 下大雨
to be rained off 因为下雨而推迟或取消

回答范例

Absolutely not. I think rainy days are annoying. Just imagine you have to bring an umbrella with you or put on raincoat all the time otherwise you may get drenched and even catch a cold.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：直接回答 + 例子 + 原因

题目 2 How does rain affect your life?

解题思路

这道题属于“Wh+How often 类”题型中的“How 类”题目。上一章归纳的常用回答方式有：1. 直接回答 + 原因（+ 例子）；2. 总述（+ 举例）+ 最典型的例子 + 原因；3. 总述 + 情况 1+ 情况 2。这里笔者尝试用第 2 种方式展开作答。

回答范例

It may cause trouble or inconvenience. For example, clothes take longer to dry, the street may be flooded and the traffic flow falls apart. But I think the worst part is that outdoor activities would be rained off, which makes rainy days dull and boring.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：直接回答 + 原因（+ 例子）

Sunshine

常见考题

080

Do you like sunshine?
Do you like sunny days?

What do you like to do when it's sunny days?
Are there many sunny days in your hometown?
Do you like going outside on sunny days?
What benefits can (or do) people get from sunshine?
Is the sunshine very important to people?

题目 1 Do you like sunshine?

解题思路

这道题属于“喜好类”题目，这里笔者用“直接回答 + 例子 + 原因”这种方式展开作答。

描述阳光及相关

sunlight, sunshine 阳光
scorching, boiling hot 酷热
heatstroke 中暑
heatwave 热浪
sunny spells 一段阳光灿烂的日子
sunscreen 防晒霜（化学防晒成分）
sunblock 防晒霜（物理防晒成分）
sunglasses 太阳眼镜
sunshade 太阳伞
have a sunbath 晒日光浴
get sunburnt 晒伤
get tanned 晒黑
ultraviolet rays 紫外线

回答范例

To be honest, I simply don't enjoy sunshine, especially the strong sunlight in summer in my hometown, Guangzhou. You know, the city is located in the south of China where there are scorching summers. Once you walk on the street, you would get sweaty very quickly and even suffer from heatstroke. Also, the ultraviolet rays are so strong that you would get tanned immediately if you don't wear sunscreen.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：直接回答 + 原因（+ 例子）

题目 2 What do you like to do when it's sunny days?

解题思路

这道题属于“Wh+How often 类”题型中的“What 类”题目。上一章归纳的常用回答方式有：1. 直接回答 + 原因（+ 例子）；2. 直接回答 + 例子 + 原因；3. 总述（+ 举例）+ 最典型的例子 + 原因；4. 总述 + 情况 1+ 情况 2。这里笔者尝试用第 4 种方式展开作答，即讨论在不同季节的晴天分别会做些什么。

回答范例

I'd say it really depends on what season it is. For example, if it's in summer, I would prefer staying indoors with my air-conditioning on because the sun is so bright that it makes me sweat and feel uncomfortable. Whereas in contrast, I would do outdoor activities in other seasons when there is plenty of sunshine. It's warm and puts me in a good mood.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：直接回答 + 原因（+ 例子）

Sky

常见考题

081

Do you like to watch the sky?
What is the sky like at night in your hometown?
Do you like to watch stars?
Have you ever taken a course about stars?
Is it important to study stars?
What's your favourite star?

题目 1 What is the sky like at night in your hometown?

解题思路

这道题属于“Wh+How often 类”题型中的“What 类”题目。上一章归纳的常用回答方式有：1. 直接回答 + 原因（+ 例子）；2. 直接回答 + 例子 + 原因；3. 总述（+ 举例）+ 最典型的例子 + 原因；4. 总述 + 情况 1+ 情况 2。这里笔者尝试用第 1 种方式展开作答。当然，你也可以用第 4 种方式回答，谈论一下不同天气下的天空分别是什么样的。

描述天空及相关

clear blue skies 晴朗天空
a grey sky 阴天
sunrise 日出
sunset 日落
crystal clear night skies 晴朗夜空
cloudless sky 万里无云
partly cloudy 局部多云
multitude of stars 数不尽的星星
star-gazing 观星
shooting star 流星
crescent moon 弯月
full moon 圆月

回答范例

I'd say the sky at night in my hometown was grey, not that clear and bright. I guess the reason is that the weather here is smoggy due to the pollutants in the air. Thus, you barely can see any stars here then.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：总述 + 情况 1+ 情况 2

题目 2 Do you like to watch stars?

解题思路

这道题属于“喜好类”题目，这里笔者用“直接回答 + 原因（+ 例子）”这种方式展开作答。

回答范例

Yes, star-gazing is really my thing because it's quite a relaxing and romantic thing to do when it comes to a date. I mean, it's lovely to lean on my boyfriend counting bright stars in a tranquil night.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：直接回答 + 例子 + 原因

Natural places

常见考题

082

Do you like visiting natural places?
What are some well-known natural attractions in your country?
Have your ever gone camping?
Do you like a natural environment?
How do city kids in your country have contact with nature?
Do you have any memories of nature from your childhood?
What are the benefits of learning about nature?

题目1 What are some well-known natural attractions in your country?

解题思路

这道题可以看作“Wh+How often类”题目，也可以看作是“Type of Questions类”题目。这里笔者尝试用“总述（+举例）+最典型的例子+原因”这种方式作答。

回答范例

Well I would say there are many of them, from Danxia Lanscape, the Yellow Mountains to the Li River. But I guess the most breathtaking one would be Danxia Landscape which is composed of curvy and layered formations. It looks like an oil painting when the vast red rock formations are simply set against a pure blue sky.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：总述+最典型的例子及原因+其次典型的例子及原因

题目2 Do you like a natural environment?

解题思路

这道题属于“喜好类”题目，这里笔者用“直接回答+原因（+例子）”这种方式展开作答。

回答范例

Yes, of course I do. The Natural environment allows me to get away from the hustle and bustle of the world outside. I mean, when I am surrounded by plants, lakes and rocks, I would be distracted by the stunning scenic view and forget things that don't go well in my life.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：直接回答+例子+原因

Parks

常见考题

083

Does your hometown have many parks?

Do you often visit public parks?

What do you usually do there?
Do you like parks?
What kinds of parks do you like?
What do you like most about (going to) a park?
Did you go to parks when you were a child?
What did you do there?
Do you think it's good to have parks and public gardens in cities? (Why?)
Do you think there should be more of them?
Do you think you will go to parks more often in the future?

题目 1 Do you often visit public parks?

解题思路

这道题属于“Wh+How often 类”题型中的“How often 类”题目。上一章归纳的常用回答方式有：1. 直接回答 + 原因（+ 例子）；2. 直接回答 + 例子 + 原因；3. 总述 + 情况 1+ 情况 2。这里笔者尝试用第 1 种方式展开作答。

描述公园 / 花园及相关

the entrance 入口
an entrance fee 门票
a statue 雕像
sculptures 雕塑
a fountain 喷泉
a pool 池子
a lake 湖
a pond 池塘
a rockery 假山（不是 fake mountain）
a bamboo grove 竹林（不是 bamboo forest）
a fish pond 鱼塘
lawns 草地
gardens 花园
flowers 花
plants 植物
trees 树木
vines 藤蔓
bamboo 竹子
a park bench, a park seat 公园长凳
in the shade 阴凉处
in the sun 太阳底下
a pathway, a path 小道
to stroll 漫步
to walk 散步
to jog 慢跑
take exercise 锻炼
to do stretching exercises 伸展运动
to do aerobics 有氧运动（比如健美操）
to chat 聊天
to play a musical instrument 弹琴
to perform 表演
to entertain 娱乐
to play chess 下棋

回答范例

Quite often actually, about twice a week. I guess that's because it offers a green space for me to relax myself from my busy daily routine. I mean, when I get myself around the picturesque view of plants and a lake, I would forget all of the troubles and worries in my daily life.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：直接回答 + 例子 + 原因

题目 2 What do you usually do there?

解题思路

这道题属于“Wh+How often 类”题型中的“What 类”题目。上一章归纳的常用回答方式有：1. 直接回答 + 原因（+ 例子）；2. 直接回答 + 例子 + 原因；3. 总述（+ 举例）+ 最典型的例子 + 原因；4. 总述 + 情况 1+ 情况 2。这里笔者尝试用第 4 种方式展开作答。

回答范例

I'd say it really depends on whether I go with others. If I visit the park alone, I would have a stroll along the lake because I think it's a good chance for me to meditate and free myself. But if I go there with friends or family members, it's very likely for us to have a picnic or barbecue, as we can chat with each other and have fun.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：直接回答 + 原因（+ 例子）

Flowers

常见考题

084

Do you like flowers? (Why?)
What kind of flowers do you like? (Why?)
Which/What is your favourite flower?
Do you think flowers are important?
On what occasions are flowers important?
Do you think flowers have special meanings in your country?

Do people in your country ever use flowers for special occasions?
In your country, do people (ever) give flowers as a gift?
What are the occasions when people give or receive flowers?

题目 1 What kind of flowers do you like? (Why?)

解题思路

这道题的标志词为“what kind of...do you like”，属于“Type of Questions 类”和“喜好类”题目的结合。因此，可供考生选择的回答方式很多。这里笔者尝试用“Type of Questions 类”下的“总述（+ 举例）+ 最典型的例子 + 原因”展开作答。

描述花的种类及好处

rose 玫瑰
lily 百合
lotus 莲花
tulip 郁金香
carnation 康乃馨
peony 牡丹
orchid 兰花
the plum blossom 梅花
chrysanthemum 菊花
daisy 小雏菊
sunflower 向日葵
a huge bunch of 一大束
flower arrangement 插花
give an intimate flavor to... 给……一种温馨的氛围
the fragrance is irresistible 花香沁人心脾
have good taste in life 对生活的好品味

回答范例

I enjoy various flowers such as lilys, lotuses, tulips and carnations. But I guess my favourite one would definitely be the lotus, not only because it looks pink and smells great but because it represents uprightness, the quality I value most.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：总述 + 最典型的例子及原因 + 其次典型的例子及原因

题目 2 What are the occasions when people give or receive flowers?

解题思路

这道题属于“Wh+How often 类”题型中的“What 类”题目。上一章归纳的常用回答方式有：1. 直接回答 + 原因（+ 例子）；2. 直接回答 + 例子 + 原因；3. 总述（+ 举例）+ 最典型的例子 + 原因；4. 总述 + 情况 1+ 情况 2。这里笔者尝试用第 3 种方式展开作答。

回答范例

I guess there are quite a lot occasions when people send or receive flowers as a gift like when you visit others in the hospital, at a wedding or on specific festivals. But I think it is Valentines' Day when flowers are the most popular gift. You know, men would send roses to their girlfriend or wife to show their love.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：总述 + 情况 1+ 情况 2

Gardens

常见考题

085

Are public gardens very important in your country?
Are there many public gardens in your country?
Do you think there are enough public gardens in your hometown?
What do you think are the benefits of having gardens in the city?
Do you think gardens have any value for children?
Do you think gardens are important for children to see and play in?
Which do you think is more important, public gardens or private gardens?

题目 1 Do you think there are enough public gardens in your hometown?

解题思路

这道题属于“观点类”题目。回答该题目的主要方式为：1. 直接回答 + 原因（+ 例子）；2. 直接回答 + 原因 + 驳论；3. 总述 + 群体 / 情况 1+ 群体 / 情况 2。这里笔者尝试用第 2 种方式来回答。

回答范例

I believe that we have enough public gardens in our hometown because it is easy for me to find the nearest garden and it is also not crowded. Even though some people believe that our hometown should have more gardens in different districts, it is money-consuming because we don't have so many people to visit these gardens.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：直接回答 + 原因（+ 例子）

题目 2 Which do you think is more important, public gardens or private gardens?

解题思路

这道题属于“重要性”和“观点类”题目的结合。这里笔者尝试用“直接回答 + 原因 + 驳论”这种方式展开作答。

回答范例

My personal preference would go with public gardens. They are usually free of charge and bigger. Even though the remote location is quite an issue sometimes, I still prefer to have a reasonablely priced family trip in a bigger garden.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：直接回答 + 原因（+ 例子）

Pet animals & Zoos

常见考题

086

Did you ever visit a zoo when you were a child?
What was your favourite zoo animal?
Do you think it's important for children to visit a zoo?
Do you have a pet?
Have you ever had a pet?
Why do (you think) some people have a pet (=a pet animal)?

题目 1 Do you have a pet?

解题思路

对于这种“一般疑问句”，笔者将其看作“观点类”题目，但“动物类”跟“人物类（Who）”题目类似，无法用原因说明，所以采取“直接回答 + 动物相关介绍 + 与问题相关的内容”这种方式回答即可。

描述动物及相关

feather 羽毛
fur 皮毛
tooth 牙齿
fluffy 毛茸茸的
paw 爪子
claw 脚爪
beak 鸟喙
wing 翅膀
rear leg 后腿
tail 尾巴
scratch 抓
parrot 鹦鹉
cat 猫
dog 狗
rabbit 兔
hamster 仓鼠
turtle 乌龟
bed 窝
cat tree 猫爬架
cage 笼子
brush 刷子
cat litter box 猫砂
collar 项圈
leash（牵狗的）绳子
dog sweater 狗衫
pet duffle bag carrier 宠物携带旅行箱
pet food 宠物食物
flea powder/shampoo 除蚤粉
veterinarian 兽医
docile 温顺的
adorable 可爱的，惹人喜爱的
company 陪伴

回答范例

Yep, it's a 6-year-old black Labrador with bright eyes. He looks adorable especially when he stares at me begging for food. But on the other hand, he is also a trouble-maker. I mean, he enjoys biting shoes very much so we have to make sure that all of our shoes are out of sight.

题目 2 Why do (you think) some people have a pet (=a pet animal)?

解题思路

这道题属于“Wh + How often 类”题型中的“Why 类”题目。这里笔者尝试用“直接回答（原因）+ 例子”的方式展开作答。

回答范例

I guess that's because they are loyal friends and good company to human beings. Just imagine whenever you come back home and open the door, your dog would rush to you immediately, wagging his tail and licking your face, which definitely makes you feel less lonely and warm.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：（总述 +）原因 1+ 原因 2

14 聚会 & 礼物

Birthdays

常见考题

087

How do children celebrate birthdays in your country?

How did you celebrate your last birthday?

What kinds of birthday gifts do you like to receive?

Is there a difference between the way you celebrated your birthday in the past and in the present?

题目 1 How did you celebrate your last birthday?

解题思路

这道题属于“Wh+How often 类”题型中的“How 类”题目。上一章归纳的常用回答方式有：1. 直接回答 + 原因（+ 例子）；2. 总述（+ 举例）+ 最典型的例子 + 原因；3. 总述 + 情况 1+ 情况 2。鉴于题目中有明确的限定词“last birthday”，我们无法采用第 2 和第 3 种方式讨论，这里笔者尝试用第 1 种方式来回答。

回答范例

Last birthday, my parents brought me to Hong Kong to celebrate it because it was my 18-year-old birthday and it was my adult ceremony. They bought me an Elegant Watch as my birthday gift.

题目 2 What kinds of birthday gifts do you like to receive?

解题思路

这道题的标志词为“what kinds of...do you like”，属于“Type of Questions 类”和“喜好类”题目的结合。因此，可供考生选择的回答方式很多。这里笔者尝试用“喜好类”下的“直接回答 + 原因（+ 例子）”这种方式展开作答。

回答范例

The birthday gifts that I would like to receive are not the luxury things; actually, I love the handmade things because people who make these things spend time on it, and that's why these gifts are important. My grandmother knitted sweaters for me and even though they were out of date it makes me know how my grandmother loves me.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：总述（+举例）+最典型的例子+原因

Toys

常见考题

088

Do you like toys?
Are toys very important to you?
What sorts of people like toys?
What sorts of toys did you like when you were a child? (Why?)
Did your parents give it to you?
Do you still have any of your old toys?
Can you suggest why some people like to keep a childhood toy?
What kinds of toys do children like today?
If you had a child, what toy would you buy him or her?
Do you think toys should be passed down to kids when these toys are no longer wanted?

题目1 Do you like toys?

解题思路

这道题属于“喜好类”题目。这里笔者尝试用“直接回答+原因（+例子）”展开作答。

描述各种玩具

didactical doll 教学玩具
intelligence toy 智力玩具
robot toy 机器人玩具
mechanical toy 机械玩具
rubber toy 橡皮玩具
clay toy 泥塑玩具
electronic toys 电动玩具
stuffed toys 毛绒玩具
remote control cars 遥控汽车
transformer action figure 变形金刚人偶

toy gun 手枪
toy bricks 积木
Rubik's Cube, magic cube 魔方
Barbie dolls 芭比娃娃

回答范例

I haven't been into playing with toys since I was 10 years old because I think toys are always money-consuming. You know, I always got tired of playing the toys after maybe three times and it was thrown away but I knew how much money I had paid when I bought it. So I didn't like that feeling.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：直接回答 + 例子 + 原因

题目 2 What sorts of toys did you like when you were a child? (Why?)

解题思路

这道题的标志词为“what sorts of...did you like”，属于“Type of Questions 类”和“喜好类”题目的结合。因此，可供考生选择的回答方式很多。这里笔者尝试用“喜好类”下的“直接回答 + 原因（+ 例子）”这种方式展开作答。注意题目时态为“一般过去时”，所以回答也应该用“一般过去时”。

回答范例

Well, as a cool girl, I only liked remote controls cars when I was a child. Because every time, when I played with it, I thought I was a commander who controlled a campaign. You know, I could control 5 cars at the same time, and I named all of my cars. I set their routines and made up a story. That was so funny.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：直接回答 + 例子 + 原因

题目 3 Do you still have any of your old toys?

解题思路

对于这一类没有明显标志词的“一般疑问句”，笔者将其归类到“观点类”题目，尝试用“直接回答 + 原因（+ 例子）”这种方式展开作答。

回答范例

Absolutely! I still kept many toys which were given by my parents because I knew that my parents always wanted to give me the best and they wanted me to have a happy childhood. So they always bought me many gifts and most of them were expensive at that time. These gifts reminded me that I need to pay them back.

Gifts

常见考题

089

Do you like to receive gifts? (Why?/Why not?)
What kinds of gifts do you like to receive? (Why?)
What gifts did you receive in your childhood?
Do you like giving gifts to people? (Why?/Why not?)
What gifts did you give to others in your childhood?

题目 1 Do you like giving gifts to people? (Why?/Why not?)

解题思路

这道题属于“喜好类”题目，笔者尝试用“直接回答 + 例子 + 原因”这种方式展开作答。

回答范例

I enjoy giving gifts to people especially the food that I cook because I think food could always express many emotions. And I like the surprised face people give me when they eat my food. I always cook cookies and give them to my friends.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：直接回答 + 原因（+ 例子）

题目 2 What gifts did you give to others in your childhood?

解题思路

这道题属于“Wh+How often 类”题型中的“What 类”题目。上一章归纳的常用回答方式有：1. 直接回答 + 原因（+ 例子）；2. 直接回答 + 例子 + 原因；3. 总述（+ 举例）+ 最典型的例子 + 原

因；4. 总述 + 情况 1+ 情况 2。题目有明确的限定词“in your childhood”，因此采取前两种方式更容易展开。另外，回答时要跟题目保持一致，采用“一般过去时”。

回答范例

I used to give many handicrafts to others as a gift. You know, at that time, I created many things in my kindergarden, so I always gave some handmade cards to my family members when they had their birthdays.

Parties

常见考题 090

Do you like parties? (Why?/Why not?)
Do you often go to parties?
Do you usually have these parties at home or at school?
Do most people in your country like parties? (Why?/Why not?)
Is there anything you dislike about parties?
Do you prefer family parties or parties with friends?
Who do you think enjoys parties more, old(er) people or young people?
What do you think are the benefits of parties?

题目 1 Do you like parties? (Why?/Why not?)

解题思路

这道题属于“喜好类”题目。这里笔者尝试用“直接回答 + 例子 + 原因”展开作答。

回答范例

I really love parties especially the parties which are held in different places, with different themes and different groups of people. Because you know, it is a good way to meet more friends, have fun with them and try some new exciting party games.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：直接回答 + 原因（+ 例子）

题目2 Is there anything you dislike about parties?

解题思路

这道题同样属于“喜好类”题目，解释清楚不喜欢的原因即可。这里笔者尝试用“直接回答+原因（+例子）”展开作答。

回答范例

Yes, there are a few things I dislike about parties. I would say one thing that I don't like about it is the binge drinking culture. Parties always connect with alcohol, but I hate alcohol. One of my previous flatmates likes to throw parties in our place till late night, and they drunk a lot of alcohol which made our flat messy and smelly. I couldn't bear it so I moved out and found a new place to stay.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：直接回答+例子+原因

题目3 Do you prefer family parties or parties with friends?

解题思路

这道题的标志词为“do you prefer, ...or...”，属于“对比选择类”题型中的“选择类”题目，答题时主要的思路是先表明立场，再说选择方的好处和没选择方的坏处。这里笔者尝试用“直接回答+原因+反面例子”这种方式展开作答。

回答范例

I prefer to organise the party with my friends because we don't have generation gap and we can enjoy the same kind of pop songs, eat junk food and dance together. If I had a party with family, maybe it would end up at 8 p.m. and I would only listen to some light songs.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：直接回答+原因+驳论

15 工具类

Maps

常见考题

091

Do you (ever) use a map?
When do you use a map?
Who taught you how to use a map?
How did you learn use (or read) a map?
Do you prefer to use electronic maps or those made of paper?

题目 1 When do you use a map?

解题思路

这道题属于“Wh+How often 类”题型中的“When 类”题目。上一章归纳的常用回答方式有：1. 直接回答 + 原因（+ 例子）；2. 直接回答 + 例子 + 原因；3. 总述 + 情况 1+ 情况 2。这里笔者尝试用第 1 种方式展开作答。

回答范例

Well, I have to say, as a person who has really bad sense of direction, I use map pretty much everyday. The main reason is that Guangzhou is a metropolis, it's hard for me to get around this big city without a map. Especially when I visit a new place, I have to rely on google map. Otherwise, I may easily get lost.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：直接回答 + 例子 + 原因

题目 2 Do you prefer to use electronic maps or those made of paper?

解题思路

这道题的标志词为“do you prefer, ...or...”，属于“对比选择类”题型中的“选择类”题目，答

题时主要的思路是先表明立场，再说选择方的好处和没选择方的坏处。这里笔者尝试用“直接回答 + 原因 + 驳论”这种方式展开作答。

回答范例

To be honest, I believe electronic maps are much better than paper maps, because the information on the electronic maps is more updated. Besides, they can offer us different routes and lead us to the right place. While the paper maps sometimes are out of date and it can't automatically navigate us to get the place where we want to go.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：直接回答 + 原因 + 反面例子

Dictionary

常见考题

092

Do you use dictionary?
Which kind of dictionaries do you prefer to use?
Do you think the dictionary is useful?
What are the benefits of using dictionary for kids?

题目 Do you use dictionary?

解题思路

这道题笔者依然按照“观点类”题目下的“直接回答 + 原因（+ 例子）”这种方式展开作答。

回答范例

Yes, I do. I use a dictionary on a quite regular basis, because I major in English and I'm really keen on English literature. So, whenever I find some vocabulary that I don't understand. I'd like to refer to the dictionary and find out the meaning.

Languages

常见考题

093

What languages do you speak?
Which language do you use the most?
How did you learn English? (Or, How do you study English?)
Do you think that English is difficult to learn?
How long have you been studying English?
Do you think learning languages is important?
Do you think there is any need for (some) people to learn another language?
What other languages would you like to learn?

题目 1 What languages do you speak?

解题思路

这道题属于“Wh+How often 类”题型中的“What 类”题目。上一章归纳的常用回答方式有：1. 直接回答 + 原因（+ 例子）；2. 直接回答 + 例子 + 原因；3. 总述（+ 举例）+ 最典型的例子 + 原因；4. 总述 + 情况 1+ 情况 2。这里笔者尝试用第 1 种方式展开作答。当然你也可以采用其他种方式回答，比如第 4 种，说一下在什么情况下分别说什么语言。

回答范例

I am bilingual; I can speak both Mandarin and English. English is a compulsory course in our country, so everyone has to learn it since we enter to primary school. Well, I enjoy speaking English and I made loads of foreign friends because of this.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：总述 + 情况 1+ 情况 2

题目 2 Do you think that English is difficult to learn?

解题思路

这道题为“观点类”题目常见问法，让你说出对学英语难易程度的看法。考生从自己的角度直接而清晰地回答问题即可。

回答范例

Well, to be fair, I don't think that English is too difficult to learn. But maybe that's my opinion. Because this language is unlike Chinese, you don't need to memorise the strokes of each character which could be a big problem for most of the Chinese learners.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：直接回答 + 原因 + 驳论

题目 3 How long have you been studying English?

解题思路

"How long"这类题型之前并没有相关的描述，也没法用原因和例子说明，怎么办呢？可以先直接回答，自己学了几年英语，然后可以说一下开始的时间以及自己对学习这一语言的看法，只要答案围绕主题即可。

回答范例

OK well, I think I have been learning English for more than 10 years now. If I'm not mistaken, the first time I started to learn English was when I was a primary school student. I found this language beautiful and it's really easy to learn.

Robots

常见考题

094

Are you interested in robots?
Do you like robots to work at your home?
What kinds of robots would you like to have?
Is it a good thing to have robots drive cars?
Will robots change our society significantly?
Have you watched a movie which is about robots?

题目 1 Do you like robots to work at your home?

解题思路

这道题属于“喜好类”题目。这里笔者尝试用“直接回答 + 原因（+ 例子）”展开作答。

回答范例

Yes, I would love to have robots working at my home. It will be so cool to have a robot at home. I can talk to the robot if no one was in or I can ask my robot to do the things I don't like to do. If I really had one, I think all my friends would get really jealous.

题目 2 What kinds of robots would you like to have?

解题思路

这道题的标志词为“what kinds of...do you like”，属于“Type of Questions 类”和“喜好类”题目的结合。因此，可供考生选择的回答方式很多。这里笔者尝试用“Type of Questions 类”下的“总述（+ 举例）+ 最典型的例子 + 原因”展开作答。

回答范例

I like all kinds of robots, like the ones that can talk or the ones that can do the cleaning jobs. But the one I always wanted is a robot which can cook some nice dishes for me and my family. If I have one like this, I don't need to waste my time on preparing food or suffer from hunger after a hard day's work.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：总述 + 最典型的例子及原因 + 其次典型的例子及原因

16 抽象类

Politeness

常见考题

095

Do you think you are a polite person?
Who taught you to be polite?
Do you think people should be polite? (Why?)
How do people in your culture show good manners towards others?
Have there been any changes in politeness in the past few decades?

题目 1 Who taught you to be polite?

解题思路

这道题属于“Wh+How often 类”题型中的“Who 类”题目。这里笔者还是用“直接回答 + 人物介绍 + 与问题相关的内容”这种方式展开作答。

回答范例

My mother taught me good manners when I was a little girl. Even though she didn't receive a very good education, she has really good manners and sets a really good example for me. She always says thank you to others, even for a slight thing.

题目 2 How do people in your culture show good manners towards others?

解题思路

这道题属于“Wh+How often 类”题型中的“How 类”题目。上一章归纳的常用回答方式有：1. 直接回答 + 原因（+ 例子）；2. 总述（+ 举例）+ 最典型的例子 + 原因；3. 总述 + 情况 1+ 情况 2。这里笔者尝试用第 2 种方式展开作答。

回答范例

Well, people in our country have many ways to show good manners to others. Such as shaking hands with strangers when they first meet, giving up seats to those needed and things like that. But I guess the most popular way Chinese people show good manners is using a much more polite way to address the people who are senior to us. For example, we need to call all the senior person 'grandpa' or 'grandma'.

Happiness

常见考题 096

What do you think of happiness?
What do you like to do when you are happy?
What kinds of things make you happy?
What kinds of things do people in your country feel happy about?
Is it easy to be happy for you?

题目 1 What do you like to do when you are happy?

解题思路

这道题属于“Wh+How often 类”题型中的“What 类”题目。上一章归纳的常用回答方式有：1. 直接回答 + 原因（+ 例子）；2. 直接回答 + 例子 + 原因；3. 总述（+ 举例）+ 最典型的例子 + 原因；4. 总述 + 情况 1+ 情况 2。这里笔者尝试用第 2 种方式展开作答。

回答范例

I like singing when I am happy, especially the songs full of positive energy. I found singing really enjoyable. Also, I like to bake some cakes and share the cakes as well as my good mood with my best friend. Make someone happy, then you will be happy too.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：直接回答 + 原因（+ 例子）

题目2 What kinds of things do people in your country feel happy about?

解题思路

这道题的标志词为“what kinds of...”，属于“Type of Questions类”题目。这里笔者采用“总述+最典型的例子及原因+其次典型的例子及原因”这种方式回答。

回答范例

Well, I have to say different people have different opinions towards this question. For the majority of the cases, being rich or making a big fortune makes Chinese people feel happy. Other than that, some people may feel happy when they know their hard-working has paid off.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：总述（+举例）+最典型的例子+原因

Teamwork

常见考题

097

When was the last time you worked with a team?

Do you like to work or study with others or just by yourself?

What's the most important thing for teamwork?

Do you like to be a leader?

题目 Do you like to work or study with others or just by yourself?

解题思路

这道题的标志词为“do you like to...or...”，属于“对比选择类”题型中的“选择类”题目，答题时主要的思路是先表明立场，再说选择方的好处和没选择方的坏处。这里笔者尝试用“直接回答+原因+反面例子”这种方式展开作答。

回答范例

In my view, I prefer working or studying with others rather than just by myself. It can definitely boost the working effiency, as you can discuss with others if you have any problems and people can help each other in the same group. If you study by yourself, when you have a problem, you

would be stuck for hours and still have no clue of how to solve it.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：直接回答 + 原因 + 驳论

Help others

常见考题

098

When was the last time you helped others?
Do you like to help strangers?
Did your parents teach you the importance of helping others when you were young?
Have you ever refused to help others?
Would you keep helping people in the future?

题目 1 Do you like to help strangers?

解题思路

这道题属于“喜好类”题目，这里笔者用“直接回答 + 原因（+ 例子）”这种方式展开作答。

回答范例

Yes, I like to help strangers because no one can survive in this world if he or she is not willing to help others. I like giving a helping hand to those who need help, for example, I always give directions to some tourists. Since I may experience the same thing if I travel to a new city, I know the feeling when you get lost and can't find the right way.

拓展练习

你还可以用其他方式解答吗？如：直接回答 + 例子 + 原因

题目 2 Would you keep helping people in the future?

解题思路

这道题的标志词为“would you...in the future”，属于“预测类”题目。上一章笔者推荐了两种回答方式，这里尝试用“直接回答 + 假设没做”回答。

回答范例

Yes, I would like to keep helping others for the rest of my life. Helping others gives me a great sense of achievement. If I stopped helping others, I would feel so lost and my life would be so meaningless.

Chapter 5

Part 2 段子手养成记

1 使用指南
2 人物 & 动物类
考生版
考官版
3 地点类
考生版
考官版
4 事件类
考生版
考官版
5 物品类
考生版
考官版
6 抽象 & 媒体类
考生版
考官版

作为雅思口语考试的重头戏，Part 2也是我们需要重点拿下的部分。

那如何尽自己的努力拿到最高分呢？其实，Part 2可分为两个步骤准备，即前期准备＋考场上一分钟的准备。前期的准备将直接影响你考场上一分钟的思考。如果前期没怎么准备过考题，那么在考场上的一分钟还要花费时间去思考这道题要说什么、怎么说；但如果前期准备非常充分的话，一分钟时间可以立刻将之前准备内容的关键词写下来。这就是为什么一分钟准备会给考生纸和笔，因为要写下来一个简单的答题框架，哪怕只是关键词，也会有非常大的帮助。

本章，笔者将Part 2部分主要分为“人物＆动物类”“地点类”“事件类”“物品类”及“抽象＆媒体类”这五大类，各类的讲解会分为两个部分，即“考生版”和“考官版”。这两个部分主要帮助考生完成前期的备考。具体来说，“考生版”适合备考时间短、刚入门且不知道说什么的考生，而“考官版”适合准备冲击高分和对Part 2的考点内容了解的考生。

1 使用指南

如前所述，本章将 Part 2 分为五大类，各类之下又分了两大版块，即“考生版”和“考官版”。那么这两大版块到底有什么区别，如何才能更好地利用呢？

版块的设置

“考生版”：这一版块之下会有一系列高频考题，每个考题会有一个中文标题，中文标题之下会有一段导言，主要介绍一下这一类题目以往的考点是什么，有什么需要注意的地方，或是一个对中文标题的相关简短介绍，让考生遇到同类题目时有个方向。题目为标准的 Part 2 考试形式，一个题目之下有 4 个答题要点（个别的可能会有 3 个或 5 个），然后提供了一篇“考生范文”（通常在 6.5—7.5 分），难度适合广大考生。当然，由于无法在“流利度”和“发音”这两项上评分，接下来的“考官点评”这一部分，我们邀请英籍考官分别在“连贯性”“词汇资源”“语法多样性及准确度”这几项上对“考生范文”进行了点评。其中会提到这篇范文的优缺点，优点是值得广大考生模仿和学习的，缺点如词汇不地道、使用不当或语法错误等都是需要大家平时练习时多多注意的。在改完“考官点评”中所提到的这些问题之后，这篇“考生范文”在除“流利度”和“发音”之外的三项上，可以达到 7 分，甚至 7.5—8 分。不得不说的是，有些范文的字数达到 400 甚至更多，考官也会在评语的一开头指出：“这篇文章的字数达到 400 多，用时可能会超过三分钟，虽然不会影响评分，但考官会在两分钟时打断你。”其实，之所以这么做是为了下一部分“拓展练习”，这一部分所给的题目是跟上面所讲题目密切相关的，甚至可以这么说，“考生范文”里的部分素材可以直接套用到练习题部分题目的回答之中。笔者在这里提醒考生，在平时练习时，多积累和准备一些“万能”的素材，这样才能“以不变应万变”。

“考官版”：这一版块之下通常你会看到每个标题之下设有两道考题（个别是单独一道考题），这两道考题无论从题目，还是答题要点上都存在相似性或相关性。这一部分的“考官范文”由英籍雅思考官提供，答案不一定完全适用于这两道题，但思路基本适用。考生可以根据相关性合并答题要点。这无疑从另一个角度来告诉你如何准备数量繁多的雅思考题，如果“考生版”是用一道题的素材串很多道题的话，那“考官版”就是合并同类题目的答题要点。其中，还对考官所用到的高分词汇、搭配、习语及俚语进行了注释，我们不提倡全文背诵（包括“考生版”），但提倡“挪为己用”。这些标准范文无论在连贯性还是用词或语法上都达到了 8 分以上水平，这些地道的用词及表达无疑成为了考生挑战 7 分甚至更高分数的利器！

答题的思路

“考生版”：我们都知道 Part 2 对于考生来说最大的一个障碍就是时间问题——如何说够两分钟，并且看起来还相对清晰，不至于东扯一句西扯一句。相信很多考生都有这样的经验，乱七八糟地说了

一通之后，和考官面面相觑，十分尴尬。考官说“You've still got some time”，这时考生甚至连题目都不管了，硬着头皮乱说，考完立刻就从考官的表情上得出结论：考砸了！针对这一情况，这一版块也会给考生提供一种思路，帮助考生去拓展话题，尽可能合理地、有逻辑性地将两分钟用完。

首先我们来分析几道雅思考试真题：

人物类

Describe a person who taught you a useful skill (for example, cooking, riding a bike).

You should say:
- who this person is/was
- what you learnt from the person
- how the person taught you this
- and explain how this skill is useful to you.

我们会发现前两点 who this person is/was 和 what you learnt from the person 都是相对客观的叙述，你要说清楚这个人是谁，你从这个人身上学到了什么。而后面的两点 how the person taught you this 和 how this skill is useful to you 是你站在自己的角度上去说这个人用什么办法教你，对你来说有什么用处。这个部分就会因人而异，我们称之为主观描述。所以这道题可以分为：与题目有关的客观描述（解释名词“人”）+ 主观叙述（感觉，原因）。

地点类

Describe your favourite café/restaurant.

You should say:
- where it is
- what it looks like
- what kinds of services it provided
- what kind of food you like there
- and explain why you like it.

这道题中，咖啡店的地址（where it is）、咖啡店的环境描述（what it looks like）和咖啡店的服务项目（what kinds of services it provided）都是关于咖啡店相对客观的描述。而后两点你喜欢的食物（what kind of food you like there）和为什么你喜欢（why you like it）就是站在自己的角度说为什么喜欢，这属于相对主观的表述。因此，这道题也可以分为：与题目有关的客观描述（解释名词“咖啡馆”）+ 主观叙述（感觉，原因）。

物品类

Describe a book you want to read again.

You should say:
- what the book is about
- why you read it
- what you learnt from this book
- and explain why you would like to read it again.

这道题的第一小点（what the book is about）就是关于物品，即这本书的客观描写，而后面的三点就是从主观的角度来说为什么你要阅读这本书（why you read it）、你从这本书上面学习到了什么知识（what you learnt from this book）和为什么你还要再读一次（why you would like to read it again）。因此，这道题还是可以从这两个角度写：与题目有关的客观描述（解释名词“书”）+主观叙述（感觉，原因）。

通过上面几道题的分析，我们可以将“考生版”回答模板写成：

Opening Sentence(s): 点题句，直接回答考官问你的主题。

Background: 解释题目中的名词，给出关于人物、事件、地点以及物品的全部背景。

Reasons/Feelings: 主观的描述，解释题目中的定语成分，比如为什么喜欢，为什么要去，为什么还要再读一次，并解释题目与自己的关系，例如，自己的感想，自己学到了什么。

Conclusion: 一句总结。

对于不知如何扩展的考生，这个框架帮助你们不要局限于几个答题要点，因为很多时候你会发现，几个小点回答完，就不知道如何扩展了。使用“考生版”这个框架就可以把各个内容都说出来。比如人物题中的 background 可以说，你怎么认识的，这个人什么工作，性格如何，认识多久，哪里人等。

例题：Describe one of your best friends.

Opening Sentence(s): My best friend is...

Background: 解释名词 friend，介绍年龄、工作、如何认识、认识多久、什么样的人。

Reasons/Feelings: 解释形容词 best，比如性格好、互相学习、给我鼓励等。

Conclusion: 一句总结。

这样前期准备完全之后，在考场上我们就不再需要去看小点，而是利用一分钟准备时间，将你的框架 1、2、3、4 点简单写在草稿纸上，这样说内容时，就不会自乱阵脚了。

“考官版”：对于已经完全知道如何拓展内容的考生，我们不需要有太多的框架，只需要根据 Part 2 的几个小点，展开内容即可。但需要注意的是，学会题目合并，即根据小点合并题目。因为你会发现“人物题”中都有 who he/she is 这样的要点。这种情况下，同一话题下的几个类似题目就可以合并在一起回答。

素材的选择

简单来讲，**“考生版”**在选择素材时，更倾向于“万能”的素材，比如人物题某道题目中的人可能“身兼数职”，他或她既是一个“你喜欢的明星”，又是一个“对社会作出贡献的人物”，还可能是一个“好领导”等等。而**“考官版”**遇到人物题，除非题目要求你描述一个名人，否则基本全是在讲述自己身边的人、自己真实认识的人，看完所有的人物题素材之后，你会发现全是“熟人”。

2 人物 & 动物类

考生版

明星小厨神——黄磊

099

说起前两年最火的亲子真人秀，《爸爸去哪儿》绝对当仁不让坐上了头把交椅。它既给真人秀带来了一股清流，又充分展现了每一对父子（女）的相处之道。其中有一位尤擅厨艺的大咖，每每一出手就赢得赞誉满地，所做的佳肴也让人垂涎三尺。想必大家也清楚他是谁——号称“黄小厨”的黄磊，接下来我们看看如何利用这位“明星厨神”应对雅思口语中的人物题。

真题演练

Describe a person who taught you a useful skill (such as cooking or riding a bike).

You should say:
- who this person is/was
- what you learnt from the person
- how the person taught you this
- and explain how this skill is useful to you.

考生范文

Opening Sentences: Well, nobody believes me that I learnt cooking from a famous Chinese actor—Huang Lei, because you know, most people learn how to cook from their family members. The truth is that I found cooking is an interesting thing until I watched the TV show 'Where Are We Going, Dad?'

Background: This TV show is mainly about the daily life of these famous fathers and their kids, so it has the cooking part which requires these fathers to cook meals for their kids. I think this is the most attractive part because some of the fathers who are good at cooking always prepare delicious food, while other dads always mess up things. One of the dads, Huang Lei, surprises me because I can't believe this handsome actor can make such wonderful food. He knew how to use flour to make Chinese pies, how to make noodles, and how to clean and cook fishes.

Reasons/Feelings: I had to admit that I really wanted to cook as he did in the TV show after I

watched it. His cooking steps were not difficult but very impressive. So you know, after I cooked once, I could remember how to make them again. My mom was surprised that I could make Chinese pies all by myself, and I've also fallen in love with cooking since then. I really enjoyed the feeling when my family appreciated my food.

Conclusion: There is no doubt that cooking is an useful skill for me because I don't need to eat outside now. I can cook some healthy food for my family. Especially when I study abroad, I can cook Chinese flavour and invite many friends to eat with me.

考官点评

A good answer, but doesn't really go into too much depth about the topic for an 8 or 9 in Fluency and Coherence. It talks too much about TV, a bit too much. It's grammatically excellent with only two small mistakes that I can find: 'an useful' rather than 'a useful' and 'fishes' rather than 'fish'. There needs to be more 'idiomatic' language for the higher scores although there are a good number of 'less common' words.

拓展练习

1. Describe someone who is good at cooking.

You should say:
- who he/she is
- how you know him/her
- what kind of dish he/she is good at cooking
- and explain why you want to talk about him/her.

2. Describe a person who taught you a technique.

You should say:
- who he/she is/was
- how you knew him/her
- what he/she taught you
- and explain how you feel about this technique.

与朋友的初遇

100

"朋友类"话题应该是雅思口语 Part 2 中非常常见的一个话题，但每一季度关于"什么样的朋友"的考查会有一点改变，比如之前出现过的"one of your best friends""a friend you made when you first met""a new friend you've made recently"，其核心的部分都是"朋友"，但我们要根据不同的修饰语去补充其他内容。切记，我们回答时应始终围绕着题目，比如"描述一个刚认识的朋友"，可能要点中会要求说清楚什么时间、基于什么缘由、认识了什么样的朋友，以及为什么可以成为好朋友等。

真题演练

Describe a friend you made when you first met.

You should say:
- who he/she is
- when and how you met him/her
- where you first met
- and explain why you have become friends.

考生范文

Opening Sentence: The friend who I made when I first met is Peng Cheng, my desk mate in primary school for 3 years and the best friend when I was a pupil.

Background: We first met each other when we were looking for our seats at the first day of our school life. It was quite funny that a little boy with a baby fat face popped up in front of your eyes after 5-minute hard searching. So, it didn't take too long, and we soon became friends after a short introduction. What really special was that he lived in the same community as I did and we had several mutual friends in the kindergarten.

Reasons: There are several reasons for us to be good friends. First of all, we all liked playing basketball and loved to watch a great cartoon called 'Slam Dunk', so we attended the same basketball camp and basically shared most of our PE class together for playing basketball. What's more, he was such an interesting guy that was good at giving nicknames to our classmates. So he could always come up with some good names and tricks to make fun of others, which enlightened my school life tremendously. Although it seems a bit naughty now, we just loved all the tricks so much at that time.

Conclusion: Peng really shaped my personality a lot. I used to be an introvert boy who felt shy to talk with elder generation and unfamiliar people. However, through the interaction with Peng, I became much more confident and positive. I was even able to tell jokes and deliver a few short speeches in our school. I think that's why he shows up directly when I have to talk about a friend I made when we first met.

考官点评

A good answer, however the second half of the second sentence in the Background section is a bit strange. It's not language a native speaker would use, and the grammar of 'after 5-minute hard-searching' is missing an 's' and an 'of': 'after 5 minutes of searching'. It's also not really appropriate to refer to a child as a 'guy'. There are also some small grammar errors in the Conclusion.

There are a few grammar mistakes to give it an 8 or 9 in Grammar and too little

'idiomatic' language or 'collocations' for an 8 or 9 in Lexical Resource. Talking about friends, 'two peas in a pod' would have been a good idiom for this topic.

拓展练习

1. Describe one of your best friends.

You should say:
- who your friend is
- what your friend looks like
- something happened impressed you a lot
- and explain why you like this friend.

2. Describe one of your friends.

You should say:
- who your friend is
- what your friend looks like
- how you feel about this friend
- and explain why you have such a feeling.

3. Describe a friend who you had at school that you remembered well.

You should say:
- who your friend is
- when you met each other
- what your friend looks like
- and explain why you want to talk about this friend.

4. Describe a person who became your intimate friend at the first meeting.

You should say:
- who the person is/was
- when you first met the person
- what you did together
- and explain why you became friends at the meeting.

帮助的邻居

101

"邻居类"话题也是人物类的常见话题，其关键词都是"邻居"这个名词，并且该词的修饰语通常跨度都比较大，比如"有趣的邻居""你帮助过的邻居"。回答时要通过具体的事例去阐述和说明，一定要说清楚怎么有趣，或怎么帮助的。

真题演练

Describe a neighbour you ever helped.

You should say:
- who this person is
- when you helped this person
- how you helped this person

- and explain how you feel about helping this person.

考生范文

Opening Sentence: The most recent experience of helping a neighbour took place a few months ago.

Background: When I was at a party at a friend of mine's place, I received a call from my neighbour, a quite close friend as well. She told me that she was having a high fever and would like to know if I would be able to accompany her to the hospital.

We were close friends and used to be schoolmates since secondary school. Even if it was pretty late, I promised her that I would be there as soon as possible. I took a cab down and met my neighbour after half an hour. She looked so pale and weak. We went to the hospital near our place immediately. Fortunately, the doctor told me that her condition was not too serious and all she need was to drink plenty of water and have enough rest.

Feelings: To me, this is not a big deal because we have been friends for quite a long time. Instead, she felt really sorry to disturb me so late and very grateful to have my accompany.

Conclusion: As the Bible says, 'Help others, and you'll be helped.' Helping people always makes me happy.

考官点评

My first impression of this answer is that it's too short, which means that it wouldn't last 2 minutes. This would drop the Fluency and Coherence section of the criteria considerably.

There are some good 'less common' words, but not enough in the way of 'idiomatic' language or 'collocations'. Grammatically it's very good with only a few mistakes: 'and all she need' should be 'needed' and 'to disturb me...have my accompany' should be 'for disturbing me...to have my company'.

拓展练习

Describe someone who once helped you.

You should say:
- who he/she was
- what this person did
- how this person helped you
- and explain how you felt after this person helped you.

懂礼貌的邻居

102

对于“懂礼貌”这道题，很多考生都不知道如何说，对礼貌完全无从下手，于是三言两语觉得“见面说你好，分开说再见”就是礼貌，这样很容易三句话说完，不知道还能说什么。其实，我们要学会用事例去说够 Part 2 的两分钟，不是简简单单的一两句描述，而是将具体的交往过程展开，去描述这个人的礼貌之处。所以，考生们平时在准备和练习时，尽可能地通过讲述一个完整的小故事去证明吧！

真题演练

Describe a polite person you know.

You should say:
- who the person is
- how you know the person
- what the person looks like
- and explain why you think the person is polite.

考生范文

Opening Sentence: I'm going to talk about Hans, who's my neighbour I can think of when it comes to a polite person.

Background: We have lived in peace and harmony since he moved in our community 6 years ago. I guess that's possibly because he's quite a person easy to be with. I mean, I've never seen him argue with anyone and he just treats everyone kindly. I still remember the first time we met. It was right on the day he moved in. He knocked at our door, introduced himself with a smiling face and gave us specialty of his hometown as a gift. I had to admit that when I first heard about the news of a new comer, I was really worried if we could get on well with each other. But since he offered to come over just for saying hello, all of my worries have gone.

Reasons: Obviously, I'm so impressed by how polite he is. I'm not talking about daily simple greetings like saying 'please' and 'thank you'. It's about treating neighbours with respect! He's never done anything disturbing us—he keeps his voice down at night, cleans up pet waste on time and never borrows things or asks for help unless necessary. On top of that, he values social manners too. Whenever he is invited, he never shows up late or empty-handed and you hardly catch him answering a cell phone during a meal.

Conclusion: I feel extremely lucky to have him in the neighbourhood! I wish I could always have neighbours as polite as him.

考官点评

An excellent answer with good topic depth. There's some great vocab in this answer and although grammatically correct, sounds strange to a native: 'treats everyone kindly' would be an example of this. There are a couple of grammar errors, one very small, one a little larger; 'He's never done anything disturbing us' should be 'He's never done anything to disturb us' and the larger error is: 'quite a person easy to be with' needs to change to 'quite an easy person to be with' which is a word order issue.

This would certainly make the answer not reach a 9 but would certainly reach the 7/8 level.

拓展练习

1. Describe a nice neighbour you know.

You should say:
- how you met him/her
- how long you have known this neighbour
- what kind of person he/she is
- and explain why you think this neighbour is nice.

2. Describe a person who once moved to live with you.

You should say:
- when and where this person moved
- how you knew this person
- how you got along with this person
- and how you feel about living with this person.

3. Describe a good neighbour you once had.

You should say:
- how you met him/her
- how long you have known this neighbour
- what kind of person he/she is
- and explain why you think this neighbour is good.

释放正能量的跑男队长——邓超

103

《奔跑吧》是由浙江卫视推出的一档大型户外竞技真人秀节目，邓超在其中担任队长一职，他的表现更是可圈可点。身为队长，既要同节目组大量开会讨论参与内容策划，又要在录制时把控整体节奏，同时在节目中还要担起引导和照顾嘉宾的责任。因此，除了本身的搞笑属性外，他在现场更是一个细心负责的大哥，在节目中处处保护队友。“操心队长”表示输赢并不重要，带领大家去享受游戏的乐趣才是重点，所以他更操心的是如何兄弟同心、如何通过“自黑”传递快乐、如何带来正能量。正如他那句“超式”英语“We are 伐木累”一样，邓超带动下的“跑男团”齐心团结，拳拳相握，给观众展现团队的力量，带来欢笑……

考生们，请问以上素材可以用于哪类口语话题呢？

真题演练

Describe a leader you admire.

You should say:
- who this person is
- how you know this person
- what skills he or she has for leadership
- and explain why you think this person is a good leader.

考生范文

Opening Sentence: I would like to talk about Deng Chao, a versatile Chinese artist who is active in dramas, movies as well as variety shows.

Background: He has shown his talent in acting since he studied at Jiangxi Vocational Academy of Art. He is always able to bring the character he plays to life and thus his performance receives high praise from the public all the time. In 2013, he left Huayi Brothers, a Chinese entertainment company, and set up his personal studio. He then participated in the production and artistic direction of various films and stage plays. But Deng is best known for being a cast member of the popular reality show, 'Running Man', which is a huge hit in China.

Reasons: He impresses the audience with his hilarious image as a comedian as well as excellent leadership as the captain of the regular cast. In the show, Captain Deng tends to assign tasks to his team members based on their skills set or talents so you can see, the artist can fully display their characteristics and complete their task in an efficient way at last. Besides, he considers it his duty to take care of everyone, from his teammates, guests to the staff for the program. He's quite a considerate person who strives to work on how to cheer up his team when it loses a point or fails, how to make the guests feel easy for the brand new rule and then help them to get used to it and more importantly, how to make the shooting more smooth and effective so that the staff can get the work done soon.

Conclusion: In his eyes, it's more important for everybody to enjoy than to win the game. So he never minds showing up with funny facial expressions, exaggerating gestures and self-depreciation in the game as long as he can make the shooting fun and unite his team members.

考官点评

An excellent answer. There is a good amount of depth within the topic and uses some great 'less common' words as well as some 'idiomatic' language: 'huge hit' for example. There is also some 'effective paraphrasing', such as 'skills set or talents'.

There are a few small errors in the grammar: 'skills set' rather than 'skill set' and 'the

artist' rather than 'artists' but these are quite small. This, In my view, is certainly able to receive an 8, but isn't quite good enough for a 9.

拓展练习

1. Describe a person who can do well in work.

You should say:
- who this person is
- how you know this person
- what kinds of work this person does
- and explain why this person can do well.

2. Describe someone who has great influence on you.

You should say:
- who this person is
- how you know this person
- what influence this person has on you
- and explain how you think of the influence.

3. Describe a comedian who is popular in your country.

You should say:
- who this person is
- how you know this person
- what kinds of work this person does
- and explain why this comedian is popular.

重要的快递小哥

104

说起“重要的工作”，很多考生的第一反应可能是科学家、发明家，觉得他们在用科学、用知识改变世界。但在回答时，很难用什么事例去说清楚他们是如何起到的重要作用，因为科学家的定义本来就很广泛。笔者建议回答这一话题时，尽量谈论一个自己熟悉的职业。例如，我们周边有很多简单好说但却不可缺少的岗位，如快递小哥。在网购如此盛行的今天，缺少了快递小哥，我们的生活将会发生什么？

真题演练

Describe a person who has an important job.

You should say:
- who the person is
- where the person works
- what the person does in the job
- and explain why you think the person's job is important.

考生范文

Opening Sentence: Speaking of a person with an important job, I would like to talk about Wang

Wei, who is the chairman of SF Express, the Chinese version of Fedex.

Background: Believe it or not, at the age of 22, he was a nobody who rode a motorcycle of his friend to deliver package between Hong Kong and Shenzhen. And in time, he came to see potential for a brand and started to set up his own courier service firm with 5 partners. Thanks to the cheaper fee and reliability, his company grew its reputation rapidly by word of mouth and today, as you can see, SF has become one of the country's biggest delivery and logistics firms and Wang has become a successful billionaire entrepreneur.

Reasons: There is no doubt that Wang's job is influential to every Chinese, especially when shopping festivals like Double 11 are approaching. The event's various figures are expected to set records each year. Last year, a total of 1.05 billion packages were delivered during that period, up 35 percent year on year, according to the China Express Association. So you can imagine how many people are needed to deliver such great amount of packages. That's why almost 1,000 full-time workers would have been hired since every August and the number of part-time workers, including hourly workers and short-term dispatch workers, totaled over 3,000, according to an official from SF Express. Besides, in order to make the delivery speedier, SF has updated its equipment and data support. SF's fully automatic sorting equipment, located at the Beijing Logistics Park, was launched in August last year. It can handle 40,000 parcels per hour, almost double the manual work previously.

Conclusion: With the guidance of Wang Wei, SF not only offers Chinese loads of job opportunities but also facilitates the delivery of packages, which makes it an essential part of our life.

考官点评

A very good answer, with good depth in the topic. With all the figures though, it would sound a bit rehearsed and memorised; almost like a marketing or sales speech for SF.

The Lexical Resource element is very good too. It includes some good 'less common' terms and 'effective paraphrasing': 'part-time workers, including hourly workers and short-term dispatch workers'.

Some of the grammar, although correct, is not native: 'rode a motorcycle of his friend' rather than 'rode his friend's motorcycle'. Also, it should be 'every Chinese person' not just 'Chinese'.

拓展练习

1. Describe a person whose job is important to the society.

You should say:
- who this person is
- how you know this person
- what job he/she has
- and explain why you think his/her job is useful to the society.

2. Describe a person you know who has made a contribution to the society.

You should say:
- who this person is
- how you knew this person
- what contribution he/she made
- and explain how you felt about this person.

3. Describe an important job in your country.

You should say:
- what the job is
- what people have this job
- what the job requires
- and explain why the job is important in your country.

4. Describe a person who you wanted to be similar to in teenage years.

You should say:
- who this person was
- how you knew this person
- what impressed you about this person
- and explain why you wanted to be similar to this person.

机智幽默的奥巴马

105

一言不合就讲段子，作为奥巴马吸引人气的惯用伎俩，又一次用在了他的最后一次白宫记者协会晚宴上。在该演讲中，他先讽刺共和党官员阻拦特朗普无效，接着就特朗普当选发表观点。他暗示，外界可能会认为特朗普作为成功的商人，没有接触过政治，对政治不了解，只会吹嘘自己的身家（从 40 多亿吹到 80 多亿）。但事实上特朗普的外交经验很多，特别是和各国的 leaders，比如瑞典小姐、阿根廷小姐（不得不佩服奥巴马的吐槽能力）。他还暗示了特朗普今晚的缺席是因为“we had so much fun last time”（暗示自己吐槽太狠）。奥巴马说他不敢相信特朗普作为一个出风头爱好者，竟然拒绝今天的晚餐。奥巴马还用邀请函晚餐有鱼肉和牛排的选择暗示大家对希拉里和特朗普的支持。事实上，很多人两个都不支持，但是奥巴马说“that's your choice”——他是美国群众自己选的人，哭着也要支持。最后，奥巴马用“Obama out”结束了他的演讲，留下经久不息的掌声。不得不说这场演说亮点多多，槽点多多。

想一想：奥巴马如此机智风趣幽默，大家觉得可以将他用做哪一题的素材呢？

真题演练

Describe an interesting old person who you know.

You should say:
- who this person is
- how old he or she is
- how you know this person
- and explain why you think he or she is interesting.

考生范文

Opening Sentence: Speaking of an interesting old man that I know, I would like to talk about a well-known person, Barack Obama.

Background: As a 56-year old man, he finished his career as a president in 2017. During his 8-year presidency, he has been giving countless speeches. And one of the greatest features of his speeches is hilarious. There is no doubt that he has already shown his speech ability during his campaign speeches. I first knew him from his famous Chicago speech. I was shocked by his amazing rhetoric skills at first.

Reasons: After watching his several talk shows, I've realised that he is not only an orator who is good at driving the atmosphere but also a funny talker who can always make people laugh. Recently, Stephen Colbert, a famous American talk show host, gave Obama a mock job interview for helping him facing the retirement. When he was asked why he has not had any promotion in the past eight years, he said that the only higher place was his wife's position, so there was no place for him to get promotion. What's more, he has also showed his respect to his wife. I think his answer is so smart. The most excellent speech is his farewell speech at White House Correspondents' dinner. He played jokes on Hilary, Trump and most of the politicians, and he also made a self-denigration. He explained the absence of Trump is that they had so much 'fun' last time. Actually, he teased Trump too much last time. He also tried to show people who believed that Trump didn't know how to start a diplomatic connection that Trump did have many connections with 'leaders' from all over the world, such as Miss Sweden and Miss Argentina. He used his interesting expressions successfully to satirise Trump's scandal. Actually, I couldn't stop laughing when I listened to his speech. What shocked me most was that he said 'Obama out' to say goodbye to the public. This is a really funny and impressive way, and I will never forget this action, actually.

Conclusion: I have to admit he is one of the most interesting men I have ever known. He can use his funny language to express his meanings. And most of time, these sentences always have some deep meanings.

考官点评

A very good answer however it should be noted that it doesn't entirely answer the question. It should really be about somebody you actually know rather than someone who is known. This won't necessarily affect the score though.

The vocabulary contains some good 'less common' words but used incorrectly: 'the greatest features of his speeches is hilarious' could change to 'the greatest features of his speeches is the comedy'. Also, 'shocked' would be better replaced with 'surprised' in the Background section.

Grammatically, there are some tense issues: 'he has been giving countless speeches' should be 'he gave countless...' as well as conjugation errors such as, 'helping him facing the retirement' should be 'helping him face retirement'. Overall, I don't think this is quite good enough for an 8.

拓展练习

1. Describe a person who has an interesting or important job.

You should say:
- who the person is
- where the person works
- what the person does
- and explain why you think the person's job is interesting or important.

2. Describe someone who is older than you that you admire.

You should say:
- who this person is
- how long you have known him/her
- what qualities he/she has
- and explain why you admire him/her.

3. Describe a person that made you laugh.

You should say:
- who this person is/was
- how you knew him or her
- what this person did
- and explain why he or she made you laugh.

影响我一生的妈妈

106

考生们需注意，“人物类”题的可合并性非常强，这意味着很多题将人物的称呼换一下就可以使用了。这要求我们在准备素材时一定不要准备太特例的，因为“段子”使用的局限性会比较大。对于下面这道“有重要影响的家人”，在谈论影响力时，考生们可以尝试与一些职业挂钩，比如“当老师、认真负责的家人”“当医生、严谨仔细的家人”“当建筑师、赋予幻想力的家人”等。

真题演练

Describe a family member who has had an important influence in your life.

You should say:
- who the person is
- what kind of person he or she is
- what this person has done to influence you
- and explain why you think this person is important to you.

考生范文

Opening Sentence: Speaking of a person who has had an important influence on me, I would like to talk about my mother—a traditional Chinese physician.

Background: My mom always tells me that what traditional Chinese medicine emphasises on is not only the treatment of various diseases, but also the prevention of many diseases. This prevention which is called 'Yangsheng' in Chinese means helping people improve their physiques in daily life. She also tells me that this kind of 'prevention' could be applied in many parts of our life. I think this idea influences me in many parts of my life.

Reasons: Firstly, I always keep a healthy lifestyle, such as getting enough sleep, good diets and daily exercises. It is a good way to face the high pressure of my final week and I can get more energetic. I used to get sick but after I change my lifestyle, my immune system is enhanced. Secondly, this idea gave me a new understanding about time. I used to put off my work all the time, so when I met the deadline, it drove me crazy. Currently, I make a good plan about my work and finish all of them in time. I don't need to ask the extension from my professor at the end of the semester. I think this is also a kind of way to show 'yinyang' because we don't want to push things into an extreme situation. What's more, when we meet the difficulties, don't try to solve it at once. We need to figure out what part of the process is incorrect. Likewise, in Chinese traditional pharmacy, only giving people pills doesn't make any difference if we don't find out the fundamental problems, all the tasks should be analysed step by step. Don't try to change the result at once.

Conclusion: I have to say, what my mom always tries to teach me from her job influences me a lot. She also does all the things by following these rules and sets a good example for me.

考官点评

Overall, a good answer. It's not entirely relevant to the question, but this wouldn't necessarily affect the score.

It does have some 'less common' language and the odd 'collocation' but no real 'idiomatic' language or 'paraphrasing'.

Grammatically, there are some errors that would take it out from the top scores, for example, '...daily exercises' should be '...daily exercise', '...can get more energetic' needs to change to '...can get more energy', '...ask the extension' should be '...ask for an extension' to name a few.

拓展练习

1. Describe a family member who made you proud.

You should say:
- who this person is
- how often you spend time together
- what he or she does that makes you proud
- and explain why you are proud of this person.

2. Describe a famous person who is important to your country.

You should say:
- who this person is
- how you know this person
- how this person became famous
- and explain why this person is important to your country.

3. Describe a person you know that has made a contribution to the society.

You should say:
- who this person is
- how you know this person
- what contribution he/she made
- and explain how you felt about this person.

4. Describe a person who has an important job.

You should say:
- who the person is
- where the person works
- what the person does in the job
- and explain why you think the person's job is important.

工作精英

107

到现在为止，大家对于笔者先前提到的答题框架（1. Opening Sentence(s)；2. Background；3. Reasons/Feelings；4. Conclusion）应该有一个更深刻的体会了。以下面这道题为例，其中 Background 指的就是这个工作精英的人物背景，Reasons 则是该人物对你所产生的影响、你从他的身上学到的东西。同样，如果题目换成了“你想见的人”，基本上 Background 这点是不需要改变的，只需要在 reasons 这点从之前的变为“为什么想见这个人”就可以了。

真题演练

Describe a person who can do well in work.

You should say:
- who this person is
- how you know this person
- what kinds of work this person does
- and explain why this person can do well.

考生范文

Opening Sentences: This topic makes me think of Hong Tao, a director and also a media planner in Hunan channel. Most of people are probably unfamiliar with this name, but I am pretty sure you know programs which he directed.

Background: Actually, he was the planner of a hottest Chinese reality show called 'Where Are We Going, Dad?' and the director of a famous music show 'I Am a Singer'. Compared with other TV shows which were broadcasted at the same time, these two shows won the highest audience ratings. What surprised me was that Hong Tao was not a professional in TV area. In fact, he majored in technology in his college. I have to say, he definitely has a gift for media planning, and what's more, his success has a close connection with his ability to lead a big team.

Reasons: In the first season of the reality show 'Where Are We Going, Dad?', there were a lot of unforeseen circumstances and voices of doubt. The main part of the guests were children of the celebrities, and most of them were under 5 years old. And they didn't know how to perform in front of audience. So as Hong Tao expected, this show was full of authenticity. But at the same time, the shortcomings of these little kids were also exposed to the audience. Many of the spectators slandered these kids and their parents with bad words, and this leaded to requirements from the parents about quitting the show. At that time, Hong Tao was gonna be crazy. He needed to placate these parents. He also needed to make sure that the programs could proceed normally. So he asked the strategy department to continue to choose the next station, and design the activities. Then he discussed with his team about the backup choices in case of the quitting of some guests. Luckily, no one quitted from the show. As a leader, he could always find the most effective way to solve the problems, and he also trusted his members and gave them enough space to develop themselves. And finally this program got a great achievement.

Conclusion: I have to admit that this large-scale reality TV show is a true test of leadership, and he is good at employing people. What's more, he is also adaptable to circumstances.

考官点评

I don't think this answer would reach an 8 in grammar as there are too many small grammatical errors. For example, the second line should be 'on a Hunan channel' or maybe 'on the Hunan channel' rather than 'in Hunan channel' and 'most people' not 'most of people'. In the second paragraph 'professional in TV area' could be changed to '...professional in TV' or '...professional in the TV field'. As well as the grammar mistakes, there are also some vocabulary errors. For example, neither 'spectators' nor 'slandered' are the correct words as they are very specific terms, 'bad words' also doesn't really fit. 'Many of the people that first watched this show said nasty things about the kids and their parents' would be a better way of saying it. 'gonna be crazy' should also be changed to 'going crazy'.

I'm also not sure what is meant by 'to continue to choose the next station'.

This answer would not reach an 8 overall.

拓展练习

1. Describe a famous person in your country who has influenced you.

You should say:
- who the person is
- how long you have known him/her
- what qualities this person has
- and explain why they have had such an influence on you.

2. Describe a person in the news that you would like to meet.

You should say:
- who he or she is
- what this person shows up on TV
- how you know this person
- and explain why you want to meet him or her.

3. Describe a person who you wanted to be similar to in teenage years.

You should say:
- who this person was
- how you knew this person
- what impressed you about this person
- and explain why you wanted to be similar to this person.

有才有颜的 Big Bang & 不忘初心的 Saya

108

很多考生期盼着能抽到关于“singer 或 musical band”的卡片题，觉得明星这个话题相对好说。但要注意的是，谈论 musician 时一定不要只会用一些浅表形容词，比如好看、帅气等。我们很难证明这个人长相好看或长得帅气，但我们可以说他们是如何坚持梦想或如何在低迷之后又雄起的，这很容易找到事例去证明。因此，考生们平时准备和练习时要学会，每说一句话之前先想清楚它的意

义，是为了后文的细节展开论述，还是为了承接或过渡。避免因为考场过度紧张，而东扯一句西扯一句，前后没有关联，毫无逻辑可言。

真题演练

Describe a musical group or band from your country that you like.

You should say:
- what kind of music they play
- what kind of people like them
- when they became popular
- and explain why you like them.

考生范文

Opening Sentence: Speaking of a musical group that is popular in my country, I would like to talk about Big Bang.

Background: Actually, this is a Korean band but I think most of the Chinese juveniles have already heard their songs. And many of the young people are their fans. So there is no doubt to say that they are popular in China. This group includes five young handsome Korean boys, and the leader is G-Dragon. When they released their debut, the audience thought that they were not good-looking but after they released a song called 'Lie', they successfully became the most famous band in Asia. This song is also very famous all around the world. After that, every song of their new album will occupy the top 10 ranks of all the music lists. What's more, it is really difficult to buy a ticket for their concert in China. The scalper will also purchase a lot of tickets in advance because they know most of the fans will come to the concert and it is a good chance for them to earn money.

Reasons: As for why they can be so popular, first, they are talents. And I have to refer two amazing members, G-Dragon and TOP. Actually, they are not only idols but also musicians. G-Dragon has written many songs when he was a Korean apprentice. He is also the important member of writing songs in his group, and most of the songs have received an award, such as 'Loser' 'If You'. As for TOP, he is a rap genius, and his inborn full-bodied voice shock a lot of listeners. What's more, he is not good at dancing, so his dancing steps are really special which attracts his fans to imitate and they call the steps 'old dance.' I have to say Big Bang has already led a pop trendy not only in music but also in fashion style. The clothing they wear is suitable for their music and is really a hip-hop style.

Conclusion: I would say, I really love them. You know, you can always find a right song to match the mood you're in because they have a ton of brilliant songs which are in different styles. I also love the jewellery which was designed by G-Dragon even though it is expensive.

考官点评

An excellent answer. The vocabulary shows a wide range but some of the words aren't appropriate. 'Chinese juveniles' would be better as 'Chinese Teenagers' and I'm not sure of the meaning of 'inborn', 'natural' I think would be better. Also, 'occupy the top 10 ranks' would be better as 'occupy the top 10' or 'is always ranked in the top 10'. Grammatically, again, it's very good. 'they are talents' I think should be 'they are talented' or maybe 'they have talent'. I think this will still reach a score of 8.

真题演练

Describe a pop singer or musician.

You should say:
- who he or she is
- what kind of music he or she performs
- what kind of person he or she is
- and explain why you like him or her.

考生范文

Opening Sentence: About the pop singer, the first name comes to my mind is Saya, Zhang Huichun, the younger sister of the popular superstar Zhang Huimei.

Background: But actually, what reminds me of her is not because she is the superstar's sister, but because she participated a TV music competition called 'The Voice of China'. She has a gift for singing. When I saw her in this competition, I felt familiar with her but I couldn't tell why. After she introduced herself, her songs and her soap opera suddenly came to my mind. She made her debut in 1997, and at that time, I had already heard her song. I have to admit that she was really popular at that time, and then she quitted the show business to marry with her husband. Although she really loved her musical career, she decided to put her whole heart into her family and her baby girl. There is no doubt that she was a woman sacrificing her career for family life.

Reasons: In fact, I am surprised that she wants to come back to the stage. I know that she has divorced her husband. Currently, she is a single mom. These years, she has never forgot her music dream. So this time, she wants to become a good role model for her daughter and tell her that we should never give up our dreams no matter how old we are, and what situations we will meet. Although she has left stage for almost 9 years and she looked nervous on stage, she eventually made it. She has received recognition from the Chinese audience, not only because of her wonderful performance which is full of emotions, but also because of her persistence in the pursuit of her dream and her love to her daughter.

Conclusion: I have to say, her story inspires me a lot. These days, I've downloaded a lot of her songs. She really has a good voice and it can remind me that I should stick to what I like and work hard for achieving it.

考官点评

A great answer. There are a few errors however. For a start in Background it says 'I felt familiar with her', a better phrase would be 'I felt a connection with her' and the sentence 'she quitted the show business to marry with her husband' could change to 'she quit show business to get married to her husband'. Another small grammatical issue is: 'she has never forgot...' should be 'she has never forgotten...'.

Although there are some good 'less common' words, there isn't any particular 'idiomatic' language, so I don't think this element would reach an 8.

拓展练习

1. Describe a singer or musician you met recently.

You should say:
- who the person is/was
- how you first learnt about him or her
- why this person is famous
- and explain why you like this person.

2. Describe a popular band or singer in your country.

You should say:
- when the band or singer first became popular
- what style of music this band or singer performs
- what kinds of people like this band or singer
- and explain why you think they are popular.

美得让人怀疑的 Angelababy

109

相信《奔跑吧》这一娱乐节目让很多人对“女神”Angelababy 又有了新的认识。节目中，她展现了强悍率真的“女汉子”气质，用她的聪明可爱吸引了很多粉丝。大家想一想，Angelababy 这一素材可以用在雅思口语的哪些个题目呢？

真题演练

Describe a person who you think is beautiful or handsome.

You should say:
- who the person is
- when you met the person for the first time
- what the person's character is

that I should be an independent girl.

Reasons: I like to spend time with my grandma because I could always learn things from her and she always made me feel calm.

Conclusion: Currently, I could only come back to her house in the vacation but I always write letters to her. This is our communication method.

考官点评

A good answer. Some of the logic however, is a little off. It doesn't necessarily follow that because she was born, her grandma was 71 years old. There are also a few small grammar mistakes: 'country faced the difficulties' doesn't need the 'the' and 'she quitted her study...' should be 'she quit her study...'. Also, 'she shard me her stories...' needs to change to 'shared with me...' as well as 'many stories for me' should be '...to me...'. Finally, 'our happiness life' should be 'our happy life' and 'one of Chinese cultures' should be 'part of Chinese culture'. With regards to Vocabulary, there are some good 'less common' words, appreciated, encouraged etc. but very little 'idiomatic' language. I don't think that this answer would quite reach an 8, as there are too many mistakes.

拓展练习

Describe a person that you like to spend time with.

You should say:
- who he or she is
- what you like to do together
- how you know this person
- and explain why you like to spend time with this person.

88岁的“年轻”奶奶

111

最近网上一组照片火了，不是因为拍的有多高水准，而是因为这组照片是一个老奶奶拍的。老奶奶70岁才学会如何使用相机，不过，从那以后就控制不住浑身上下的“洪荒之力”了，开始了一系列可爱又搞笑的照片。而且她不仅会拍，还会修图，当然不是用的美图秀秀哦，而是能熟练运用Photoshop。这也可以看出，什么时候学习都不晚，人永远都可以创作。

真题演练

Describe a creative person that you admire.

You should say:
- who this person is
- how you know this person
- what creative things this person likes to do
- and explain why you admire this person.

考生范文

Opening Sentence: For this topic, I really want to talk about a hottest Japanese photographer, Kimiko Nishimoto.

Background: Actually, unlike most of the common famous photographers who are good at catching details or maybe photographing the sceneries, this 88-year-old Japanese grandmother is famous for featuring herself in the most unlikely situations. And she becomes famous in Chinese social network overnight because many net users are interested in her hilarious photos.

When I first saw these pictures, I thought it was taken by some Internet marketers who wanted to educate us that we need to care more about the elderly. But I was shocked when I knew that these pictures were self-portraits just for fun because the main character in the photos looked old.

Reasons: I have to say that this grandmother changes my stereotype about old people because I always think that old people are narrow-minded, and they refuse to accept new technology, especially advanced electronic equipment. I just can't believe that she can use cameras and Photoshop in such a good way. After searching some of her information, I have to admit that I really admire her. Kimiko Nishimoto learnt how to use a camera for the first time at the age of 71. At that time, she mostly focused on life and nature photography. Then she furthered her skills by taking courses on digital editing to manipulate her images. She moved into the selfie area because her son encouraged her to try to photograph herself, and from then on, this grandmother fell in love with taking selfie.

Conclusion: First, I was inspired by her strong curiosity about new things and her learning ability. Even though she is more than 80, she still loves to accept and learn latest technology such as using cameras. Second, I think we need to learn her sense of humour. Her self-portrait portfolio is full of humour, creativity and her positive life attitude. And our young generations can learn from her story that we can't just limit ourselves in what we have now. We need to break the rules and create new things. I also want to be the same kind of person when I am old.

考官点评

An excellent answer overall. There's a good range in both Grammar and Lexical Resource (Vocabulary). There is a little bit of 'paraphrasing' and 'less common' language as well as 'idiomatic' language. There are some small grammatical errors such as: 'photographing the sceneries' doesn't need the 'the' and 'she becomes famous...' should be 'she has become famous...' This is certainly capable of getting an 8.

2. Describe an interesting wild animal from your country you like best.

You should say:
- where you learnt about this animal
- what it looks like
- where it lives (where you saw it)
- and explain why you like this interesting animal.

考官版

我的好爸爸

113

真题演练

Describe a good parent (you know).

You should say:
- who the parent is
- what the parent looks like
- how you know the parent
- and explain why you think the parent is good.

Describe a family member that you are mostly close to.

You should say:
- who he or she is
- what he/she looks like
- what work he or she does
- and explain why you are mostly close to this family member.

考官范文

- **who the parent is/who he or she is/how you know the parent**

The family member I would like to describe and talk about is my father.

- **what the parent looks like/what he/she looks like**

As for what he looks like, he's a bit taller than the norm at 1m80 and is now a little bit on the porky side[①]. I've seen photos of him when he was younger and had just got married to my mum, he was a lot slimmer. Putting on weight just happens with age, I suppose. He's going a bit grey[②] these days too, even though he's not yet 50. Maybe that's because he works so hard.

①偏胖

②头发开始花白

- **what work he or she does**

To be honest, I'm not exactly sure what he does. I know he's a mid-level manager at a big car manufacturer, Daimler, I believe but, all I really know

for certain[③] is that he gets up really early in the morning and comes home quite late at night; normally after 7, which is a shame because we quite often have dinner without him. A couple of good thing though, is that he never brings his work home with him and rarely works on weekends.

③肯定地

- **and explain why you think the parent is good/why you are mostly close to this family member.**

I think my dad is a great parent mainly because he works very hard to provide for our family and never complains or gets angry at things. When I was a kid, I always remember spending time with my dad on holidays and weekends, and have always felt close to him growing up and now that I'm older and can understand more about how tired he must have been and yet he still took time to spend with me, I think that's wonderful. It's the little things, you know, the games, the little presents, the trips that make him so special to me and why I think he's a good parent.

无所不知的老爸

114

真题演练

Describe a family member who led an interesting life.

You should say:
- who this person is
- what kind of person he or she is
- what you and this person usually do together
- and explain why you think he/she is interesting.

Describe someone who has a great influence on you.

You should say:
- who this person is
- how you know this person
- what influence this person has on you
- and explain how you think of the influence.

考官范文

- **who this person is/how you know this person**

In answer to this question, I'm going to talk about my father. I know that probably everyone idolises their parents and thinks they are interesting and, basically the best thing since sliced bread[①], but in my case it's really true.

①典范，楷模

- **what kind of person he or she is**

He's a very patient and considerate man and incredibly intelligent. Really,

genius level. He works as a consultant for the car manufacturing industry and an environmental think tank that provides information and advice to the UN. He always knows that he's the most intelligent person whenever he walks into a room, but he never shows off and will always listen to others' ideas, including mine.

- **what you and this person usually do together/what influence this person has on you**

I thoroughly enjoy hanging out with my dad. Just the conversations we have about life the universe and everything fill me with intrigue② and make me wonder about, well, everything. It's why I'm currently doing my PhD in Solar Physics③. Ever since I was a boy, he read me books about science, the environment and all the current physics theories. It had a profound influence on me growing up, and no, I don't think the answer is 42, but I want to be able to prove it!!

②好奇心

③太阳物理学

- **and explain why you think he/she is interesting/how you think of the influence.**

The fact that he seems to know almost everything about everything④ inspired me to learn, not only from him but also from others. Now that I'm an adult, I realise there are still many questions that we need to answer and he doesn't have all the answers, but my thirst for knowledge is most definitely from him. I think that without his patience and nurture growing up I wouldn't have the drive and dedication that I have today and would be a very different person. So, I'm enormously grateful and still fascinated by him.

④几乎无所不知

令人讨厌的不速之客——爸爸的朋友

115

真题演练

Describe a person you don't like but you have to be friendly with.

You should say:
- who the person is
- why you don't like him/her
- and explain why you have to be friendly with him/her.

Describe a person who visited your home.

You should say:
- who the person is
- why this person visited your home
- how you spent the time with him/her
- and explain how you felt about the visit.

考官范文

● **who the person is**

The person that I'd like to describe is one of my uncles, you know, one of my father's friends. I've known him ever since I was a child, but, to be honest, I've never really liked him.

● **why this person visited your home/how you spent the time with him/her**

He doesn't visit us that often, thankfully. Maybe sometimes during the public holidays he'll come over and see us, or my father I should say. Although I don't think they are in business together, I think they help each other out at times. So my uncle comes over when he needs something, or maybe vice versa and then stays for dinner.

● **why you don't like him/her**

I really can't pinpoint[①] exactly why I don't like him, I just never have. There's something about the way he looks at me that makes me feel uncomfortable. He's never been nasty to me or my mum and dad and actually always gives me the red pockets during the Spring Festival, which I'm always grateful for; it's just there's something that gives me the creeps[②].

①准确地描述

②使心里发毛

● **and explain why you have to be friendly with him/her/how you felt about the visit.**

I can't be openly rude to him, for various reasons, not least of which[③] is that he's my father's friend. So I think it's better that I stay polite and friendly to him for my parents' sake[④]. But I just feel really uncomfortable when he comes to our house. These days it's easier to avoid him as I'm currently studying at university and can make sure I'm just not home when I know he's coming. I do sometimes feel a little guilty about my actions, but I just know that I'm not a fan of his[⑤], but he's obviously good friends with my father, so I'll keep being nice to him.

③最重要的是

④看在爸妈的份上

⑤我不喜欢他

天才姐姐——爸爸好朋友的女儿

116

真题演练

Describe a creative person that you admire.

You should say: ● who this person is

● how you know this person

- what creative things this person likes to do
- and explain why you admire this person.

Describe a person who you wanted to be similar to in teenage years.

You should say:
- who this person is/was
- how you knew this person
- what impressed you about this person
- and explain why you wanted to be similar to this person.

考官范文

- **who this person is/was**

My big sister, Wang He, is someone I've always admired and wanted to be like ever since I knew her, which is actually most of my life.

- **how you know/knew this person**

She's not actually my real sister; she's the daughter of my father's best friend. She's about 5 years older than me and now working as an artist for digital effects company[①]. I've known her ever since I can remember and remember her visiting me and vice versa lots over the years. We kind of grew up together and even though we went to the same school, she was in a higher year than me.

①数码特效公司

- **what creative things this person likes to do/what impressed you about this person**

I remember once when I went over to her house, she was doing her art homework. I was fascinated by[②] her sketches and drawings and wished that I could draw like that. The way she could create an image in her mind and then transfer it on to paper was, to me, incredible, not to mention beautiful. I had never seen anyone create something like that before, and what impressed me the most was that she did it so effortlessly and so quickly, without really concentrating on it too much.

②着迷于

- **and explain why you think this person is creative/why you wanted to be similar to this person.**

I would love to be able to do what she does. I find it incredible and wish I could do it. I've never been very good at art, or particularly creative, so to look at someone produce something out of nothing[③] is nothing short of[④] astounding[⑤].

③生产从无到有
④简直就是
⑤令人震惊的

拓展练习

Describe a person you liked in your childhood.

You should say:
- who this person was
- what you did together
- why you liked this person
- and explain why you still remember this person.

Describe a family member that you are proud of.

You should say:
- who the person is
- what the person did
- and explain why you are proud of this person.

乐于助人的我——遗传妈妈

117

真题演练

Describe a character or personality of yours.

You should say:
- what it is
- how it affects your life
- where you get it from
- and explain how you feel about it.

Describe a person who you once helped (but you didn't know).

You should say:
- who this person was
- how you knew him or her
- how you helped him or her
- and explain why you helped this person you didn't know.

考官范文

- **what it is/where you get it from**

I'd like to describe a time that I was kind and helped someone I didn't know. I think I get it from my mum. She's a nurse in the cancer ward at a hospital near our home and I know I get my caring nature from her and I think maybe a bit of my grandma thrown in too, she was a nurse too.

- **how it affects your life**

I get a huge amount of satisfaction from helping people, and although I don't want to follow in my mother's footsteps and become a nurse or a doctor, I am thinking about becoming a teacher. I suppose I have found

my direction in life and would now like to pursue it.

- **who this person was/how you knew him or her/how you helped him or her**

The person I helped was an old lady who was in the subway. She looked a little distressed and had a big bag of grocery shopping. I think she was maybe a bit disoriented[①] or lost. My kindness gene kicked in[②] and I went over to see if I could help. In the end I helped her find the correct subway line and carry her shopping. She was visiting her son, wasn't from Beijing and was getting confused by all the different lines and with so many people couldn't really see clearly where to go.

①迷失方向的
②起作用

- **and explain why you helped this person you didn't know/how you feel about it.**

Like my mother, I feel compelled to[③] help people, that's with I think I have kindness in my DNA. It gives me an extreme sense of well-being, calmness and contentment[④]. I only wish that more people could be like me, I think the world might be a better place.

③觉得理所应当
④幸福、平静和满足感

帮助我成长的小舅——妈妈的弟弟

118

真题演练

Describe a family member you'd like to work with.

You should say:
- who the member is
- what kind of work you want to do with him or her
- what he or she did impressed you most
- and explain why you would like to work with him or her.

Describe a helpful person in work or study.

You should say:
- who the person is
- what kind of person he/she is
- how this person helps you
- and explain why you think this person is helpful.

考官范文

- **who the member is/who the person is/what kind of person he/she is**

The person I'd like to describe is my uncle. He's my uncle from my mother's side, her little brother. He's a very considerate and kind man, who is always patient with me if I make mistakes.

- **what kind of work you want to do with him or her**

I've worked with him for about two years now in his company with my aunt, his wife. They don't have any children of their own, so I think I'm kind of their adopted daughter[①]. After I graduated in Business Management, I went to work there just for the summer, you know, as an intern to get some experience. I liked it so much; I asked him if I could stay, so I'm now the North China Sales Manager.

①义女

- **how this person helps you/what he or she did impressed you most**

My uncle started his company from scratch[②], without any outside investment and now has a small company of about 75 people. I have learnt so much from him, including all the practical side of what I leant in my degree. I have found out though, that some of the theory, to be honest, isn't all that useful in the real world and I often talk with him and my aunt to get their help doing my job better. He is just so, well, impressive! He always has insightful answers to my questions and is never stumped[③].

②白手起家

③从不会被难倒

- **and explain why you would like to work with him or her/why you think this person is helpful.**

I'm so happy that I was able to stick with his company as I have learnt far more than I would have done somewhere else. The help that I get from my uncle and aunt is priceless and I know that it will benefit me both now and in the future. Without his help, I really don't know what I'd be doing today. One thing for sure, I wouldn't be as happy as I am now.

让我哭笑不得的小外甥——姐姐的儿子

119

真题演练

Describe a child (you know).

You should say:
- who the child is
- how you first met
- what the child looks like
- and explain why you like him/her.

Describe a person that made you laugh.

You should say:
- who this person is
- how you know him or her

- what this person does
- and explain why he or she can make you laugh.

考官范文

- **who the child is/who this person is**

I want to tell you about my nephew, my older sister's child, who is just hilarious. He makes everyone laugh and feel cheerful. He's a wonderful recent addition to our family[①].

①家庭新成员

- **how you first met/how you know him or her**

He's 5 years old now and we all were over the moon when he was born. Honestly, I'm not sure who was happier, me, my sister or my mother. Although we don't live together anymore, we live very close to each other and are always having dinner either at her place or my parents'. We've all watched him grow up into a kind, funny and caring boy.

- **what the child looks like/what this person does**

He's just starting school now and looks great in his school uniform and freshly cut hair. He's going a little earlier than the normal Chinese child as he's learning at an international school here in Beijing. I think he's really enjoying it, and he's certainly making lots of new friends. Actually, I think he's already got himself a girlfriend!! Like father like son.[②]

②真是有其父必有其子。

- **and explain why he or she can make you laugh/why you like him/her.**

The thing that I love about him most is that he's at that really inquisitive[③] age where he wants to know about everything and asks 'Why?' about everything and when you try and explain it he just uses the innocent logic of a child to say that your explanation is wrong and then just some of the phrases he comes out with are way beyond his years[④]. As they say 'out of the mouth of babes[⑤]...', I hope he continues to be like this as he's a constant source of entertainment.

③好奇的
④与年龄不符
⑤孩子虽小，但说出的话的确有道理

拓展练习

Describe a time that a child did something that made you laugh.

You should say:
- who the child was
- when this happened
- what the child did
- and explain why it was funny.

家有时髦姥姥

120

真题演练

Describe a person who you believe dresses well.

You should say:
- who this person is
- how you know him/her
- what kind of dresses he/she wears
- and explain why you think this person dresses well.

Describe a person who is fashionable.

- who this person is
- what kinds of clothes this person likes to wear
- how you know this person
- and explain why you think this person is fashionable.

考官范文

- **who this person is**

With regards to this topic, I suspect that most people would talk about a famous person or celebrity but for me, I'd actually like to talk about my grandma, my mother's mother.

- **how you know him/her**

As for how I know her, I think that it's self-evident as I have known her all my life and spent a lot of time with her growing up. In fact, for a few years she raised me, when both my parents were working and didn't have the time to look after me during the day.

- **what kind of dresses he/she wears/what kinds of clothes this person likes to wear**

As far back as I can remember she has always dressed well, both fashionable and stylish. There's no one specific outfit that she wears that looks good, it's her entire wardrobe. There's many different colours and types of clothing from dresses, to skirt suits[①] as well as trousers with tops and jackets. There are not many 'labels' in her closet like Chanel, or Gucci, although there are some. But I'd say pretty much everything she's got would be a known brand.

①裙套装

- **and explain why you think this person dresses well/why you think this person is fashionable.**

The main reason why I think she dresses so well, is just that she has an

ability to look at clothes and match them with each other to make her look good. It's not that she's particularly slim, or tall for that matter, but that she just knows what will look good on[②] her and then has the confidence to wear it. I think that's actually what it comes down to[③], she can pull off any style of clothing[④] because she is confident in[⑤] herself. She even looks good in jeans, although I think I've only ever seen her wear them once!

②适合
③归根到底是
④驾驭任何风格的衣服
⑤对……有信心

美丽俏佳人——我的女朋友

121

真题演练

Describe a person who you think is beautiful or handsome.

You should say:
- who the person is
- when you met the person for the first time
- what the person's character is
- and explain how you feel about the person.

Describe a person you know who dresses well.

You should say:
- who the person is
- what kinds of clothes this person likes to wear
- how you know this person
- and explain why you think this person dresses well.

考官范文

- **who the person is**

The most beautiful, best dressed and kindest person I know is my girlfriend. I realise that I'm somewhat biased but I really believe it.

- **when you met the person for the first time/how you know this person**

I met her a couple of years ago, through a mutual friend, when we went out for a movie. We clicked straight away[①] and, to be honest, haven't really been apart since. I'm incredibly grateful to Michael, my friend, as he's made me the happiest guy on the planet.

①一见钟情

- **what the person's character is/what kinds of clothes this person likes to wear**

Not only is she seriously gorgeous, she's also the most stylish. She's quite an extrovert and always wears the latest fashion. Not necessarily

the expensive labels, but things like Uniqlo and Zara. I think her clothes mimic her personality, stylish yet understated, bright yet quiet. She is a very kind person and generous too; she always gives far more than she receives but is feisty[2] when she needs to be. This is certainly reflected in her clothing colours. When she wears yellow and orange, the colours of fire, I know to run for the hills[3], because she's in a bad mood.

②争强好胜的
③躲得远远的

- **and explain why you think this person dresses well/how you feel about the person.**

I'm not sure how she does it, but she has fantastic colour co-ordination and always wears colours to match her mood. I suppose you really could say she wears her heart on her sleeve[4]. It's one of the things I love about her most, the fact that she's so open and, if you know her well, you can read her like a book. I hope she never changes.

④十分坦率

拓展练习

Describe a person who is fashionable.

- who this person is
- what kinds of clothes this person likes to wear
- how you know this person
- and explain why you think this person is fashionable.

我好朋友的妈妈

122

真题演练

Describe a good parent who is familiar to you.

You should say:
- who he or she is
- how you know this parent
- what this parent looks like
- and explain why you are familiar to him or her.

Describe a family (not your own) you like.

You should say:
- what kind of family it is
- how you know about it
- what you did together
- and explain why you like it.

考官范文

● **who he or she is/what kind of family it is**

I would like to talk about my best friend and her family, and in particular her mum. I met my friend years ago when we were at high school together. She has a really warm and happy typical Chinese family which includes three persons.

● **how you know this parent/how you know about it/what this parent looks like**

As we were in the same class we often spent time at each other's places studying or doing homework and that's when I first met her mum. I instantly took to[①] her. Her face was very kind and she seemed to smile all the time, same with her dad, actually. Her mum isn't very tall, normal height I suppose for a Chinese woman with lovely long hair and a wonderful complexion. She's really lucky like that, I think that's where my friend gets her good skin too.

①对……产生好感

● **what you did together/and explain why you are familiar to him or her.**

Over time both our families became really good friends and we often go on holiday together and have dinner at each other's houses on some of the public holidays too. My friend is like the sister I could never have because of the Chinese policy with childbirth and her parents are like my surrogate parents[②] because we spend so much time together. Sometimes, I wish I were a boy so that I could marry her and really become one family.

②“再生父母”

● **and explain why you like it.**

I suppose the reason why I enjoy this family so much is that it's a really happy family; it reminds me of my own and like I said earlier, I sometimes wish that I could make our family one. I'd be over the moon[③] if I could make that a reality[④], really, just ecstatic[⑤].

③欣喜若狂
④使……成为现实
⑤欣喜若狂的

拓展练习

Describe a typical family in your country.

You should say:
- what kind of family it is
- how you know this family
- how many family members in this family
- and explain why you think it is typical in China.

帮我出谋划策的好友 Chris

123

真题演练

Describe a person who gave you a clever solution to a problem.

You should say:
- who the person is
- how you know him or her
- what he or she did
- and explain why you think he or she is clever.

考官范文

● who the person is

My friend Chris, is the person that gave me an intelligent solution to a problem I once had. He's very clever, probably the smartest person I know, to be honest. I don't know what his IQ is, but it's very high.

● how you know him or her

I've known Chris since we went to high school together. We were in the same class together and studied all the same subjects and became close friends during that time, you know, always playing together and sometimes just hanging out.

● what he or she did

When I was trying to figure out which university and course I wanted to do there were so many options, I just didn't have a clue[①], completely clueless you might say. We were having coffee one day and I explained to him that I really couldn't decide what to do or where to go and he came up with a great idea. Basically to create a weighted matrix with all the pros and cons of each course and each uni. From that, whichever one gets the highest score is the course I go to.

①毫无头绪，一点也不懂

● and explain why you think he or she is clever.

I wouldn't have thought of that in a million years.[②] The idea was so simple and elegant, that it was just a beautiful solution. This is why I think he's so clever, he is able to think outside the box[③] so well, and comes up with[④] very simplistic solutions to complicated problems. I do love him to bits[⑤], but I sometimes feel a bit stupid when I'm talking with him, just because I wish I could think like him. I'm very glad he's my friend, as I always learn something new from him, even if it's just a way of thinking.

②我永远也想不到这个主意。
③打破常规
④提出
⑤到不可收拾的地步

飞机发烧友——我的好友 Tony

124

真题演练

Describe a person who likes to travel by plane.

You should say:
- who the person is
- how you know him/her
- where this person travels to
- and explain why this person likes to travel by plane.

考官范文

● **who the person is**

The person I'm going to talk about today is my friend, Tony. He's a real plane nut[①]. It's not just that he enjoys flying he really loves planes of all descriptions. I'm sure you heard of a train spotter[②], well he's an avid plane spotter.

①狂热的人
②爱好搜集火车号码的人

● **how you know him/her**

I've known Tony for years, ever since we were at high school together. That must be around 6 or 7 years now. We were both interested in history and became fast friends[③] and stayed in touch even though we ended up going to different universities.

③挚友

● **where this person travels to**

He now has a job with an international company called Reuters that takes him all over the world. He's a software programmer that specialises in stocks, so he helps different departments with their coding. I know last week he went to India and a few weeks before that he was in America.

● **and explain why this person likes to travel by plane.**

The main reason why he likes planes is that his father is a pilot for Air China, so he's always grown up around planes. He got his fixed wing license[④] last year and we sometimes hop over to different cities around China for a weekend, which is fantastic. But the other reason is that he just likes aeronautics[⑤]. He tries to fly in as many different planes as he can when he travels. When the A380 came into service, he was one of the first passengers. When I saw him afterwards, he was over the moon[⑥] with the trip, just ecstatic[⑦]. I don't think I'd ever seen him that happy before.

④固定翼飞机驾照
⑤航空学
⑥欣喜若狂
⑦欣喜若狂的

Anyway, that's the story about my friend who's a plane buff[8].

⑧飞机迷

刚搬来不久的邻居兼好友——李燕

125

真题演练

Describe a person that just moved home.

You should say:
- who this person was
- when he/she moved
- what he/she brought
- and explain why he/she moved.

Describe a new friend you've made recently.

You should say:
- who the person is
- how you met this person
- what kind of person he/she is
- and explain why you made friends with this person.

考官范文

- **who this/the person is/was/how you met this person**

The person I'd like to talk about is my new neighbour, Li Yan. I met her as she was moving in next door with an unenviable amount of boxes. The moving company came with 2 trucks full of her belongings.

- **when he/she moved**

This must have been about 6 months ago now, what are we now, September, so yes, 6 months. She moved in in March, just after the Spring Festival here. I remember that it was quite cold that day, but bright, sunny and without a cloud in the sky.

- **what kind of person he/she is**

Even though she seemed a bit stressed, who can blame her, moving is always a tense time, she was also very friendly and outgoing. We had a little chat when she arrived and we got on instantly. It was like meeting my long lost[①] sister, and after about 5 minutes I felt that I'd known her forever.

①遗失已久的

- **what he/she brought**

I had some free time that morning, so I helped her get some of her stuff organised and put away. Wow, I don't think I've ever seen so much stuff,

the boxes just kept coming. They seemed to go on forever. Clothes, niknaks[②] and the shoes, oh my goodness the shoes! And before you ask, yes I'm really happy to say that she's my size! They're just so beautiful.

②英国零食

- and explain why he/she moved/why you made friends with this person.

I invited her over that evening to have dinner with my parents and I and found out that she had just got a new job and had moved from Harbin and was trying to get acclimatised to[③] the area before she started. She was very happy to meet some new neighbours and someone who was similar to her in age. I'm only 5 years younger than her. I think that she's enjoying her job and I'm very glad she moved, she's one of my best friends now; we just think alike, you know, we're like two peas in a pod[④]. And, yes, I borrow her shoes a lot!!

③适应

④非常相像，一模一样

拓展练习

1. Describe a person who you met before and you want to know more about.

You should say:
- who this person is
- when and where you met
- what you did or talked about
- and explain why you would like to know more about this person.

2. Describe an interesting neighbour.

You should say:
- who this person is
- how you know this person
- what this person likes to do
- and explain why you think this neighbour is interesting.

篮球队好队长孙伟男

126

真题演练

Describe a friend who you think is a good leader.

You should say:
- who this friend is
- how you first met this person
- how other people behave towards him or her
- and explain why you think he/she is a good leader.

Describe a group you like to take part in.

You should say:
- what this group is
- how you know this group

- who the team members are
- and explain why you like to take part in it.

考官范文

- **who this friend is/what this group is**

I'm going to talk about my university basketball team and in particular the captain, my friend, Sun Wei Nan. His English name is Coby, you know, after the famous American player.

- **how you first met this person/how you know this group**

When I started at my university, I immediately signed up for the basketball as well as badminton. I got to know everyone in the team on our first training day. We all got together and played for a while, until Coby called us over for a huddle. He asked us to change positions a little bit and play again. It was to see if we played better together in different areas.

- **who the team members are/how other people behave towards him or her**

Most of the team are my classmates too, with a couple being in my dorm. Coby is a year above us in the course, even though it's the same one as mine so it's fairly easy to get together. As I said, he's the captain and he's also our best player so the rest of the team know to treat him with respect and some of them almost revere him because of his natural skill and ability.

- **and explain why you think he/she is a good leader/why you like to take part in it.**

He never lets it go to his head[①] though, he's always very down to earth[②]. I think that and his calmness even if we're under pressure is why he makes such a great captain and leader. It's also one of the main reasons why I like playing in this team. It's going to be a shame when he leaves after he graduates.

①让荣誉冲昏头脑
②脚踏实地的

三好学生王宇

127

真题演练

Describe an intelligent person you know.

You should say:
- who this person is
- when and where you first met him/her
- what kind of person he/she is
- and explain why you think this person is intelligent.

Describe a good student.

You should say:
- who he/she was
- when you studied together
- what relationship you had with this person
- and explain why you think he or she was (or is) a good student.

考官范文

- **who this person is/who he/she was**

I'd like to talk about my classmate, Wang Yu. Michaela is her English name. We are studying International Business Management together at university.

- **when and where you first met him/her**

I first met her in our foundation year[①]. We were not only classmates, but also dorm mates. I distinctly remember it because when we first got to uni she came over to me to ask how to get to our dorm building, I didn't entirely know either, so we ended up finding it together, and then discovered we were looking for the same room. It made us fast friends, we're just like two peas in a pod[②], real soul mates.

①预科
②形影不离

- **what kind of person he/she is**

She is an incredibly intelligent girl. I don't know what her IQ is, but it's certainly very high. It doesn't make her arrogant though, she's probably the sweetest, kindest and meekest person I've ever met, but she also has a quiet, inner confidence that exudes from every pore[③].

③浑身散发出一种自信

- **when you studied together**

We study with each other every day both in class and out, at the library and such. We are now in our second year together and have decided to go on to study a Masters together too.

- **what relationship you had with this person**

As I said earlier, we became best friends soon after we first met and, to be honest if she were a boy I would definitely date her, him. I believe we are true soul mates, I help her when I can, but to be honest she helps me most of the time, not only with our studies but also in life. She's always there if I need someone to talk to.

- **and explain why you think this person is intelligent/why you think he or she was (or is) a good student.**

I think she is a wonderful and intelligent student mainly because she

picks things up so quickly④. I'm not sure how she does it, but she can just listen to something once, and she just gets it. It mostly takes me a lot longer than her to understand some of the concepts, but she helps me and explains them in a simple and easy way that I can then grasp. I think this, above all else, makes her an intelligent person and not only a great student but also a great teacher.

④她学东西很快

拓展练习

Describe a teenager who you know.

You should say:
- how and where you met him or her
- what you and this person do together
- what kind of person he or she is
- and explain how you feel about him or her.

一个跟我道过歉的同学

128

真题演练

Describe a person who has apologised to you.

You should say:
- who the person is
- what kind of person he is
- what the person did
- and explain why the person apologised to you.

考官范文

- **who the person is**

The story I will tell you about today when someone apologised to me actually only happened last week. It was one of my classmates at university that I've known for the past two years.

- **what kind of person he/she is**

She's a really kind and genuine person and always willing to help others. Normally, she's completely on the ball① which is why I was so surprised when she let me down②.

①机灵的，机警的；留心
②让某人失望

- **what the person did**

Basically, as we preparing for this test she asked if she could borrow my books as she had left hers at home and said that she only needed it for a day and would return them quickly. As she has always been reliable

before I saw no problem and immediately said 'Of course'.

- **and explain why the person apologised to you.**

The following day came and we met up. I realised something was up[③] when I first saw her and as she seemed a bit down in the dumps[④]. I asked what was wrong and she told me that she had lost my books. She'd left them in a taxi together with her rucksack[⑤]. She apologised for about half an hour! I was upset, of course, but pragmatic about the whole thing. Because I know what she's like and didn't do it on purpose, I couldn't help but forgive her immediately. Just the mortified look on her face[⑥], made me think that she has beaten herself up[⑦] enough already and I couldn't let her feel any worse. A couple of days ago she bought me some new books anyway. It wasn't really necessary, but it was nice of her to do it and I'd lend them to her again in a heartbeat[⑧]. So, that's my apology story.

③预感发生了什么
④垂头丧气，愁眉苦脸
⑤双肩包
⑥她一副羞愧的表情
⑦使精疲力竭
⑧立刻，马上

一对拥有幸福婚姻的夫妻——王宇的爸妈

129

真题演练

Describe a couple who have a happy marriage.

You should say:
- who they are
- how you knew them
- what they usually do together
- and explain how you feel about their marriage.

Describe two people you know from the same family.

You should say:
- who these two people are
- how much these two people have similar personalities (characters)
- how much they look similar
- and explain how (how well) the two people get along with each other.

考官范文

- **who they are/who these two people are/how you knew them**

The people I'd like to talk about today are my classmate's parents. Wang Yu is actually now a really good friend of mine as we have been in uni together for the last 2 years and spent a lot of time outside university together too.

- **how much these two people have similar personalities (characters)/how much they look similar**

I must say I really like her parents, adore them actually. They're really

cool. Not only have they got very similar characters they also look almost exactly the same. I swear, if you put her father in a dress and a wig[①] and her mother in a suit and cut her hair, I wouldn't know the difference! If I didn't know better I'd think they were twins.

①假发

- **what they usually do together**

As far I know, they do virtually everything together, but they do have a couple of hobbies that are separate, which I think is a good thing. No matter how much people love each other, I think it's important to have a little bit of your own space.

- **and explain how (how well) the two people get along with each other/how you feel about their marriage.**

From what I know, and Wang Yu has told me they get on with each other as well as when they first met and got married. You should see the love in their eyes when they look at each other, it's just transcendent[②]. I've never seen anything like it and I'm both envious and hopeful at the same time. I really hope that I can find a man to love like that, I'd be on cloud nine[③] for the rest of my life, then maybe someone would be jealous of me too!

②超然的
③沉浸在幸福之中

讨厌却不得不友好对待的人——我的话痨室友

130

真题演练

Describe a talkative person you know.

You should say:
- who this person is
- how you know him/her
- what he/she talks about
- and explain how you feel about this person.

Describe a person you dislike but have to be friendly with.

You should say:
- who the person is
- why you dislike him or her
- and explain why you have to be friendly to.

考官范文

- **who the/this person is/how you know him/her**

I'd like to talk about someone I know, who I don't particularly like, that just talks too much. This person is one of my university classmates on my

business course.

- **what he/she talks about**

During class whenever he answers a question or speaks in a group session, he just never seems to want to finish. It doesn't really matter what the subject is, he just thinks he knows more than anyone else and that everyone should shut up and listen to him.

- **why you dislike him or her**

Whenever someone else wants to speak and add something to the conversation he interrupts them and speaks so loudly that everyone feels uncomfortable and, certainly in my case, frustrated, not to mention, angry. I think it's mainly that he just doesn't seem to care about anyone other than himself and really enjoys the sound of his own voice. I can't believe that he knows everything about everything[①] and just wish that he could use his body as it was designed, you know, two ears and one mouth[②]. I was always taught to try and listen to others' point of view as they will think differently to you and you can always learn from another person's perspective.

①无所不知
②指少说话多听建议

- **and explain how you feel about this person/why you have to be friendly to him/her.**

Unfortunately, I have to be nice to him as he's not only my classmate, but also my dorm mate. So, not only do I spend most of the day with him, but I have to spend the nights with him too. Honestly, it's a bit of a nightmare, but my parents tell me to bit my tongue[③] and deal with[④] it. I need to play the cards I'm dealt with[⑤] I guess, I've heard it builds character[⑥]. It's only for another year and then I graduate, so I'll be very happy when that happens.

③保持缄默，不做声
④克服
⑤面对现实，积极处理
⑥塑造性格

有趣的大学英语老师

131

真题演练

Describe an interesting person you enjoy talking with.

You should say:
- who this person is
- how you knew him or her
- what you talk about together
- and explain why you think he/she is interesting.

Describe an interesting person you met recently.

You should say:
- what sort of person he/she is
- how you first met him/her
- what he/she does for living
- and explain why you think he/she is interesting.

考官范文

who this person is/how you knew him or her/how you first met him/her

I want to talk about an interesting person that I met recently and really enjoy talking to, and that's my new English teacher at my uni. I've recently started the foundation year and we're mostly learning English and IELTS, which is why I'm here today doing this test.

what sort of person he/she is

He's an Englishman from London and he's had a truly fascinating life. It gives him an authoritative and knowledgeable air[①]. He's not a quiet man and quite extroverted at times, but he's very friendly and will always make time to answer questions no matter how silly or mundane[②]. I think he's well suited to his job.

①一种权威且博学的气质
②单调的，无趣的

what you talk about together/what he/she does for living

As my teacher we mostly talk about English and the IELTS exam, but occasionally he shares some of his experiences working and travelling around the world. He sometimes recounts these in class to which is when I generally grab him to learn more. Listening to his stories I've learnt a lot about how to look at the world with new eyes and understand a little more about myself.

and explain why you think he/she is interesting.

He's a truly fascinating man having lived and worked in over a dozen countries and has lived and worked in China for more than a decade. He has ideas that I would never dream of[③] and has given me advice on my relationship that just made sense, and really helped me. Where he gets all this from I don't know, but I'm really glad that I can call him friend as well as teacher.

③从未想到

拓展练习

Describe an interesting person from another country you know or have heard of.

You should say:
- who this person is
- how you got to know this person

- what kind of person he or she is
- and explain why you think he or she is interesting.

令人尊敬的名人——中国导演宁浩

132

真题演练

Describe an old person you know who you respect.

You should say:
- who the person is
- how you know this person
- how long you have known this person
- and explain why you respect this person.

Describe a famous person who is important to your country.

You should say:
- who this person is
- how this person became famous
- what sort of life he/she had before he/she became famous
- and explain why this person is important to your country.

考官范文

- **who the/this person is**

I would like to describe a friend of mine, well, more of an acquaintance actually, that is a famous film director. Ning Hao is his name. He's a middle aged man that has made quite a few films so far in his career and graduated from BFA, you know, Beijing Film Academy.

- **how you know this person/how long you have known this person**

I have only known this person for a short time. I first met him on a film set[①] a few years ago when he was filming his movie[②], 'Crazy Stone' is the English name. We stayed in touch after that and I have also just finished a little bit of filming as an extra[③] on his new movie 'Crazy Alien' in Qingdao.

①在片场
②拍摄电影
③临时演员

- **how this person became famous/what sort of life he/she had before he/she became famous**

I'm not entirely sure how he initially became famous, but from what I know after the first couple of movies he made he became very popular because of the quality of his movies along with his unique style of filming, editing and his humorous ideas.

- **and explain why this person is important to your country/why you respect this person.**

The reason why I like and respect him is that he is pushing the boundaries of④ films and ideas that, I believe, are not only opening the ideas of the Chinese people that watch his movies, but also making the westerners, and particularly those in Hollywood, realise that China can also make some great movies. This is important for our country, as I believe people will understand and respect us more and know that we also have wonderful storytellers and filmmakers.

④打破……的壁垒

拓展练习

1. Describe a famous person in your country who has influenced you.

You should say:
- who the person is (was)
- how you came into contact with this person
- how this person has influenced you and why
- and explain whether this person has also influenced other people.

2. Describe a person who can do well in work.

You should say:
- who this person is
- how you knew this person
- what kinds of work this person does
- and explain why this person can do well.

新闻人物——阿里巴巴总裁马云

133

真题演练

Describe a person you know that has made a contribution to the society.

You should say:
- who this person is
- how you know this person
- what contribution he/she made
- and explain how you felt about this person.

Describe a person in the news that you would like to meet.

You should say:
- who he/she is
- how you learnt about him/her
- what the news was about
- and explain why you want to meet him/her.

考官范文

● **who this person is/who he/she is**

The person I would like to talk about regarding this topic is Mr. Jack Ma. He's the CEO and Chairman of the Alibaba group, a relative nobody[①] 10 years ago.

①无名小卒

● **how you know this person/how you learnt about him/her**

I learnt about him primarily from the news and then saw some interviews where he was the guest. He's also done some speeches that I went to at various universities around China.

● **what contribution he/she made/what the news was about**

Some of what I've seen and heard about him makes me think that he's changed the face of business in China. He started off as a teacher, but is now in charge of one of the biggest companies, not only in China but also in the world. He developed the 11/11 idea and other companies have now jumped on the bandwagon[②] to follow him. His dedication and vision have been inspirational[③] to many people, both rich and poor, to let them know that with determination, hard work and a little luck you don't have to come from a rich and privileged family[④] in order to be able to succeed.

②跟风，随大流
③鼓舞人心的
④一个富裕和有特权的家庭

● **and explain how you felt about this person/why you want to meet him/her.**

I have already seen him live at the speeches I spoke of earlier, but I was never able to meet him in person. I would really love to, and hope I get the opportunity in the future. I just have so many questions for him; to find out the details of how he started and get some advice from him rather than just the general stuff that has been reported. He, in many ways, is my idol and I would very much like to follow in his footsteps[⑤] and hope that one day, maybe, I could work with him and learn directly from the master.

⑤以他为榜样

拓展练习

Describe a famous person (that you like).

You should say:
- who he/she is
- how you know him/her
- what makes him/her famous
- and explain why you admire him/her.

有趣的喜剧演员——成龙

134

真题演练

Describe a person who has an interesting or important job.

You should say:
- who the person is
- where the person works
- what the person does
- and explain why you think the person's job is interesting or important.

Describe a comic actor/cartoon character who is popular in your country.

You should say:
- who the actor/character is
- how you know him/her
- what kind of person he/she is
- and explain why he/she is popular in your country.

考官范文

- **who the person is/who the actor/character is**

For me, this topic is really easy and when I saw it I instantly knew who I was going to talk about. Jackie Chan, definitely. He's probably one of the most famous actors in China, certainly in recent history and has done both serious and comic roles for years both here and in Hollywood.

- **where the person works/what the person does**

He lives, most of the time, in Beijing I believe but is still making movies and advertisements all over the world. I think his most recent film was partly made in India. 'Kung Fu Yoga' is what it's called.

- **how you know him/her/what kind of person he/she is**

I've seen probably all of his movies, even the old ones from the 70's and 80's although I've only seen him once in real life, but have never actually met him. I was in the audience of a TV show that he was being interviewed on. He seemed very kind and gentle during the interview but also very funny. Some of his answers showed a great intelligence and comic wit[①] that, to be honest, I didn't know he had up to that point.

①喜剧天赋

- **and explain why you think the person's job is interesting or important/ why he/she is popular in your country.**

I think the reason why he's not only interesting but also important is that he's seen so much of both the East and the West he has become an

unofficial ambassador between the two. He has entertained people all over the world, and I know has more fans than you can shake a stick at[2] and this makes me think that he is not only important as an actor but also as a link between peoples of the world.

②粉丝多得不可胜数

拓展练习

Describe a famous person (that you like).

You should say:
- who he/she is
- how you know him/her
- what makes him/her famous
- and explain why you admire him/her.

令人崇拜的运动员——贝克·汉姆

135

真题演练

Describe a sportsperson who played well in the match.

You should say:
- who the person was
- what the match was
- when and where the person played
- and explain why you think the person played well in the match.

Describe a person/leader (such as sportsmen, businessmen, politicians) you admire.

You should say:
- who the person is
- how you know the person
- what the person does
- and explain why you admire this person.

考官范文

- **who the person is/was/how you know the person**

I'd like to describe a sportsman that I think is just a wonderful overall person and worth my admiration is a footballer called David Beckham. I've never actually met him in person, but have seen him play football for a variety of clubs as well as the England football team in the past.

- **what the match was/what the person does**

He used to be the captain of the England team and played many glorious matches, but in China I think he's more famous for playing for Manchester United. More recently he's become a kind of ambassador for the sport

worldwide and has travelled all over the world promoting football.

- **when and where the person played**

I'm not really a football fan and I haven't avidly followed his career; I just know that he's a natural footballer and leader, which is probably why he was chosen for such an important role. I also know that he played for years, like 20 I think.

- **and explain why you think the person played well in the match/why you admire this person.**

From what I know, he's a very skillful crosser① and is famous for his free kicks②; lots of teams that played against him were very worried about that. But I think the thing that makes him not only a great footballer but also a great individual is his ability to remain calm at all times, whether he's winning or losing and encourage or motivate his team mates before, during and after the match. He always played with respect to both his teammates and his opponents which, in my opinion, makes him a great player both on and off the pitch③ and someone worth respecting and looking up to.

①横传
②任意球
③球场内外

拓展练习

Describe a famous person (still living), not from your country, who you would like to meet.

You should say:
- where this person comes from
- how you first knew this person
- why this person is famous
- and explain why you would like to meet this person.

一个有创造力的伟大音乐家——Freddie Mercury

136

真题演练

Describe a creative inventor or musician.

You should say:
- who this person is
- what this person does
- how you know this person
- and explain why you think this person is creative.

Describe a person you admire.

You should say:
- who this person is
- how you know this person

- what things this person do
- and explain why you admire this person.

考官范文

- **who this person is**

The person I would like to talk about is the singer Freddie Mercury. He's dead now, and has been for a while, but he was a great talent in the music industry and many musicians admire and revere him even now.

- **what this person does/what things this person do**

He was the lead singer of a group called Queen back in the 70's and 80's and he not only sang the songs but also wrote a lot of them. From the interviews I've seen with him, he seemed quite shy and reserved① off stage, but on stage, wow, he was absolutely amazing. He was one of the pioneers of the music video along with Madonna and Michael Jackson.

①拘谨的

- **how you know this person**

I was introduced to his music by my father. Dad always played, and still plays this in the car and I've listened to it since I was a baby, so, I've grown up with it. When I was more of an adolescent and then into my teenage years I was ridiculed a little bit for my strange taste in music, but I continued to listen to him and Queen, of course, with my dad, in secret as it were.

- **and explain why you think this person is creative/why you admire this person.**

As to why I admire, even maybe idolise this person and think he's so talented, well, it was primarily because of his voice and writing talent, but then I realised how hard he worked and how he shaped modern music. He worked incredibly hard and thought so far out of the box②; he probably couldn't see it anymore. His dedication, imagination and tenacity is an example to us all, and I believe if I have even a fraction of his talent, I'll be a great musician as well.

②打破思维定势

拓展练习

Describe a creative person that you admire.

You should say:
- who this person is
- how you know this person
- what creative things this person likes to do
- and explain why you admire this person.

会说二外的名人——George Bush

137

真题演练

Describe a person who can use/speak a second language.

You should say:
- who this person is
- what language this person can use
- how often this person uses this language
- and explain why this person can master this language.

Describe a person in the news that you would like to meet.

You should say:
- who the person is
- why he/she is in the news
- why you would like to meet this person
- and explain what you would say to him/her.

考官范文

- **who the/this person is**

It might be a bit strange, but I'd like to talk about George Bush. Not the one that was the US president a few years ago, that's George W. Bush, but his father, who was Vice President with Ronald Reagan was President, although he too, became President later. I'm sorry but I don't know the year.

- **why he/she is in the news**

Obviously being President he was plastered[①] all of the world stage and from what I can remember being told, wasn't a bad president but, what is a little less known is that he was the US Ambassador to China before he became the US VP.

①报道、照片等醒目刊载的

- **what language this person can use/how often this person uses this language**

What surprised me, and the reason why I chose him for this topic, is that he is fluent in Mandarin. I'm sure that he probably rarely uses it these days, but used it when he lived in China a lot and I assume that's where he learnt it.

- **and explain why this person can master this language.**

As I said earlier, he was the US Ambassador in China and I believe this is probably the reason why he learnt the language. I'm not sure exactly how good it is, but having spent at least 4 years here learning, I'm sure it's pretty good. I've always been told it's fluent.

● **why you would like to meet this person/what you would say to him/her.**

I'd really like to meet him to ask how he found learning our language and whether it gave him any particular insights into② our culture and whether that influenced his dealings with China when he was Vice President and then President. I think it would be fascinating especially if I could ask him in Chinese.

②赋予他对……的一些特殊见解

拓展练习

Describe a famous person (still living), not from your country, who you would like to meet.

You should say:
- where this person comes from
- how you first knew this person
- why this person is famous
- and explain why you would like to meet this person.

儿时偶像蝙蝠侠

138

真题演练

Describe a character in a TV program or in a film you know.

You should say:
- who the character was
- what the character looked like
- what the character did in the TV program or film
- and explain what influence this character had on you.

Describe a character from a story you read or heard in your childhood.

You should say:
- who the character was
- when you read or heard this story
- what the character looked like
- and explain what influence this character had on you.

考官范文

● **who the character was/what the character looked like**

I'd like to reveal to you my childhood hero, Batman. Not the one from all the recent movies, but the old one from the 70's. Actually, Adam West recently died, which is very sad as I remember how almost goofy he looked. He wore really cheesy① outfits together with his side-kick② Robin.

①时髦的
②助手

● **when you heard or read this story**

It was my dad that introduced him, or should I say, the character to me when I was very young. He started by reading me his comic books. Some

were from DC and others were Marvel. I always preferred the DC ones; they were always a little bit darker.

- **what the character did in the TV program or film**

As a superhero he was always fighting crime, but also had a real life persona[③] as Bruce Wayne a billionaire in Gotham, which is based on New York City in America. He was always helped by his partner Robin. I forget now what his name was, but they both wore really bright costumes and always looked funny. Needless to say, they always won the fights and saved the day[④] and I will always remember the 'Pow' and 'Boof' words that came onto the screen during the fight scenes.

③人物，角色
④化险为夷

- **and explain what influence this character had on you.**

This character had a profound effect on me as a child during my youth. I think the thing that I learnt the most was that you should always fight for what you believe in, rely on your instinct as well as your friends and above all never give up no matter if the odds are stacked against you[⑤]. I have taken this to heart[⑥], especially in my studies. If I have trouble figuring something out, I will always stick at it and maybe ask for help if I can't initially figure it out. That's why Batman will always be my hero, apart from my dad of course!

⑤指胜算几率不大
⑥将此铭记于心

拓展练习

1. Describe a person you liked in your childhood.

You should say:
- who the person was
- what you did together
- why you liked this person
- and explain why you still remember this person.

2. Describe a story you heard in your childhood.

You should say:
- who told you the story
- when you heard it
- what it was about
- and explain how you felt when you heard this story.

最喜欢的野生动物——小老虎

139

真题演练

Describe a time you were really close to a wild animal.

You should say:
- what it looks like

- where you can see it
- what it likes to eat or do
- and explain how you felt about it.

Describe an interesting wild animal from your country you like best.

You should say:
- where you learnt about this animal
- what it looks like
- where it lives (where you saw it)
- and explain why you like this interesting animal.

考官范文

- **what it looks like**

The animal I would like to talk about is a tiger or, more specifically, a tiger cub. It was only a few weeks old and just looked adorable, you know, it was just so small, cute and cuddly[①] I could hardly keep my eyes off[②] it.

①令人想拥抱的
②移不开眼

- **where you learnt about this animal/what it likes to eat or do**

I learnt about tigers in school and from books like 'The Jungle Book' as well as some documentaries[③] on TV. The BBC has some great programs on animals and watching tigers hunt and live in the wild is fascinating to me. They say the lion is king of the jungle, but I believe that it's the tiger.

③纪录片

- **where you can see it/where it lives (where you saw it)**

I saw this cub when I went to the tiger reserve in Harbin a couple of years ago in September. It was just after the birthing season[④] there, which is why there were so many cubs around. This reserve is one of the biggest in the world for tigers and it's basically the opposite of a zoo. What I mean is that we walk round in an enclosed environment[⑤] while the tigers can run free. You can even feed them live ducks and chickens if you want to.

④生育的季节
⑤在一个封闭的环境下

- **and explain why you like this interesting animal/how you felt about it.**

At the end of the tour we were able to hold some tiger cubs and have a picture taken with them. From just watching the adults run around and feed and appreciating the size and power of these big cats to being able to hold the little orange and black ball of fur was an incredible contradiction. This cute, docile[⑥] little cat will grow into a powerful killer that could claw my arm off without a second thought[⑦], but the grace that goes with that power is what truly attracts me to them.

⑥温顺的
⑦毫不犹豫

3 地点类

考生版

我的房间

140

关于“房间”这道题，细心的考生会发现这和 Part 1 中“住宿（Accommodation）”话题中的“描述你的房间（Describe your room）”很像。但 Part 2 的回答内容不能再像 Part 1 那样只是简单的几句话，我们可以通过描述我们喜欢在房间做什么事情，为什么喜欢做这些事情来扩展回答内容。注意，关于房间的描述，一定不要简单地说“床在书桌的左边”。尽可能不要用流水账去写房间的结构。

真题演练

Describe a room where you want to spend a lot of time.

You should say:
- what it is
- what it is like
- what you do in it
- and explain why you like using it.

考生范文

Opening Sentences: I've been living in my house for almost ten years. It's such a large house with three bedrooms, one living room and one study, among which I would say my bedroom is the one I like to stay for most of the time.

Background: I have to say it's pretty cosy and spacious, about 30 square metres or so, making it welcoming to invite friends round. As you walk in, you will find it a typical girl's room with lavender walls, cream carpets and pink curtains. My king size bed is on the right side, with soft pillows and duvet on it, as well as some adorable stuffed animals. At either side of the bed is a bedside table for a lamp and some small gadgets. On the other side of the room, there's a desk with several drawers, where I usually place my laptop. Against the wall is a vanity dresser with a mirror that I put most of my hair stuff and makeups on. On top of it is a TV and a DVD player. At the end of the room would be the best part—a

walk-in closet!

Reasons: The first reason why I like to stay in my bedroom would be that I can fully enjoy my privacy there. After one day of tiring work, I can just put on my pajamas, jump into my bed, lie down to watch a bit of TV or do some light reading. It's a place where I can totally be myself, do whatever I want and free myself from my daily routine. Another reason is that it's a lot of fun staying in my personal space. I never get bored even if staying there for a whole day. Either trying new eye shadow in front of the mirror or playing the DVD of concert of my favourite artist could be enjoyable enough to make it a great day.

Conclusion: I guess that's why sometimes I prefer to stay in my room even though I've got the chance of hanging out with my friends. Nowhere is more comfortable than here. I can safely say it has been part of my life.

考官点评

At nearly 400 words, this answer is too long for 2 minutes. Probably nearer 3. Therefore the examiner will stop at the 2-minute mark.

Overall, a good answer. The vocabulary contains some good 'less common' words, but nothing really in the way of 'collocations', 'idiomatic' language or 'paraphrasing'. Some of the words are also inappropriate, for example, 'cosy and spacious' don't go together as 'cosy' normally means small whereas 'spacious' is the opposite. 'Comfortable' might be a better choice.

With regards to the Grammar, there are a few small errors: 'After one day of tiring work...' should be 'After a day of tiring work...', '...even if staying there for a whole day.' should change to '...even if I stay there for the whole day.' and '...DVD of concert of my favourite...' should be '...DVD of a concert of my favourite...'. Lastly, '...more comfortable than here.' should change to '...more comfortable than there.'.

拓展练习

1. Describe a room you ever lived in when you were a child.

You should say:
- what it looked like
- what was in it
- what you did in the room
- and explain what you liked about the room.

2. Describe a place you want to live in where you do not work or study.

You should say:
- where it is
- what you want to do there

- what there are in the place
- and explain why you want to live there.

五月天咖啡馆

141

对于 Part 2 的地点题，建议大家积累一些有背景的地点素材，比如“明星开的饭店”“网红都喜欢去的图书馆”。这样在背景（Background）上我们还可以适度地展开话题，增加内容的趣味性。如果只是随便说一个咖啡厅，内容就会变得相对枯燥一些。接下来以五月天的“迷妹们”都不会错过的“StayReal”咖啡厅为例，我们来看看怎么对付“描述一家你喜欢的咖啡厅”这道题。

真题演练

Describe your favourite café/restaurant.

You should say:
- where it is
- what it looks like
- what kinds of services it provided
- and explain why you like it.

考生范文

Opening Sentence: As a big fan of Mayday, I would definitely say that my favourite café is StayReal.

Background: The StayReal is well known for its founder, Ashin—one of the most popular vocals in a rock band, Mayday. It has two part, a fashionable brand STAYREAL, and a StayReal café. The name of the café—StayReal mainly means that people should stick to their original intentions and never give up their dreams, just like what Ashin always believe in. Every day, it attracts many fans, and currently, StayReal has settled in many cities of China.

Reasons: I first went there on the opening day in Parc Central, Guangzhou. It attracted so many fans, and I waited in line for almost 2 hours. But it didn't make any difference to my love of this café. Firstly, the vintage design of the shop is amazing. Every shop has a yellow old bus called Dream Bus. And all the facilities are yellow and brown, which make this vintage house look warm and comfortable. Secondly, the coffee there is scrumptious and good-looking. It also provides many different kinds of food such as muffin, fruit tea and cheese cake. Even though, the price there is a little bit high, it really has the delicious food. You can stay there whenever you want and it also has free Wi-Fi for customers to use. Thirdly, you can also buy some interesting stuff there such as cups, notebooks and clothes. If you are also the fan of Mayday, you could also find out some stuff related to this awesome band. Last but not least, you can take

photos there even if you don't buy anything stuff. It is open to everyone who loves it.

Conclusion: So it is a little expensive, but it won't decrease the enthusiasm of the fans. And I will always go there to have a cup of coffee and enjoy my leisure time.

考官点评

Overall, it's a good answer. With regards to the vocabulary, there are some good 'less common' words but these are not always used correctly. For example, 'is scrumptious and good-looking' can't really be used to describe coffee, 'looks good and tastes delicious' would be better here and 'has settled in many cities of China' could change to '...is established in many...'. There also isn't much in the way of 'idiomatic' language or paraphrasing.

Grammatically, it is again good with only a few mistakes. For example, '...has two part...' should be '...has two parts...' and '...muffin, fruit tea and cheese cake' needs to add 's' to each '...muffins, fruit teas and cheese cakes...'. This still should be good enough to get the higher scores.

拓展练习

1. Describe a café you know in your city.

You should say:
- how often you go there
- what kind of food they serve there (or, what service they provide)
- who you usually go there with
- and explain why you like to eat at this place/why you choose to eat at this place.

2. Describe a café you often go to.

You should say:
- where it is
- what you do there
- how often you go there
- and explain what is special about it.

3. Describe a café which you have been to.

You should say:
- where it was
- what it looked like
- what kind of services are provided
- and explain why you like there.

美国大沼泽国家公园

142

“公园或花园”这个话题可以说是Part 2地点题中的“元老”，但同时也是十分难搞的题目之一。因为多数考生会觉得说起公园，把公园里面的设施大概介绍一下，再说一下自己很喜欢去公园玩的原因，也就没什么别的可说了。因此，提醒大家在选择要谈论的公园时，尽可能选择一些比较著名的大公园。这样，可以介绍的内容就会有很多。另外，还有一点需要考生注意，即“park/garden”和“theme park”的区别：前者侧重于自然景观、是能供人散步、欣赏或参观的公园，而后者为主题乐园，侧重人文景观、艺术表演及娱乐体验。所以大家在选择谈论哪个公园时，一定要看清题目要求。此外，公园是可以和“休闲放松的景点”这一话题进行适当合并的哦！

真题演练

Describe a park/garden you visited and liked/that impressed you.

You should say:
- where it was
- what it looked like
- what people did there
- and explain why you like to visit there.

考生范文

Opening Sentence: The park that I would like to talk about is a well-known wetland park in the United States called Everglades National Park.

Background: It is located in South Florida and consists of 1.5 million areas of wetland. Since it is a huge park, my mom had made a long-time plan before she brought me to travel in America in 2010. After I finished the college entrance exam, our family flew to the Florida in America. There are three entrances to Everglades National park, and each of the entrance is located in the totally different area of the park. So once you decide the area that you want to visit, you have to go to the right entrance. Otherwise, you may take more than 3 hours to correct your mistake.

Reasons: As for why it is impressed, first, there is only one high way when you drove into the park and the sceneries were amazing. Sometimes, you could see the bush, and sometimes, you can see the endless plain. But you will never want to get off the car because there are too many mosquitos. Second, the park provided many important habitats for the endangered species such as Crocodile. I found many crocodiles when I visited this park but I was afraid of getting close to them. The guide told us that they wouldn't hurt people because these crocodiles could find enough food from the natural environment. I suddenly realised how important to protect the ecological balance because nature is the

home of animals. And then, we took a boat tour to the middle of the wetland, and I saw turtles swimming in the water. The tour guide told us the dolphins would sometimes appear but I was not so lucky to see these cute animals.

Conclusion: Even though, we spent the whole day in this awesome place, we still couldn't visit all scenic spots and there are many other different activities in it. I would recommend this place to all of my friends and ask them to do the travel guides at first.

考官点评

Firstly, at over 340 words, it's a little long for 2 minutes, so there may not be time for the Conclusion to be said.

Overall, a good answer. There are some good 'less common' words, 'endangered' and 'ecological' for example, but not much in the way of 'idiomatic' language or 'collocations' which means that it wouldn't be good enough for the top scores. The only collocation was 'long-time'; that should have been 'long-term'.

Grammatically, there are too many errors to get into the top scores, such as '...to the Florida in America' rather than '...to Florida in America', '...each of the entrance is located...' could change to '...each entrance is located...' or maybe '...each of the entrances is located...'. Other errors include: '...why it is impressed...' should be '...why it is impressive...', '...never want to get off the car...' needs to change to '...never want to get out of the car...' and '...important to protect the ecological...' should be '...important protecting the ecological...' to name some.

拓展练习

1. Describe a garden/park you visited.

You should say:
- where it is and when you visited it
- what kind it is
- what people can do there
- and explain how you felt about this garden.

2. Describe a place where you relaxed.

You should say:
- where the place is
- what it is like
- how you spend time there
- and explain why you can relax there.

北京鸟巢

143

说起“重要的城市建筑”，我们可以选择谈论城市的重要地标。地点题中关于建筑的题目，每一季修饰建筑的形容词都会稍微有点变化，比如“重要的建筑物”“城市中高的建筑物”和“历史性的建筑”。我们一定要针对题目中的定语进行解释说明。比如，重要的建筑因为什么而重要，高的建筑是有多高。这些背景（Background）上的东西，考生务必提前做好准备，查一查相关资料。但记住，不要在考场上给考官太多过于学术性的知识。日常口语中，我们只做最基本的介绍就可以了。一切以清晰明了为原则。

真题演练

Describe an important building in your hometown.

You should say:
- what it is like (features)
- where it is
- what it is used for
- and explain why it is important.

考生范文

Opening Sentence: The place I would like to describe is the Beijing National Stadium, also referred to as Beijing Olympic Stadium, or the Bird's Nest.

Background: The Bird's Nest, as we call it, is in a shape of a nest. It reflects the traditional Chinese philosophy that the sky is round and the ground is square (天圆地方). It is situated in Olympic Green Village, the northern outskirts of Beijing. It was designed as the main stadium of 2008 Beijing Olympic Games at first. Many Olympic events were held here. Since October of 2008, after the end of the Olympics, it has been opened as a tourist attraction. Currently, it has now become the landmark of Beijing.

Reasons: As for why it is important, firstly, the designs of everything are humanistic. The stands are designed to satisfy the needs of different numbers of spectators in different periods. During the Olympics, no matter where you were seated, you could see the whole game without any visual obstruction. What's more, people who sat in the stadium could also hear the broadcasting very clearly. All these details embody the concept of people-oriented service of China. In different entrances, the stadium also provides the disabled accesses. I think all the equipment could show the power of China to the whole world and I am really proud of it. Finally, it currently becomes the centre of the international and domestic sports competition and recreation activities. It will also hold the opening and closing ceremonies of Winter Olympic Games. By the way, it

also hold many concerts for really popular singers in China such as Jay Chou, Eason Chen and the band Mayday.

Conclusion: If I have some foreign friends, I will definitely bring them here to see this wonderful building.

考官点评

The vocabulary is good with several 'less common' words like 'philosophy' and 'landmark' but there is very little in the way of 'paraphrasing' and 'idiomatic' language. I would want more for the top scores. I am also not sure what 'humanistic' is supposed to mean.

Grammatically, again, it's very good with only a few small errors, mainly missing the 'the'. For example, '...also referred to as Beijing...' should add 'the', '...also referred to as the Beijing...'. Other errors are: 'is in a shape of a nest' should be '...is in the shape of a nest', '...situated in Olympic Green Village' should be '...situated in the Olympic Green Village', and '...it has been opened' needs to change to '...it was opened'. Lastly, '...it currently becomes...' should change to '...it has become...'. With this number of errors, I don't believe it would reach the top scores.

拓展练习

Describe an important place like (stadium, swimming pool) in your city.

You should say:
- where it is
- how often you go there
- what people do there
- and explain why you think it is important.

雄伟的长城

144

本题和上一题都与“建筑（building）”有关，但这道题的侧重点是“历史上著名的（historic）”。那我们就要说清楚该建筑的历史背景。这里给备考的学生提一个建议，鉴于口语1月、5月和9月为变题季，所以要求我们在准备素材时，尽可能找一些比较普遍的素材，比如这道建筑题，我们找一个建筑既满足“历史性的”，又满足“重要性的”，还可以满足“高的”。不然，如果你准备得特别有针对性的话，一旦换题，很可能需要重新准备。

真题演练

Describe a historic building that you visited.

You should say:
- where it was
- when you went there

- what the building looks like
- and explain why it is important to your country.

考生范文

Opening Sentences: Well, the historical building I would like to talk about is called the Great Wall. It's located in our capital city, Beijing. In my view, this building is really stunning.

Background: If my memory serves me right, the last time I went there with my parents was when I was a freshman in the university, about 2 years ago.

As for what it looks like, the Great Wall looks like a dragon unwinding above the mountains. There are watchtowers every 100 metres. Besides, I found the view from the top is absolutely breath-taking. I would say it is a spectacular construction. Every day it attracts so many visitors to this area, and many foreigners are attracted by its fame. I waited in line for more than 2 hours but it is very worth visiting.

Reasons: Anyway, in terms of why it is important to my country, I would say there are two reasons. One reason is that it was built during the Ming Dynasty so it represents the history of China. At that time, it was regarded as an important tool to protect China against attacks from other nations. It represents the intelligence and power of the ancient China. Another reason is that the Great Wall is a symbol of strength. You know, we say that boys can only become real men once they set foot on the Great Wall. It was really hard for me to climb it because some of the stairs are far too steep. It took me almost the whole day but the guide told me that what I had went through was just a small part of the Great Wall.

Conclusion: So yeah, now I guess you can understand why it's important to China.

考官点评

With regards to the vocabulary, there is some good 'paraphrasing' and also some good 'less common' words, but very little 'idiomatic' language or 'collocations'. The 'Besides' would be wrong, 'Also' would be better.

Grammatically, there are a few errors, such as, '...freshman in the university...' needs to drop the 'the', and '...but it is very worth visiting...' should be '...but it is well worth visiting...'.

I don't think, with these errors, it would hit the top scores.

拓展练习

1. Describe a historical building in your country/hometown.

You should say: ● where this building is

- how you know this building
- what it is like
- and explain why it is important to your country/hometown.

2. Describe a historical place you've been to.

You should say:
- where this place is
- how you know this place
- what it is like
- and explain how you felt about this place.

逛街圣地第五大道

145

说起“购物的街道”，我们每个人都能想起几条步行街，但问题是购物街道真的可以说到两分钟吗？可以，但我们要找一条“丰富”的街道。这里也可以看出在 Part 2 中，笔者一直强调的一点，一定要找有背景、有内容可说的东西，这样我们可以多说一些。比如，纽约非常著名的购物圣地“纽约第五大道”，同时还有“帝国大厦”和“时代广场”，满足游客的各种需求。

真题演练

Describe a street where you like (to go) shopping.

You should say:
- where it is
- what you buy there
- how often you go there
- and explain why you like to go there for shopping.

考生范文

Opening Sentence: I am going to describe a shopping street that I've enjoyed visiting, which is also one of the most famous streets in America. Its name is Fifth Avenue.

Background: Located in the centre of Manhattan, Fifth Avenue is also a well-known business street because there are many luxury shops such as Tiffany and Dior. It attracts many shopaholics who come from all over the world to this place. If you are a fashion-focused NYC tourist, shopping at the New York stores on Fifth Avenue is a good choice. It has all kinds of products that can cater to the taste and budget of every customer. Even though it was called the Fifth Avenue, this shopping area includes more than three avenues and several streets. It is really a prosperous area.

Reasons: As for why I like to go shopping there, firstly, it is a place to satisfy all my shopping needs. Even though, I have been there for only twice with my mom during my summer break, my experience was impressive. My mom could buy the latest handbag there and my father could find his favourite electronic

products. As a foodie, I ate a lot of food, such as the chocolate from Godiva, ice cream from DQ. What's more, a lot of brands were also on sale. It was easy for me to hunt for a bargain, and you know what, it is hard for people to walk around the whole street just in one day. There are also some comfortable and cosy hotels for visitors but the price is really high. So I prefer to save money for buying goods instead of staying in an expensive hotel.

Conclusion: If someone wants to enjoy the shopping atmosphere, I will definitely recommend Fifth Avenue to him/her.

考官点评

An excellent answer. The Lexical Resource is good with many 'less common' words, 'paraphrasing' and 'idiomatic' language as well as some 'collocations'.

Grammatically, there are a few errors: 'Fifth Avenue is also a well-known...' needs to remove the 'also', 'Even though it was called the Fifth Avenue...' should be 'Even though it is called Fifth Avenue...' and '...I have been there for only twice with my mom...' should change to '...I have only been there twice with my mom...'. I think this would be good enough to reach an 8.

拓展练习

1. Describe a street you like to visit.

You should say:
- where it is
- how often you go there
- what you like to do there
- and explain why you like it.

2. Describe a place you want to visit again.

You should say:
- where it is
- what it is like
- what you can do in this street
- and explain why you like it.

博德利图书馆

146

"图书馆"和"博物馆"类题目相对来说是针对性比较强的题目，需要进行提前准备，否则在考场上能想起来的恐怕就是读书时学校的图书馆了。谈论自己学校的图书馆也并非不可，我们可以通过编一些在那里发生过的小故事来充实内容。比如你曾经在这个图书馆或者博物馆发现了某一本非常珍贵的书籍或者资料。相反，如果你提前做了准备，那么你完全可以谈论一些历史上比较著名的

博物馆，这样在背景（Background）段拓展起来就十分容易了。

真题演练

Describe a museum/library that you visited.

You should say:
- where it was
- what it looked like
- what facilities it had
- and explain what influence it had on you.

考生范文

Opening Sentences: One of the most impressive libraries I have ever visited is the Bodleian Library, the principal University library of the University of Oxford. I've been there only once and it was in last summer that our school organised a summer camp to Britain.

Background: Before the trip I was really looking forward to visiting 'the Bod' as it is often featured in films and TV productions. So I still remember how excited I was to see such a time-honoured library in person near Broad Street in Oxford. According to the guide, it is one of the oldest libraries in Europe which has been a library of legal deposit for 400 years. Although it was first opened to scholars in 1602, its roots dates back even further in 14th century. It's a library that consists of five buildings, one of which is Duke Humfrey's Library, which can be frequently seen in 'Harry Potter', as the library of Hogwarts. Another renowned building would be the Radcliffe Camera, a circular library featuring its lanterned dome. The view from the university church of it can be usually found on the postcard as the symbol of Oxford.

Feelings: If I were a student here, I would love this place because it's a perfect place to look for reference and materials for my assignment and dissertation. As the second largest library in the UK after the British Library, it holds over 12 million printed items, from books, maps to manuscripts, in addition to 50,000 e-journals. What's more, it's a quiet and peaceful place for study. By this I mean, some reading rooms have quiet zones where you would be uninterrupted by others.

Conclusion: It was a shame we couldn't explore more for a standard tour, which only lasted for an hour. Next time, instead of a tourist, I wish I could pick a book from the bookshelf and read here as a real Oxford student.

考官点评

Overall, a very good answer, but a little slip in the Coherence; '...scholars in 1602, its roots dates back even further in 14th century'. The 'even further' would be wrong and 1602 is not in the 14th century. 'scholars in 1602, its roots dates back even further to the 14th century...' would be better.

With regards to Lexical Resource, there are some good 'less common' words and some 'collocations', but there is little in the way of 'idiomatic' language. Also, '...a library of legal deposit...', sounds a little too rehearsed and I'm not entirely sure what it's supposed to mean.

The grammar is excellent and I believe, would reach the upper scores.

拓展练习

Describe an old/a historic building that you visited.

You should say:
- where it was
- what people do (or, were doing) there
- why you went there
- and explain how you felt about this building.

曼利海滩

147

"沙滩"题可以说是地点题的必考题，就算没有直接考"一个海边的地点（a seaside place)"，准备一个沙滩有关的内容也是非常有必要的，因为总有一道题目可以用上沙滩的内容，比如"旅行(trip)"题。在准备"沙滩"这道题时，要说清楚背景——沙滩在什么地方，环境和风景怎么样。除此之外，还要通过讲在沙滩玩耍的例子去证明这是一个什么样的沙滩。

真题演练

Describe a seaside place (you want to visit).

You should say:
- where this place is
- what you know about it
- what you will see and do if you go there
- and explain why you want to visit this seaside place.

考生范文

Opening Sentences: If I've ever got a chance, I would like to pay a visit to Manly Beach, one of Australia's must-sees. I still remember how excited I was when I first read about it in a travel guide called 'Lonely Planet'.

Background: It's a beach located among the Northern Beaches of Sydney, just fifteen

minutes from Sydney Central Business District by ferry, making it the perfect place to stay while you are in Sydney. It's not only a stunning place with a long stretch of fine soft sand and a jewel-blue ocean, a place for scenic pictures, but also a venue for the Australian Open of Surfing, which is held in every February, allowing you to see expert surfers ride the waves. And if you would like to enjoy the waves yourself but new to surfing, Manly is one of the best places in the world to learn to surf. The stand-up paddle boarding provides all the equipment and guidance that beginners need.

Reasons: One of the reasons why Manly attracts me so much is that there is always plenty to see and do no matter what your interests are. In addition to water-based activities, such as kayaking and snorkelling, you can get involved in a game of beach volleyball or hire a bike. Also, EcoTreasures, an accredited ecotourism company, offers plenty of coastal walks to and from Manly that help you discover the true beauty of the area. Another thing that impresses me would be the waterside dining. With small cafés serving some of the best coffees in Sydney, takeaways offering locally caught fish and a number of up-market restaurants along the beach and the wharf, you're never short of options.

Conclusion: I wish someday I could go to Manly in person, to see if it is as great as how it is described in the book.

考官点评

Overall a good answer, however, the answer sounds as if it's copied from the 'Lonely Planet'. It's a little too much like a sales pitch for the beach rather than a description of it.

The vocabulary is generally good, with some good 'collocations; 'must-see', for example and some good 'less common' words and also some 'idiomatic' language; 'jewel-blue'. For the higher scores though, I'd want more.

Grammatically, again very good, with only a few errors. For example, 'If I've ever got a chance...' needs to change to 'If I ever get a chance...', '...which is held in every February...' needs to change to '...which is held every February...' and '...but new to surfing...' should be '...but are new to surfing...'.

拓展练习

1. Describe a popular place where people like to go swimming.

You should say:
- where it is
- what it is like
- who likes to swim there
- and explain why it is popular for swimming.

2. Describe a place in the world that you would like to travel to at the first time.

You should say:
- where it is
- who you would like to go with
- when you would like to go
- and explain why you would like to go there.

3. Describe a place you want to go to in the future.

You should say:
- where the place is
- how you get there
- what it looks like
- and explain why you like this place.

黄金海岸

148

"地点类"题我们还需要注意的一点是时态问题，即回答题目的时态。因为该类题目一般会让你描述一个"去过的地方"或"未来想去的地方。"上一题中，题目要求考生描述一个未来想去的地方，而本题是让考生描述一个已经去过并可能还会再去的地点，题目考查的都是"一个海边的地点(a seaside place)"，所以素材可以套用，但时态一定要灵活变化。同时，如果描述去过的地方，那么一定要有细节描述；如果是描述想要去的地方，一定要说清楚这个地方哪里吸引你。

真题演练

Describe a seaside place you enjoyed visiting.

You should say:
- where this place was
- what you did at this place
- who you went there with
- and explain why you liked this place.

考生范文

Opening Sentences: I'm going to talk about the Gold Coast, which is located in the east coast of Australia. In my view, the beach over there is out of the world. I have never seen such a beautiful beach in my life.

Background: The last time I visited Gold Beach was about couple of months ago, when I was having a trip to Australia with my bestie. As for what I did there, I've collected some nice seashells, built sandcastles, took so many selfies and we even took some adventures and tried jet boarding. At the beginning, I didn't think I had the enough guts to put myself in that difficult situation, but my friend persuaded me to try it with her. It was an amazing experience for me; I was flying like an eagle in a pair of Hoover boots. It was only just 20-minute experience but I will remember for a lifetime. It was a good memory and instructors were quite friendly which made this experience more enjoyable.

Reasons: I am really into this place. First of all, as I was saying, I tried an extreme activity at this place. I never tried any extreme sports before, so it was a great challenge for me. There are also so many other extreme activities there and I would definitely try them later. The second reason is that the Gold Beach is so gorgeous, and no words can express how beautiful it is. It is so picturesque and I felt so sad when I left there and went back to the reality.

Conclusion: I always look at these photos because they remind me of the fun time I spent with my best friend at the Gold Coast. If I had a chance, I would go there with my girlfriend.

考官点评

Looking at the vocabulary, there are attempts at 'idiomatic' language but it's not quite correct. '...is out of the world...' should be '...is out of this world...'. I also think 'Hoover boots' needs to change to 'hover boots'.

Grammatically, it's also good, with only a few errors. For example, '...It was only just 20-minute experience...' needs to change to '...It was just a 20-minute experience...'.

拓展练习

Describe a place near the water that you enjoy visiting.

You should say:
- where this place was
- what you did at this place
- who you went there with
- and explain why you liked this place.

皇家海德公园偶遇周杰伦

149

对于“地点类”的题目很多考生都有一个疑惑，那就是怎么说也说不够两分钟，觉得该地点的环境、位置等基本信息都已经一一介绍，不知道再说些什么了。这里笔者再强调一下，我们完全可以在地点题中创造小故事，比如我们可以讲述一个在这个地方发生过的小故事，当然这个故事也可以是在别的地方发生的，你挪到这里来用，同时也可以说因为这个故事因此这个地方变得让人印象深刻。

真题演练

Describe a tourist attraction you have visited.

You should say:
- what the attraction was
- when you visited it
- why you went there
- and explain whether you enjoyed it or not.

考生范文

Opening Sentence: I'm going to tell you something about Hyde Park—I guess that counts as a tourist attraction—which is located in the centre of London.

Background: I have been there for many times, but I vividly remember the first time I visited Hyde Park was about 3 years ago when I was having a trip to London with my folks. There is a big lake in the middle of the park that some people could go boating. Besides, it has a special swimming zone for those people who like swimming in the lake. The big green space provides a nice habitat for some wildlife, and I even spotted some cute squirrels and wild ducks in Hyde Park. People can do lots of things in Hyde Park; some of them having picnic with their family, some old people walking their dogs and teenagers playing Frisbee with their buddies.

Reasons: Well, I have to say there are a couple of reasons why I like to visit there. First of all, there are so many events and activities held in Hyde Park every year, among which the most exciting one could be Winter Wonderland which is kind of a combination of Christmas market and fun fair before Christmas. I even met my favourite Chinese singer Jay Chou and his wife in Winter Wonderland. I was so excited and took some pictures with them. On top of that, Hyde Park is a nice spot for relaxation.

Conclusion: As long as the weather is permitted, I like to take a stroll along the park or just sit under a tree and catch up on some reading.

考官点评

Overall, a good answer. The Lexical Resource is good, but the first thing I'd comment on is the fact that 'Hyde Park' is mentioned 6 times, which is a little repetitive. Also, there are some 'less common' terms but not enough for the upper scores. In addition, there is nothing with respect to 'idiomatic' language.

Grammatically, there are a few errors which I believe would be enough to take it out of the top levels. For example, 'I have been there for many times...' should be 'I have been there many times...', '...time I visited Hyde Park was about 3 years ago...' needs to be '...time I visited Hyde Park, which was about 3 years ago...', '...middle of the park that some people could go boating...' could change to '...middle of the park where some people could go boating...', 'Besides, it has a...' should be 'Besides that, it has a...' and '...some of them having picnic with their family...' should change to '...some of them can have a picnic with their family...' to name a few.

拓展练习

1. Describe a park/garden you visited and liked/that impressed you.

You should say:
- where it was
- what it looked like
- what people did there
- and explain why it impressed you.

2. Describe a place you visited but only for a short period of time.

You should say:
- where you went to
- who you went with
- what you did during the trip
- and explain how you felt about this place.

考官版

家一般的咖啡馆

150

真题演练

Describe a café or restaurant you like to visit.

You should say:
- where the café/restaurant is
- what kinds of food and drink this place serves
- how often you visit this place
- and explain why you like to visit this place.

Describe a place where you can read or write (not your home).

You should say:
- where it is
- what it is like
- how you spend time there
- and explain why you want to relax there.

考官范文

- **where it is**

Well, the place I would like to talk about is a little café that is just around the corner from where I live. Maybe, a five-minute walk.

❸ **what it is like/what kinds of food and drink this place serves**

It's not one of these ones as part of a chain; it's privately owned by a foreigner. I think he's English, he might be American, I'm really not sure. It does serve food, but I only ever go there for a coffee and to read a book, or maybe study. I just find a very quiet and relaxing place to be and I love the décor[①] and furniture. It's all very welcoming and cosy, not to mention comfortable. You can just melt into the cushions of the sofas.

①装潢

❹ **how often you visit this place/how you spend time there**

I go there maybe twice a week, you know, as a student I have lots of studying to do and I find this place just perfect. I'm often there for several hours at a time and I can spread out books on a large table[②] so that I can see multiple pages at the same time. I find this a much more efficient way of doing my research than on my small bed in my dorm.

②把书铺开放在大桌子上

❺ **and explain why you like to visit this place/why you want to relax there.**

Robin, the boss, doesn't mind me doing that which is probably the main reason why I like this place so much. Occasionally, he helps me and I sometimes quiz him with questions about Business, which is my major. I also find it useful to bounce ideas off of[③] him as he has run a business for donkeys years[④]. So, overall, if I think about it, it's a kind of home away from home[⑤], or should I say dorm away from dorm.

③了解某人对某事的看法
④好多年
⑤像在家里一样安适和自在的地方

拓展练习

1. Describe a café in your hometown.

You should say:
- ❷ where it is
- ❸ how often you go there
- ❹ what kind of food they serve there
- ❺ and explain why you like to eat at this place.

2. Describe a place that can be good to relax (not home).

You should say:
- ❷ where this place is
- ❸ what it is like
- ❹ how you spend time there
- ❺ and explain why you think it is a good place for relaxation.

让人放松的咖啡小馆

151

真题演练

Describe a place where you listen to music.

You should say:
- where the place is
- what it looks like
- what you do there
- and explain why you like this place.

Describe a place where you relaxed.

You should say:
- where the place is
- what it is like
- how you spend time there
- and explain why you can relax there.

考官范文

- **where the place is**

Well, the place that I enjoy listening to music and relaxing is actually a little café bar about 3 or 4 km from where I live. I currently live in the north of Beijing, outside the 5th Ring Road near a little place called Huilongguan. It's probably about 45 minutes from the centre of Beijing.

- **what it is/looks like**

From the outside it looks quite small, but when you get in you realise that it actually goes back quite a long way and is on two floors. As you walk through the glass front doors the bar cooking area is in the centre with stairs to the right and tables and chairs all around. The decoration is a bit dated for my taste, but I'm really not going there to look at the walls.

- **what you do there/how you spend time there**

I quite often go there because of the music. A lot of it comes from the nineties and the naughties (90's and 00's) which is now getting a bit old but, as far as I'm concerned, it's still some of the best ever written. I've never been very good with names of bands or songs and therefore are actually tell you what any of them are called but I will happily sit there may be up on some reading also work tapping my feet to[1] something like U2.

①跟着音乐打节拍

- **and explain why you like this place/why you can relax there.**

I know the manager there reasonably well now because, you know, I've

been going there about four years now and he is always up for a chat. I don't think I've ever seen it really busy, so for me, it's a perfect place to just chill out[②] maybe meet some friends and get out of the house for a while.

②放松

大渔日式铁板烧

152

真题演练

Describe a restaurant you like to go/that impresses you.

You should say:
- where this restaurant is
- what type of food the restaurant has
- why you go to this restaurant
- and explain why you/people like this restaurant.

Describe a restaurant that you often go to and you like.

You should say:
- what restaurant it is
- what it is like inside
- what is special with the restaurant
- and explain why you like the restaurant.

考官范文

● **what restaurant it is/where this restaurant is**

The restaurant that I would like to talk about is a Japanese Teppanyaki[①] restaurant called Da Yu. It's a chain, but the one I enjoying going to the most is the one near Anzhen Bridge by the North 3rd Ring Road, here in Beijing.

①日式铁板烧

● **what it is like inside/what type of food the restaurant has**

Because of the style of restaurant, it's fairly large to accommodate all the cooking stations. I'm not sure if you know, but in a Teppanyaki restaurant you choose the food and they then cook it in front of you. It has all different types of food, meat, seafood, vegetables and you can tell the chef exactly how you want it done.

● **why you go to this restaurant/what is special with the restaurant**

The reason why I like this restaurant so much, is that I'm quite a fussy eater[②]. I'm not keen on vegetables, more of a meat kinda guy. At this restaurant I can choose exactly what I want and how I want it cooked, which for, is just great. The other reason I like it, is that it's about 250RMB for as much as you can eat and drink, which is an incredible deal. So, every time I go I don't eat beforehand, so I'm famished[③] by the time I get

②一个挑食的人
③极饥饿的

there and eat loads. I've been compared to a bottomless pit[④].

④无底洞

❸ **and explain why you/people like this restaurant.**

Actually, I don't go there too often, normally just for New Year and my birthday, which are about 6 months apart, but I thoroughly enjoy it every time I do. The staff know me now and are always friendly when they see me again. There's one chef I particularly like that cooks all my food to perfection[⑤], I try and make sure to book him as well as the table when I go, but overall it's the atmosphere and the people I'm with that make each experience so great.

⑤极好，十全十美

北四环的一家小店

153

真题演练

Describe a shop that just opened in your hometown.

You should say:
- ❶ what shop it is
- ❷ where it is
- ❸ when it opened
- ❹ and explain how you feel about the shop.

考官范文

❶ **what shop it is**

The shop I would like to describe for you today was a new clothes shop that opened. It sells a lot of the famous brands that are out there, you know, Chanel, Gucci, Hugo Boss and the like. It's fairly small and is wall-to-wall[①] bags and clothes.

①全面的，综合的

❷ **where it is**

It kind of depends on the weather but I normally enjoy walking there as it's part of a little collection of shops near where I live, so, North 4th Ring Road, here in Beijing. It's about 5 minutes on the bus, but actually, if it's nice out I enjoy strolling over and enjoying some sunshine. It's an easy walk and is basically by the end of my community, so I just walk through the picturesque garden that we have and there I am, ready to burn another hole in my pocket[②].

②形容钱很快被花光

❸ **when it opened**

It must've opened about 2 months ago. I remember because I'd just broken up for the summer[③] from my university and was out with some

③放暑假

friends doing some window shopping④. I wasn't really paying attention to where I was going and found myself in the shop, and just thought I'd died and gone to heaven⑤.

④闲逛
⑤如天堂般的体验

- **and explain how you feel about the shop.**

I couldn't really afford too many of the bags but a girl can dream. If I'm honest, I do buy more than I should there, so don't tell my parents! I think I should maybe invest in the business, it might be cheaper for me in the long run.

拓展练习

Describe a good news you heard from others.

You should say:
- what the news was about
- when you got this news
- where you got this news from
- and explain why you think it was a piece of good news.

人潮拥挤的北京南站

154

真题演练

Describe a crowded place.

You should say:
- what the place was
- when you went there
- what you did there
- and explain how you felt about the crowded place.

Describe a place where was crowded with people you went to.

You should say:
- where it was
- when you went there
- what you did there
- and explain why you went there.

考官范文

- **what the place was**

Well, the place I want to describe that was crowded is the Beijing South Railway Station. It's by the 2nd Ring Road South and is very popular for long distance and bullet trains①. It's an enormous building, like, properly huge. I'm not sure how many platforms there are but, maybe, 50 or so.

①子弹头高速列车

- **when you went there**

It was earlier this year when I went there, just before Chun Jie, you know, the Chinese Spring Festival. There is an interesting news about New Year that it is the biggest migration of people in the world, something like 400 million people. I think they were all in the train station with me!

- **what you did there**

I was there with my family catching a train to go to Qingdao to visit my grandparents, my mother's folks. We'd got there the previous night and stayed in a motel in the station as we knew there were going to be a lot of people, but, wow, I didn't expect what we saw.

- **and explain why you went there/how you felt about the crowded place.**

Wall to wall bodies all trying to move, it was just like a tide in an ocean. Every time a train was called little eddies appeared and were then sucked up by the rest. All you needed was the gloop sound, seriously![②] Although it was actually quite interesting to watch, getting to our seats wasn't nearly as much fun, everybody was pushing and you didn't really have time to get your bearings before someone else was trying to push by. I generally try and avoid places like this, but we didn't really have a choice as all the flights we're already booked up. I might try to get flight tickets a little earlier next year; I just hope the airport isn't as manic as the train station!

②人挤着人，如潮水一般向前涌着，每当有列车广播时都会引起小小的人流漩涡，却又很快被剩下的覆盖。只差咕噜声就跟煮粥一样了！

拓展练习

Describe a time you went to a crowded place.

You should say:
- where it was
- when you went there
- what you did there
- and explain how you felt about the crowded place.

北京三里屯

155

真题演练

Describe a street you like to visit.

You should say:
- where it is
- how often you go there
- what you like to do there
- and explain why you like it.

Describe a street you are familiar with in your hometown.

You should say:
- where it is
- what the main buildings are on the street
- what you usually do on that street
- and explain how you feel about this street.

考官范文

where it is/how often you go there

I would like to talk about one of the more famous streets in Beijing called Sanlitun Bar Street. You can find it either East 3rd Ring Road near the city centre, not far from Guomao. These days, I don't go there as often as I used to, but is still fairly regularly, maybe twice a week.

what the main buildings are on the street

Recently, by that I mean① maybe five years ago, it was purely bar restaurants up and down the strip②. Then the Sanlitun village was built and the whole area changed. It is now much more geared to shoppers than③ drinkers. Apple has its flagship store there as does Nike and Starbucks I believe.

①我的意思是说
②街上到处都是
③比起……如今更适合……

what you like to do there/what you usually do on that street

Don't get me wrong④, it still has a few restaurants and bars knocking around that I still like going to but it doesn't really have the same feel. There is however, my favourite restaurant probably in the entire world there. It's a place called Da Yu. It's Japanese Teppanyaki place that does amazing food and this is the principal reason why I still go to this street.

④不要误会我的意思

and explain how you feel about this street/why you like it.

As for how I feel about this street, I suppose my feelings have changed over the last few years and I was sorry to see the old street change. Saying that however, I can see the benefits of the new development and it is certainly more conducive to⑤ tourists and the embassy people that surround the area.

⑤更有利于

北京朝阳公园

156

真题演练

Describe a garden/park you visited.

You should say:
- where it is and when you visited it

- what kind it is
- what people can do there
- and explain how you felt about this garden.

Describe your favourite park or garden in your city (town).

You should say:
- where it is
- what can be seen there
- how often you go there
- and explain why you like it.

考官范文

● where it is and when you visited it/how often you go there

I think the park describe for you today is Chaoyang Park here in Beijing. It's located near the 3rd Ring Road based, so it's relatively close to the city centre which makes it convenient for me because I live in the vicinity[①]. During late spring, summer and early autumn I'm there quite a lot, just because, as I said, it's very close to me and is a lovely place to just walk around.

①在附近

● what kind it is

It's certainly one of the largest parks in Beijing and you have many different things that you can do there which a lot of people take advantage of[②] because it's normally quite crowded unless of course you go crack of dawn[③] and get up with the birds.

②利用
③日出时分

● what can be seen there/what people can do there

For me, I normally just walk through the quiet areas and absorb the sounds, or occasionally lack thereof, around me. It's a very pretty place to go, I think, just because there are so many different types of trees, flowers and general foliage. Sometimes, music events are put on people can go and listen to a band in the evening if they want to. I'm reasonably sure they organise quite a lot of these things but, to be honest, it's not really my thing.

● and explain how you felt about this garden/why you like it.

I just like this park because it gives me a little bit of an escape from[④] the incessant[⑤] noise of traffic and also somewhere that I can just sit down and have a sandwich if I want to without having to think too much about anything else. It's my local little slice of heaven[⑥].

④使我远离……
⑤持续不断的
⑥天堂一角

北京电视台

157

真题演练

Describe an unusual building you've visited.

You should say:
- where it is
- what it is used for
- what it looks like
- and explain why you think it is unusual.

Describe a tall building in your hometown you like or dislike.

You should say:
- where it is
- what it is used for
- what it looks like
- and explain why you like or dislike this place.

考官范文

where it is

The BTV tower is probably the tallest, yet strangest building I've ever visited. BTV is the main TV company in Beijing, hence the name[①] BTV. It's located by the East 4th Ring Road, here in Beijing, not far from the CBD area by Guomao.

①因此得名

what it is used for

This building is the main studio for the news and weather, and acts as an office for meetings and the like. I think for some of the series it creates, they are done at the Beijing Film Studios which again isn't that far.

what it looks like

From the outside, it's just a standard, typical tall building. It's the inside that I think is more impressive.

and explain why you think it is unusual/why you like or dislike this place.

For a start, there is a central shaft[②] that holds a glass lift[③] in the middle. It looks amazing, but it's also completely terrifying. When I went there, I was going to see my uncle who works on the 42nd floor. And, yes, you guessed it! I had to use that elevator. I'm not great with heights, not scared as such, I just have a healthy respect for them.[④] To be honest, it's not the height that's the problem, it's the falling and especially the landing that I don't like the idea of.

②天井
③观光电梯
④我有点怕高，也不至于说害怕，只是正常的恐高而已。

I held onto the safety rail inside ; you wouldn't have been able to pry them off with a crowbar![5] When I got to my uncle's office, the view was just amazing, really, truly, incredible. I could see over all of Beijing. A bird's eye view[6] you might say. That's why I like this building so much, from looking so ordinary outside, to the scary journey up, to this amazing view. A truly wonderful place.

⑤我双手紧紧抓住里面的安全护栏，紧到你用撬棍可能都撬不开！
⑥鸟瞰

拓展练习

Describe an interesting public place that you like to visit.

You should say:
- where this place is
- what it is used for/what you can do there
- what it looks like
- and explain why you think this is an interesting place./why you like to visit this place.

"穹顶之下"的北京

158

真题演练

Describe a place (city/village) you have been to that was polluted.

You should say:
- when and where you went
- why you went there
- what the pollution was like (or what kind of pollution it was)
- and explain how you felt about this pollution.

Describe a city that you have visited that left an impression on you.

You should say:
- what it is
- when you visited
- what it looked like
- and explain why it left an impression on you.

考官范文

- **what it is/when and where you went**

Well, the obvious city to talk about here in China is Beijing, the capital. My hometown is in Heilongjiang in the northeast of China and I was visiting my friend, for the weekend, who studies there.

- **why you went there**

It was a long time since I'd seen her and we'd organised that she'd take me

around some of the sights, you know, the Great Wall, the Forbidden City and the like because even though I'm Chinese, I've never actually seen them.

- **what the pollution was like (or what kind of pollution it was)/what it looked like**

I left early in the morning from Harbin and flew into Beijing Airport. When I left, it was bright sunshine without a cloud in the sky.[①] When I landed, well, let's just say it was very different. I'd heard about the pollution, of course, but I'd never experienced it on a scale like this[②]. I could hardly see a thing. On the journey in the taxi to my friend's place it was the same, just like a thick fog that made me want to cough a lot.

①晴空一片，万里无云。
②如此大规模地

- **and explain why it left an impression on you/how you felt about this pollution.**

I really didn't like it, hated it in fact! I went from a real high[③] when I left to being completely down in the dumps[④] when I got there. I don't know how my friends can stand it. I'm sure I couldn't.

Fortunately the wind picked up[⑤] that night and the following day was lovely, so it didn't ruin my trip too much, but after that trip I'm just extremely thankful I don't have to experience that kind of pollution on a regular basis[⑥].

③情绪高涨
④十分沮丧
⑤刮风
⑥经常地

拓展练习

1. Describe a city you've been to.

You should say:
- where it was
- what it was like
- why you went there
- and explain how you felt about the city.

2. Describe a city you have visited.

You should say:
- where the city is (and its name)
- when you went there
- what you liked or disliked about the city
- and explain why you visited this city.

3. Describe an important city in your country.

You should say:
- where it is
- what it is like
- what can be seen in this city
- and explain why it is important.

舒适静谧的大学图书馆

159

真题演练

Describe a quiet place.

You should say:
- where it is
- how often you visit there
- what you do there
- and explain why you like or dislike the place.

Describe a place that can be good to relax (not home).

You should say:
- where this place is
- what it is like
- how you spend time there
- and explain why you think it is a good place for relaxation.

考官范文

- **where this place is**

The place I want to describe for you today that I find peaceful and can relax in is my university library. It's on my campus near the teaching buildings, maybe 2 minutes' walk.

- **what it is like**

It's a fairly large building, 4 floors in all and has tinted windows① all around to let the sunlight in. Each floor is dedicated to② different topics. The third floor, the one I use the most is for, among other things, languages. I like it there because it's bright and spacious and not only are there plenty of desks and chairs to use, but also sofas to relax on.

①深色玻璃
②致力于

- **how often you visit there/what you do there/how you spend time there**

It's where I spend a lot of time there when I'm not in the classroom, so I'm in there nearly everyday. I find it a relaxing and calm environment where I can do some studying and if I feel tired can have a doze③ on the sofa without anyone bothering me, then wake up again and continue my studying.

③小睡片刻

- **and explain why you like or dislike the place/why you think it is a good place for relaxation.**

I find it very useful, not only because there are books on absolutely everything I could possibly want but also because there're a lot of other

students in there too which means if I'm having a brain dead moment④ I can always ask someone for help. That's why I like the library so much, certainly at the moment. For me it's a home away from home that I know will help me with my future.

④脑筋转不过来弯时，脑子不灵活时

游泳胜地——海南三亚

160

真题演练

Describe a popular place where people like to go swimming.

You should say:
- where it is
- what it is like
- who likes to swim there
- and explain why it is popular for swimming.

Describe a place near water (such as a river, lake or the ocean) that you enjoyed visiting.

You should say:
- where this place was
- what you did at this place
- who you went there with
- and explain why you liked this place.

考官范文

where it is/where this place is

You know, probably one of the most popular places in China to go swimming, certainly on holiday, is Sanya on Hainan Island. It's in southern China not actually that far from Hong Kong or Macau. From Beijing Capital Airport, it's about a 3-hour flight, maybe a little more.

what it is like

It's a gorgeous place with loads of beaches where you can simply sunbathe or swim in the sea. I was there a year or so ago a little before① the Chinese New Year. It was fantastic. As it was a little before the peak season there weren't too many people there which meant that the beach was fairly empty. During the evenings I would have an early evening swim and watch the sunset on the horizon.

①在……之前不久

who like to swim there/who you went there with/what you did at this place

I'm most definitely a sun worshipper② and the hotel where I stayed with my friends had its own little section of beach and the thing I enjoyed most was getting up and then going down for breakfast then going for a swim

②日光浴爱好者

and then chill out and maybe read a book or listen to some music while I get a nice tan③.

③皮肤晒成好看的古铜色

- **and explain why it is popular for swimming/why you liked this place.**

Hainan is very popular for Chinese tourists, principally because they don't need a visa to go there and it's still relatively unspoilt④ although these days there is quite a lot of development going on there. Its beaches are clean and the weather's great all year round, so I could actually swim every day in the ocean. You know, I'd love that! Might get to finally lose some weight and get fit.

④有未受破坏的自然美

拓展练习

Describe a place you often go for holiday.

You should say:
- where the place is
- how you get there
- what it looks like
- and explain why you often go there for holiday.

完美居所——叔叔的新家

161

真题演练

Describe a perfect house you have visited.

You should say:
- where it was
- how you know about this place
- what it looked like/what type of house it was
- and explain why you want to live in such a place/why you liked it.

Describe an interesting house or apartment you visited.

You should say:
- when you visited
- where it was
- what it looked like
- and explain why you think it was interesting.

考官范文

- **where it was/when you visited the house**

The house I want to talk about today is actually my uncle's new house that he bought in Canada a few years ago. Actually, it must've been last year when I saw it for the first time. I can't remember the name of

the place, but it's a small town basically, as far as I'm concerned, in the middle of nowhere[①]. It's gorgeous, so picturesque[②]. Green as far as the eye can see[③], with some small lakes and rivers a hop, skip and a jump away[④].

①在偏僻的地方
②风景如画的
③一望无际的绿色
④不远处

- **how you know about this place**

Obviously, I know about this place through my uncle. He was looking for a place to relax in. I don't think he wants to retire quite yet, but I know he wants to slow down a bit. I think he's basically planning for the future.

- **what it looked like/what type of it was**

It's a typical western style house with the ground floor having the kitchen, lounge etc. and then in the basement he has a wine cellar[⑤]; he's a bit of a wine buff[⑥]. Upstairs are the bedrooms and bathrooms. On the outside it seems to be quite traditional, but the inside he's decorated it with a modern feel and the colour scheme is very unique. I've never seen anything quite like it before, primary, I think you could call it, lots of reds, blues and yellows, but very tastefully done[⑦]. It really looks good.

⑤酒窖
⑥葡萄酒专家
⑦很有品位

- **and explain why you want to live in such a place/why you liked it/why you think it was interesting.**

I think the main reason why I like this place, is that it's subtle yet striking at the same time. The mix of calmness and nature of the surroundings together with the moderness of the house seems to be in direct contrast[⑧], but, what can I say, it works!

⑧形成了鲜明的对比

拓展练习

1. Describe a house or a flat (the ideal home) that you would like to live in.

You should say:
- where it would be
- what type of it would be
- how you would decorate it
- and explain why you would like to live in this kind of home.

2. Describe a beautiful flat or house you visited.

You should say:
- when you visited
- where it was
- what it looked like
- and explain why you liked it.

人间天堂——澳大利亚悉尼

162

真题演练

Describe a place away from home where you stayed.

You should say:
- where it is
- why you went there
- what you did
- and explain how you felt about this place.

Describe a place where you have worked or studied.

You should say:
- where it was
- what it was like
- what you have done there
- and explain how you felt about this place.

考官范文

where it is/what it was like

The place I would like to talk about today is Sydney in Australia. Well, you probably know that it's on the southeast coast in New South Wales.

why you went there

I was there on an exchange program with my university during the summer a couple of years ago. I was one of the fortunate ones to be chosen as there were far too many students for the places available. We had a raffle[①] and 10 of us were chosen from a hat[②]. I was over the moon[③] when my name was called and immediately called my parents to tell them the good news.

①抽奖
②任意抽取
③高兴极了

what you did/what you have done there

It was a 2-month program and we flew down in July. We got to the airport and were picked up by a bus from our sister uni[④]. We were all there to experience the culture and improve our English, you know, to become more fluent. We had classes nearly everyday but also had field trips[⑤] to see some of sights at weekends.

④兄弟院校
⑤外出活动

and explain how you felt about this place.

It was wonderful. I'd never seen such a fantastic place. I loved it, especially the opera house. The food was delicious. I'm a big fan of[⑥] seafood, so dining in Darling Harbour[⑦] for me was a little slice of

⑥非常喜欢
⑦情人港

heaven⑧. Compared to China, there were virtually no people. I used the public transport to get around sometimes and was amazed when I was virtually the only person on the train platform. I almost felt lonely. I'd highly recommend this place to anyone, the people are really nice and friendly, the food is just out of this world⑨ and the air is so clear that you can see for miles in any direction⑩. Truly wonderful !

⑧仿佛置身于天堂一样
⑨食物超级好吃
⑩一览无余

适合定居的国外城市

163

真题演练

Describe a place in another country where you would like to work.

You should say:
- where it is
- what kind of work you would like to have
- when you would like to go
- and explain why you want to work in that place.

Describe a beautiful place where you want to have a home.

You should say:
- where this place is
- what you know about this place
- what type of home you want there
- and explain why you would choose to live there.

考官范文

where it is/when you would like to go

For me, an ideal place to live and work would be Australia. I already have some family that live in Sydney and have visited them in the past and I just loved it there. My plan is to finish my Masters, hopefully by next year, and then find a job over there with my uncle's help.

what you know about this place/what kind of work you would like to have

I have studied Business and Economics and my uncle has a mining company so I'd like to go and help him develop the business. Maybe in the Sales or Marketing sides, because those are what interests me the most. Australia does a lot of business with China in Iron Ore and other minerals, so that'd be my focus I think.

what type of home you want there

Where my Uncle lives is stunning. It's very convenient and easy for the train to the city centre as they live maybe 10 minutes' walk away, and also

it's only about 20 minutes' drive from the nearest beach. My dream is to be able to buy a home similar to his. It's basically a bungalow[①], with 3 bedrooms and front and rear gardens[②].

①平房
②前后都有花园

- **and explain why you want to work in that place/why you would choose to live there.**

From what I've already seen of Sydney, it's a very relaxed place. A much slower pace than Beijing, here it's a real rat race, whereas there I think the rats there couldn't be bothered and went for a beer instead.[③] The food there is also just magnificent. Although I'm not entirely used to western food yet, I'm sure I can learn. So, overall, I think it's just a nicer place to live and work and I hope to find a boyfriend too, so that I can start a family of my own there.

③那里比北京的节奏慢很多；虽然竞争很激烈，但生活在那里的人们通常不愿被烦扰，更愿意没事小酌一杯。

多元文化之都——英国伦敦

164

真题演练

Describe a place you visited to learn another culture.

You should say:
- where it was
- when you went there
- what you did there
- and explain what you learnt.

Describe a place you went to that was full of colour.

You should say:
- where it was
- when you went there
- what you did there
- and explain why you think this place was made so colourful.

考官范文

- **where it was**

The place that I want to talk about today is England, and more specifically, London, which is the capital city.

- **when you went there**

It must've been about three years ago now when I went on holiday with my parents to the UK. I had a two-month break after high school and before I started university, so this was a great time to go.

● **what you did there**

We landed at Heathrow in the morning and got a taxi to our hotel. To be honest, I was absolutely knackered[①] when I got there, and fell asleep almost immediately. In the afternoon, though, I was much more energetic, as were my folks, and we ventured out[②] around our hotel. It was very near Hyde Park and, being a beautiful day, I know, that's rare in London we just walked around the park. It was amazing. The variety of colours were all around me. Not only the trees and the flowers, but also the houses, cars and buses. It was a real contrast, the blacks of the taxis, reds of buses and green of the park made it look like an oil painting.

①筋疲力尽的
②探索一番

● **and explain what you learnt/why you think this place was made so colourful.**

Overall, I think what was most interesting were the houses. They're very different from what I'm used to. Virtually all of them had different coloured front doors and even walls, and they were all different shapes and sizes. I think that it's very different, culturally, living like this. All the neighbours seemed to know each other and said hi, and even sometimes to people on the street. You don't really get that where I live, it's all high rise buildings. I prefer the English way of doing things, and I think I'll really enjoy studying there.

拓展练习

Describe a city/town you enjoyed visiting.

You should say:
- where it was
- when you went there
- what you did there
- and explain why you enjoyed visiting.

一个有趣的国家——英国

165

真题演练

Describe an interesting country you want to go to.

You should say:
- where it is
- what you can do there
- when you want to go there
- and explain why you think it is interesting.

Describe a foreign country that you want to visit but haven't been to.

You should say:
- where this place is
- what it is like
- what you can do in this country
- and explain why you want to visit the country.

考官范文

- **where it is**

Well, the place where I would like to go to visit and hopefully live too, is the capital city of England, London.

- **what it is like**

I'm hoping to go and study there next year, which is why I'm taking my IELTS now, and I'll be there for maybe 3 or 4 years. From what I've heard from friends and seen on TV, it's amazing. The people, the food even the weather are all so different from my hometown that I'm going to find it, enormous fun learning the culture, albeit difficult[①].

- **what you can do there/when you want to go there**

I'm hoping to get good scores in my 'A' levels so that I can then study Maths at Imperial College next September. My 'As' levels were good, all 'A' and 'A*'s so I'm on the right track[②]. All I need now is a good IELTS score and I'm set[③]. I don't think the visa will be a problem if I meet all the conditions of the uni, so, fingers crossed[④]!

- **and explain why you want to visit the country/why you think it is interesting.**

As for why England, and London, not only is it a country full of history and culture, but also, from my understanding, it's a lot easier to live there. It might be a bit more expensive than China, but I think, once I'm settled[⑤], it'll be a lot of fun and I'll get the opportunity to learn, not only my major, but also a bit more about life in general.

①尽管有点难

②沿着正确的轨道前进

③我准备好了

④但愿顺利

⑤一旦安顿好

4 事件类

考生版

中国人都要过的团圆节——春节

166

口语考试中常会被问起关于“festival”“holiday”或“vacation”的话题。这里大家一定要注意三者的区别：festival一般指具有悠久历史的传统节日或持续一段时间的文娱活动，如西方的圣诞节、中国的春节和中秋节、每年举行的音乐节；holiday主要指国家法定的或因风俗习惯而形成的节假日或放下工作与学习的一段长时间的休息，如中国的国庆节、大学的寒暑假，而vacation一般指出外旅行的假期。“春节”这一素材非常适合用在描述“festival”的话题当中，再者，也可以用来描述“喜庆”“传统”“历史悠久”“有意义”等之类的事件。下面以“an important traditional event”为例，看看我们怎样用“春节”这一素材描述一个既重要又传统的节日。

真题演练

Describe an important traditional event in your country.

You should say:
- what it is
- when it is usually held
- how people celebrate it
- and explain why you think it is important.

考生范文

Opening Sentence: In China, we have several traditional events, but today the one I would like to mention is the Spring Festival.

Background: The Spring Festival, also known as the Chinese Lunar New Year, is the most celebrated traditional festival in China. As its name suggests, the festival is celebrated at the beginning of a year according to the Chinese Lunar calendar. It begins from the middle of the last month of the year and ends up in the first month of the New Year. During the festival, people purchase goods, hang Spring Festival couplets, put on red clothes and send lucky money to kids for best wishes.

Reasons: As for why it is important, first, on New Year Eve, each family will gather

together making a big meal, chatting and watching TV for the whole night. It is a reunion day and many people look forward to seeing their family members after a whole busy year. You know, Chinese cherish family a lot. Second, the Spring Festival also bears the blessing of the coming year. People will wear new clothes and clean the house. It means no matter what you have had, you will open a new page in the coming year. People will also express their best wishes to each other through many special ways. For example, we put coins in the dumplings to express that the treasures fill the home. We put the paper cut, the Chinese word 'Fu' which means luck upside down to show that the happiness is arriving at the home. What's more, celebrating the traditional event is also a good way to learn the culture. Some culture is fading away among the young generations. So it is necessary to teach the juveniles about the legend of the festivals to protect the cultural heritages.

Conclusion: Anyway, I would say it is important because we will start the fresh year with the hope and happiness.

考官点评

A very good answer. There is some excellent language and an element of 'idiomatic' language 'open a new page'. There are some small grammatical errors, for example, 'the treasures fill the home' should change to 'the treasure fills the home', 'the paper cut' should be 'the paper cutting', and 'protect the cultural heritages' should be 'protect our cultural heritage'. I think this would deserve an 8.

拓展练习

1. Describe an important festival in your country.

You should say:
- when it is
- who you celebrate with
- what people do during this festival
- and explain why this festival is important.

2. Describe an interesting tradition in your country.

You should say:
- what the tradition is
- when you celebrate it
- how you can celebrate it
- and explain why it is interesting.

3. Describe a family celebration that you remember.

You should say:
- what you were celebrating
- who was present
- what you and your family did to make the celebration special
- and why you enjoyed the occasion.

难忘的生日聚会

167

“生日”是事件类中的一个万能素材，它不仅可用于描述“一次生日聚会”，还可以用于“一次家庭庆祝”“一次儿时开心的经历”“一次难忘的经历”“一次意外惊喜”等等。说起生日怎么过，当然少不了和家人、朋友开“趴”庆祝。想想一回到家，就惊喜满满——收礼物收到手软、吹蜡烛许愿，还能和大家扔蛋糕，简直嗨翻天，这样的经历怎能不让人印象深刻呢？

真题演练

Describe a birthday celebration that you enjoyed.

You should say:
- whose birthday it was
- who was there
- what you did
- and explain why you enjoyed it.

考生范文

Opening Sentences: Speaking of the celebration I most enjoyed, I would like to share with you the party for my 18th birthday. I'd say it was one of the happiest experiences in my life.

Background: Until now, I still vividly remember all the things and details on that day. In the morning, my parents told me that they had an appointment with clients in the evening and possibly ate out that night so I had to prepare dinner for myself. And there was nothing special in school either so it seemed that my friends hardly remembered my birthday. Of course I was kind of disappointed and upset as I thought nobody would celebrate with me. To my surprise, as I got home and opened the door, I saw a huge birthday cake in the middle of living room. There were 18 candles of different colours lit around the cake and the whole house was redecorated with balloons for the occasion. There were also many nicely packed gifts and gorgeous dishes on the table. Then I heard someone was knocking the door, so I rushed to the door and opened it. Guess what? I saw some of my best friends and my parents outside of the door wishing me a happy birthday.

From my best friend, Lucy, I knew that my parents planned to throw this 18th

birthday party for me two weeks ago. They even discussed the details of how to decorate the house to my taste, who they should invite, where to find the best cake in town, things like that. They tried to keep their plan in secret and wanted me to have a perfect 18th birthday party. It was really something beyond my expectation and I almost cried at that moment.

After enjoying the well-prepared dinner, my mother brought in the chocolate cake and asked me to light the candles. When my father turned off the light, everyone began to sing the birthday song for me. The atmosphere was so heart-warming that I blew out the candles and made wishes with my eyes filled with tears. After that, we were supposed to enjoy the cake. However, someone threw his piece of cake to my face suddenly and there came the exciting cake fight among us.

Reasons: At the end of the day we all got cream on our face and clothes, looking extremely funny. My father took a lot of pictures for us to capture those hilarious and memorable moments. Every time I look at the photos, they remind me of the enjoyable and touching party where my loved ones spent their effort and time giving me surprise, stayed with me to celebrate the day when I grew into an adult.

Conclusion: I really appreciate for what my parents and friends have done for me and I always feel lucky for being loved and cared.

考官点评

Firtsly, I would say that this answer is too long. At nearly 500 words it would likely take about 4 minutes to speak. This isn't necessarily a problem, but only the first 2 minutes will be measured.

It's a very good answer overall. There are quite a few 'less common' words as well as 'collocations', however, there is little in the way of 'idiomatic' language and therefore wouldn't be an 8 in my mind. The grammar is good, with only a few minor mistakes, such as 'sing the birthday song for me' would be better as 'sang me Happy Birthday' and '...friends have done for me' should be '...friends did for me'. Also some of the prepositions are incorrect. For example, 'keep their plan in secret' should be 'keep their plan a secret'. I think it could get an 8 for grammar.

拓展练习

1. Describe a recent happy event that you had.

You should say: ● when this happened

- what the event was
- who was with you
- and explain why you felt happy about it.

2. Describe an occasion that you have a cake that is special.

You should say:
- what kind of cake it is
- when you ate the cake
- who were with you
- and explain why you think the cake is special.

3. Describe a pleasant surprise you had.

You should say:
- when and where it happened
- who gave you the surprise
- why they gave you the surprise
- and explain how you felt about it.

4. Describe a situation that others didn't tell you the whole truth.

You should say:
- what the situation was
- who was involved
- why they didn't tell you the whole truth
- and explain how you felt when you found out you were not told the whole truth.

5. Describe a party you want to hold for someone in future.

You should say:
- what kind of party it is
- whom you would like to be the guest
- where the party would be held
- and explain what kinds of things would occur at the party.

必不可少的夏日活动——游泳

168

关于“帮助保持健康的活动”这一话题，方便我们描述的肯定是某项运动，比如跑步、打球、游泳等。某些运动也可以成为“一项技能”，比如游泳，甚至可以让不愿意运动的“懒癌晚期患者”从此爱上运动。那么到底“游泳”对我们身体有什么好处呢？

真题演练

Describe an activity you do to keep fit.

You should say:
- what the activity is
- when and where you usually do it
- how you do it

- and explain why it can keep you fit.

考生范文

Opening Sentences: Well, I have to admit that I do want to do some exercises but I am lazy. Even though I made many plans such as going to the gym every day, riding a bicycle to go to work or running every week, I failed to persist in doing that. Until last year, I found a perfect activity—swimming.

Background: You know, as a kind of aerobics, it is not tiring and difficult. People can swim both indoor and outdoor no matter what the season is. There are mainly five kinds of swimming, but the only pattern that I know is breaststroke. In summer, I prefer to go to the beach with my friends to swim in the sea.

Reasons: As for why it can keep me fit, first, it is good for my lung and heart. I need to learn how to control my breath with an average speed. After a long term exercise, I will have a good vital capacity. What's more, it is good for my joints and muscles. The buoyance of the water will reduce my joint ache. My ankle which was hurt last year, made a recovery after swimming in the pool. It is also an effective way for me to keep away from the electronic devices. For some onshore exercises, I always want to use my mobile phone. So swimming can also increase my focus and concentration because the only thing I could do is to pay attention to my breath.

Conclusion: I would say swimming is beneficial for both our spirits and bodies. If you want to find one way to keep fit, I will definitely suggest you to try swimming at first.

考官点评

A good answer, but there are too many mistakes in the grammar for an 8 or 9 and although there are some good 'less common' words, there is no 'idiomatic language' to measure. Also, the Coherence could be better in Paragraph 2.

Some of the grammar mistakes are: 'do some exercises' should be 'do some exercise', 'Until last year' should just be 'Last year', 'indoor and outdoor' should be 'indoors and outdoors', and 'lung' should be 'lungs'. Also, I'm not clear what 'After a long term exercise, I will have a good vital capacity' means, maybe 'After exercising for a long time, it will increase my vitality'.

拓展练习

1. Describe an activity that you do in your school.

You should say:
- when and where you do
- what you like to do

- who you do it with
- and explain how you feel about it.

2. Describe a leisure activity near the sea.

You should say:
- what type of leisure activity it is
- who you would like to do with
- how you would enjoy this activity
- and explain why you like this activity.

3. Describe a positive change in your life.

You should say:
- what the change was
- when it happened
- how it happened
- and explain why it was a positive change.

4. Describe an event that changed your life in a good/positive way.

You should say:
- when it happened
- where it happened
- what the change was
- and explain how you have benefited from this change.

5. Describe a new skill you want to learn.

You should say:
- what it is
- why you think it is important
- how you are going to learn it
- and explain why you want to learn this skill.

激烈的排球赛

169

关于“你喜欢参加或喜欢看的运动”这一话题，可能很多考生会选择谈论乒乓球、篮球或足球，因为这在我们生活中接触或看到的更多一些，谈到篮球可能会提到NBA、CBA等，但一涉及“扣篮”“盖帽”“助攻”等这些专业词汇时就华丽丽地“挂了”！因此，如果不想给自己在Part 3部分提前挖坑的话，要么就谈论一个自己事先了解过的、确实熟知的体育运动（包括喜爱这项运动的人群、受欢迎程度等相关），要么可以考虑谈一项不太激烈的运动、词汇要求相对简单的，比如游泳、花滑等。下面这道题目我们以“沙滩排球”为例，来看看当排球赛的“吃瓜群众”是一种怎样的体验？

真题演练

Describe a sporting event you enjoyed watching.

You should say:
- what event it was

- what happened at this event
- who you watched it with
- and explain why you enjoyed watching this event.

考生范文

Opening Sentences: One of the most impressive sport games I've watched would be a beach volleyball match between two high school teams. It was in the last summer holiday when I took part in a summer camp in Australia. Before that, I had never been to watch volleyball, not to mention one at the seaside because it was not that widespread where I grew up. I had seen a basketball match before though and really enjoyed the atmosphere.

Background: I could still remember on that day my classmates and I were luckily sitting in the front row, quite close to the players who were all slender teenagers and respectively dressed in white and red shirts. More importantly, we could have a clear view of the net so we always knew where the ball was going and wouldn't miss any part of the match.

Reasons: The atmosphere was fairly lively even between sets as there were people dancing and loud music playing. During the match, the crowd cheered and clapped waving their flag once the team they supported got a score. The final set was especially close but in the end, the school with red flag won the match with three sets against zero. I still enjoyed the match even though I didn't support either team specifically. And since then, I have become interested in volleyball and would like to try it if I've got a chance. I guess one of the reasons why it's so fun is that it requires teammates to cooperate well with each other at a fast pace. It's nice to work in a team where team members cheer for one another during practice and in the game to give everyone the confidence to keep on trying to master and perfect the necessary skills to win. Also, it's a great workout. Say when you set, you must use arms, legs, and hands; when you block or attack, you need to jump or run. It's not only an effective way to burn calories but also to build muscular strength.

Conclusion: I wish I could learn how to play it immediately!

考官点评

A good answer. There's some good examples of 'less common' language and 'paraphrasing', but nothing in the form of 'idiomatic' language, therefore it would not reach an 8 in my view. Some of the phrases are also incorrect, such as '...respectively dressed' could maybe change to '...respectfully dressed.'

Grammatically, it again is good but with too many errors for an 8 or 9. These include, but are not limited to; '...impressive sport games' should be '...impressive sports' or '...impressive games', but not both. '...I had never been to watch' should change to '...I had never watched' and '...if I've got a chance' should be '...if I get a chance.'

拓展练习

1. Describe a sports event that you took part in or watched.

You should say:
- what the event was (or, what the sport was)
- where it was
- who was competing
- what you did during this competition
- and explain how you felt about this event.

2. Describe a sport game you've watched.

You should say:
- when you watched it
- where you watched this game
- who you watched it with
- and explain why you liked it.

3. Describe a competition you would like to take part in.

You should say:
- what the competition is
- what cost you would have to pay to take part in this competition
- how you would practice for it
- and explain why you would like to take part in it.

4. Describe a team you have been part of.

You should say:
- when this team was formed
- who was on the team
- what you did together
- and explain why you became part of the team.

极限运动的吸引力——跳伞

170

"运动类"话题是 Part 2 的一道"大热话题"。先前提到过，不管谈论哪种"你喜欢的或你想尝试的运动"，都必须了解该运动的相关知识，平时应注意多积累该运动相关的词汇、短语及该运动的好处（包括生理、心理或社交等方面都可）。另外，相比之前提到的这些常见运动，如游泳、滑冰等，眼下年轻人可能为了寻求刺激或释放压力，更想要尝试一些户外极限挑战，比如蹦极、跳伞、潜水等。接下来我们来看看，如何运用"高空跳伞"这项极限运动来对付雅思口语中各种"户外运动"相关话题。

真题演练

Describe a sport you would like to try for the first time.

You should say:
- what it is
- how you would learn it
- what equipment would need to play this sport
- and explain why you want to learn this sport.

考生范文

Opening Sentences: These days, one activity has triggered my interest. It is sky diving. Actually, most of my friends tried sky diving this summer break and they told me their exciting experience which attracts me a lot.

Background: They showed me their pictures taken in the high altitude. These pictures are so amazing. My friends told me that they were scared while the plane was flying up to altitude. They sang songs but they couldn't go to the open door and jump out of the hatch. Actually, I was the one who feared of high places but my friends told me that I would forget all the bad feeling when I see the sky and I promised that I would join their sky diving team next spring break.

I brought the leaflet that they brought back and I found it was not cheap because it would cost almost 5,000 yuan for just 30 minutes and because of its geographical limit, I need to buy a flight ticket to go somewhere clean and comely.

What's more, I want to buy the warm and comfortable sportswear which could make sure that I won't feel cold in such a high altitude place. And I also want to buy a GoPro, a kind of sports camera that could help me shoot all the scenery and also myself.

Reasons: Frankly speaking, I don't know whether I have the courage to jump through clouds and try this free falling. I can't even imagine. But I really want to take on the challengers and try my best to be brave. There are many things that I need to solve courageously in my life, so it is a good way to cultivate my courage. What's more, I think it could also help relieve all your bad emotions. My friends told me that when they flied in the sky, they have already forgotten all the things they had. When they landed, they felt they were reborn.

Conclusion: So currently, I am looking forward to trying this sport.

考官点评

A good answer with some good 'less common' vocabulary, but there's no 'idiomatic' language, or wouldn't be an 8 or 9. There are also some words that would be considered

wrong or inappropriate. Examples would be; '...help relieve all your bad emotions' could change to '...help remove negative emotions' and I'm not sure you can describe a country as 'comely'.

The grammar is generally good, but has too many errors to get the highest score. Some are quite small like, '...taken in the high altitude' should be '...taken in high altitude', whereas others are bigger, such as '...they flied in the sky' needs to change to '...they flew in the sky.'

拓展练习

1. Describe an activity that is a little expensive.

You should say:
- what it is
- how much it usually costs
- who you usually do it with
- and explain why you like to do this activity.

2. Describe an outdoor activity you did for the first time.

You should say:
- what did you do
- where and when you did it
- how you felt later
- and explain whether you would recommend this activity to your friends.

3. Describe an activity you did that was new and exciting.

You should say:
- what you did
- where and when you did this
- who you shared the activity with
- and explain why this activity was new and exciting for you.

4. Describe a new/an exciting activity that you want to try for the first time.

You should say:
- what it is
- where you can do it
- how you would do it
- and explain why you feel excited.

5. Describe an outdoor activity you like to do.

You should say:
- what this activity is
- when and where you do it
- when you started doing it
- and explain why you like it.

6. Describe something you want to do for a long time but you haven't done yet.

You should say:
- what it is
- why you would like to do it
- how easy or difficult it is to do it
- and explain why you haven't done it yet.

7. Describe a change you would like to make to your life in the future.

You should say:
- what change you would like to make
- when you would like to make this change
- what it looks like
- and explain why you would like to make this change.

第一次吃的食物

171

关于“第一次吃的食物”，与“特殊的一顿饭”话题类似，相对比较容易。第一次吃某种食物时总会因为不习惯而引起抗拒，比如第一次吃榴莲，有多少人第一次吃的时候觉得臭，吃着吃着反倒觉得香了，然后“一入坑深似海”。然而，我们这次要说的并不是榴莲哦……

真题演练

Describe an occasion when you ate a kind of food for the first time.

You should say:
- when you had it
- where you ate it
- what it was
- and explain why it was special/unforgettable.

考生范文

Opening Sentences: I'm going to talk about a time when I first tried sushi, a kind of traditional Japanese food. Today, it's become one of popular food all over the world and sushi bars can be seen in every corner of my city.

Background: I still remember the first time I had sushi was like at the age of 7 or so, when I was still a second-year student in primary school. During that summer holiday, both my parents happened to be able to make time for a 6-day trip to Japan. On the first day of the journey, we decided to try local food there so we chose to stay in a traditional Japanese restaurant for lunch. As we walked into the place, we could find it furnished in typical Japanese style. Decorations with sakura patterns, Japanese tunes as background music and the waitress in kimono, all of which created a fantastic atmosphere. After a couple of minutes of wait, the sushi was served. It looked well-prepared and exquisite with three pieces on a delicate plate. Actually, it was a rice ball with fresh sashimi or filet

on top. It served with wasabi and soy sauce, otherwise it would taste bland without any seasoning.

Reasons/Feelings: At the beginning, I found it a bit weird as it was really the first time I tried fish that was uncooked. It was so icy and raw with fishy smell. I was worried if I would have a stomache after eating it. But after I try a salmon one with a bit of soy sauce and mustard, it seemed that I came to get used to its savor and even kind of loved it.

I guess it was quite an unforgettable experience for a 7-year-old girl who could get the chance to try local food in a restaurant of traditional setting in a foreign country. Plus, trying something completely different from your country was just amazing.

Conclusion: Since then I have become a big fan of sushi. So when I went back to China, I asked my mother to take me to sushi bar once a week in the rest of the holiday.

考官点评

A good answer with some 'less common' vocabulary and 'paraphrasing', but little relating to 'idiomatic' language. Some of the phrases aren't complete, such as 'stomache' should be 'stomache ache' and '...get used to its savor' should be '...get used to its flavour.'

Grammatically, there are too many small errors to be considered for an 8 or 9. Examples would be; '...become one of popular food' rather than '...become one of the most popular food', '...chose to stay in' should be '...chose to go to,' '...we could find it' should be '...we found it' and '...waitress in kimono' needs to add 'a'—'...waitress in a kimono'. 'It served' needs to change to 'It was served' and lastly, '...who could get the chance' needs to be '...who got the chance.'

拓展练习

1. Describe a kind of foreign food you have had.

You should say:
- when you had it
- where you ate it
- what it was
- and explain how you felt about it.

2. Describe a special meal you were invited to.

You should say:
- when and where you were invited
- who invited you
- what you ate
- and explain how you felt about the meal.

3. Describe a dinner that you had with your friends.

You should say:
- when and where you had the dinner
- who you ate the dinner with
- what you ate
- and explain how you felt with this dinner.

4. Describe a food or meal (such as lunch or dinner) you would like to eat.

You should say:
- what you would eat
- where you would eat this meal
- who you would eat with
- and explain why you would choose to eat this food.

5. Describe a meal (or dish) that you like to eat.

You should say:
- what it is
- where you usually eat it
- what the meal is made of
- and explain why you like it.

6. Describe a meal you invited others to your home or restaurant.

You should say:
- who you invited
- where and when you ate this meal
- what you ate
- and explain why you invited the person to have a meal.

尬聊的经历

172

关于“第一次用外语跟人交流的经历”这个话题，可以描述第一次上外教课，第一次去国外玩问路、砍价，第一次订国外旅馆等等。可以想象，第一次用外语跟人交流难免会犯“尴尬”，有点不堪回首，但如果踏出了第一步，也许以后再也无所畏惧了。

真题演练

Describe the first time that you used a foreign language to communicate.

You should say:
- where and when it happened
- who you talked to
- what you talked about
- and how you felt about the conversation.

考生范文

Opening Sentences: To be honest, it is going to be a bit embarrassing to share the first time I used

another language for communication. I would blush whenever I talk about it.

Background: I remember it was in last March when sakura in Japan started to blossom. My boyfriend and I planned for a trip there to enjoy the beauty of flowers in full bloom. The second night in Kyoto we both got sick of ramen and decided to stay in a local grill for dinner.

When we reached the menu, we were like 'oh my god'! It was totally in Japanese and what was worse, there was no picture at all. We had no way to understand any of this but turn to the waiter for help. The waiter or maybe the shop owner was a middle-aged man. He came over and tried to explain the menu for us in English. However, it seemed he felt so uncomfortable to speak English and like most Japanese, he had a very strong accent which made us hard to understand what he said. Also, our English were incomprehensible for him too.

In that case, we had to communicate in Japanese. Though I learnt Japanese as my optional course in school, it was something that happened ages ago and I have forgotten most of the parts of the language. So, it was a bit difficult for me to express myself by sentence in a clear way. I was struggling to search words for types of meat and spoke slowly to make sure the grammar was generally correct so that the meaning could be delivered. Luckily and finally, he could understand my ugly and inexact expression and manage to take our order, only it took almost as long as 20 minutes to get it done.

Feelings: I had to admit that I had a mixed feeling about my first attempt to speak Japanese. On one hand, I felt a bit ashamed of myself for not being able to speak the language fluently and I kind of blamed myself for wasting others time and energy on taking my order. It was pretty awkward when I tried to describe something really hard but the listener was still reluctant to catch that. I simply didn't enjoy the feeling of exposing my weakness and incompetency. But on the other hand, I also felt pleased with myself for at least having tried. So no matter how terrible my attempt was, we still managed to communicate and I did get the meal I wanted. So literally speaking, I succeeded. I felt like I'd made a significant breakthrough.

I suppose it was an interesting experience as well. During our conversation, we might fail to understand each other only by speaking the language sometimes and in that case, nothing communicated more effectively than a wide smile and open body-language. It was a bit fun to guess what the other wanted to talk about and you would laugh at yourself when you got meaning terribly wrong. Also, watching someone expressed himself with exaggerating facial expressions and moves could be amusing too.

Conclusion: I would say this fresh experience meant a lot to me. I used my Japanese

language skills to speak with a native for the first in my adult life. To be honest, I had never talked to any Japanese before. It made me realised my incompetency in the language and motivated me to review the phrases and grammar for later use and at the same time, this communication success also gave me the courage to speak a foreign language in an unfamiliar environment in the future.

考官点评

This answer is too long. At around 600 words, it would take about 5 minutes to say. This isn't necessarily a problem as the examiner will stop the candidate after 2 minutes and measure what was actually spoken. Marks wouldn't be lost because of length.

A good answer with some good 'less common' vocab used but little in the way of 'collocations' and 'paraphrasing', so it would not reach an 8 or 9. Grammatically speaking, there are too many errors to reach an 8 or 9. Some, but not all, of these errors are: 'I would blush...' needs to change to 'I blush...', '...was no picture' to '...were no pictures', '...had no way to' to '...had no other way to' and '...explain the menu for us' to '...explain the menu to us'. Another error in the first half is 'our English were...' should be 'our English was...'.

拓展练习

1. Describe an interesting conversation you had with other people.

You should say:
- who the person was
- where and when you talked with the person
- what you talked about with the person
- and explain why it was interesting.

2. Describe an interesting conversation you had with someone you didn't know.

You should say:
- who the person was
- where the conversation took place
- what you talked about
- and explain why you found the conversation interesting.

3. Describe an important conversation that influenced you.

You should say:
- when this happened
- who you were talking with
- what you talked about
- and how this conversation influenced you.

4. Describe a success in your life.

You should say:
- when and where this happened
- who you were with
- what you did
- and how you felt about this success.

神秘的西藏之行

173

关于“一次有教育意义的旅行”这个话题，重点在于“educational”，即到了这个地方之后，我们看到了什么新的景点、新的建筑，接触了什么新的事物，如饮食文化、宗教文化、生活和风俗习惯等，这些对我们的认识产生了不同程度的影响。同时，描述一次旅行，这个素材依然可以套用到“一个未来想去的地方”“一档你喜欢的电视节目”“一项无关工作和学习的未来计划”等其他话题上。接下来我们以“拉萨之旅”为例，看看怎么解决上述这一系列相关话题。

真题演练

Describe an educational trip you went on.

You should say:
- when and where you went
- who you went with
- what you did
- and explain what you learnt on this trip.

考生范文

Opening Sentence: Last year, I went to the beautiful Tibet Autonomous Region which is located in the southwest of China.

Background: The region has an average elevation of more than 4,000 metres. So it has a name ‘the Roof of the World.’ Close to Himalayas, it is a mysterious, exotic place to many outsiders.

I chose to go to Tibet because I knew it has the highest happiness index among different provinces in China. I was curious about why this remote place has such a high quality life, so I went Lhasa by myself for 5 days to experience the life.

The first place I visited was the Potala Palace which is considered to be the model of Tibetan architecture. It was first constructed as a palace by Tibetan King Songtsen Gampo to merry with his princess from Tang Dynasty. But now, it gradually becomes a place where Dalai Lama lives and works, and a place to store the Buddhist Scriptures. After my trip to the Potala Place, I tried a traditional Tibetan food—Tibet buttered tea. In fact, it is a necessary food in Tibetans’ daily life. When I walked into a restaurant, the host invited me and

filled my cup with buttered tea. You know, it was really cheap, only 5 yuan for a whole bottle, and most of the time, the hostess provided me free drink.

On the second day, I went to Jokhang Temple, the spiritual centre of Tibet. I was shocked that pilgrims coming from every corner of Tibet will trek a long distance to the temple. Some devout believers bow down in front of the bluestone floor. They want to show their pieties to the Buddha.

Reasons: I learnt the Buddhist culture in Lhasa and I also learnt how Buddhist culture teach these devout Tibetans to be a good person and to cherish what they have now. I guess that's the reason why they are easy to feel happy and contented. The old man I met in the Jokhang Temple told me that he didn't care about the money. He was grateful to what he had.

I had to admit that this was an impressive vacation. I learnt too many things from this trip, among which the most important one I learnt is that content is happiness, and I should be thankful to all my family members.

Conclusion: It is really a good way to be a happy person.

考官点评

The first thing I would say is that the answer is a little long and would take longer than 2 minutes to speak.

There is some good 'less common' vocabulary, but little in the respect of 'collocations', 'idiomatic' language and 'paraphrasing'.

With regards to the Grammar, '...to merry with his princess from Tang Dynasty' is incorrect. '...to marry a princess from the Tang Dynasty' would be correct. Another error is 'I learnt the Buddhist culture.' This would need to add 'about'—'I learnt about the Buddhist culture.' Lastly, '...was grateful to what he had' should change to '...was grateful of what he had', '...I learnt too many things' should be '...I learnt so many things' and '...that content is happiness' needs to change to '...that contentment is happiness.'

拓展练习

1. Describe a short vacation that you were impressed.

You should say:
- where you went
- who you went with
- what you did
- and explain why this was an impressive vacation.

2. Describe a place you visited to learn another culture.

You should say:
- where you went

- what you've learnt
- how you learnt it
- and explain how you felt about the culture.

3. Describe a long journey/short trips you would like to make again.

You should say:
- where you went
- who you went with
- what you did during the trip
- and explain why you would like to make the trip again.

4. Describe a long journey that you enjoyed.

You should say:
- where and when you went
- how you got there
- how long it took you
- who you went with
- and explain what you liked about this trip.

5. Describe a situation when you had to be polite.

You should say:
- what situation it was
- when it was
- what happened
- and explain why you had to be polite.

6. Describe a plan (that is not related to work or study) in your life.

You should say:
- what it is
- when you made the plan
- how you will carry out the plan
- and explain why you made this plan and how you will feel after you achieve it.

骑行之旅

174

关于“骑行之旅”这个话题，回答时注意两个关键：一个是所用的交通工具——自行车；一个是整个旅程的所见所闻所感。接下来，我们用一次迷失于山路中的骑行之旅让大家看看怎样解决此类问题。

真题演练

Describe a trip you had by bike.

You should say:
- when and where you had the trip
- who you went with

- why you had the trip by bike
- and how you felt about it.

考生范文

Opening Sentence: I'm going to talk about my first mountain biking experience, which was one of the most impressive experiences in my life.

Background: I still remember when one of my friends suggested a bike tour, I thought it was a fresh and interesting idea. It was something I had never tried and I was so excited that I could vividly imagine that I could set off and stop whenever I want without worrying parking and explore routes where we could enjoy the spectacular views only by cycling. However, I don't have a bike of my own and that's why Mobike came to my mind. It's a kind of sharing bikes, which has hit the streets of urban China recently. It's easy and affordable to use. Once you install the related smart phone app, you can use it to locate the bikes and unlock them. It only costs you one yuan for an hour's ride only if you pay for hundreds yuan for deposit before you use it.

So on the little coloured public bike, I went for a long casual ride with Jerry in a park we visited several times before but were still not that familiar with. We downloaded a map of the park onto my smart phone and hit the trailhead around 3 p.m., estimating it would allow us to do some exploring during about 3 hours of daylight. However, the trails of the park were more complicated than we thought as it involved quite a large mountainous area. After two-and-a-half hours of riding, we found ourselves not only exhausted but completely lost.

Reasons/Feelings: Panic and fear started to set in when we realised that daylight was starting to fade and I had no cell phone reception or clue as to my location. We were so helpless and began to picture how we ended up starving to die or getting attacked by some wild animals and our body was found days later. The only consolation was that I could still have my friend's company instead of being alone in such a horrible situation. As we struggled to find our way back, night fell and there was no moon light. In darkness, we hardly rode our bikes and even found it difficult to see where we were walking, which was something we had never experienced before. Luckily, our phone still got some battery left so we could backtrack using them as night lights. At last, thank goodness we came upon a state park trail marker and followed it in the direction we had seen the sun set, which was in the direction of where we set off. Then we go back on the trail we were familiar with and eventually got out at 9 p.m. What a relief!

Conclusion: It was supposed to be a enjoyable casual ride, but it turned out to be scary and exhausting. Hopefully I won't experience something like this again in the future.

考官点评

Firstly, I'd say that this answer would take much longer than 2 minutes to speak, but this wouldn't negatively affect the score.

Looking at the Lexical Resource element, there are some good 'less common' words and 'paraphrasing', but little in the respect of 'idiomatic' language. There are also some word choice errors like; '...starving to die' should be 'starving to death'.

Looking at the Grammar, there are some areas with quite large errors; '...how we ended up' should be '...how we might end up' and '...our body was found days later' should be '...our bodies were found after a few days.' Other small errors would be '...clue as to my location' should really be '...clue as to our location' and '...Then we go back' should be '...Then we went back' and lastly '...supposed to be a enjoyable' should be '...supposed to be an enjoyable.' With this amount of errors I don't think it would receive an 8 or 9.

拓展练习

1. Describe your favourite means of transport.

You should say:
- what it is
- when and how often you use it
- how it is
- and explain why you like it very much.

2. Describe a time when you got lost.

You should say:
- when it happened
- where it happened
- how old you were
- and explain how you felt when you got lost.

自驾车去冰岛看极光

175

同样是关于“旅程”的话题，但这次多了关键词“long”和“car”，因此这必须是一次汽车长途旅行。再者，在路上免不了边走边看各种自然风光，因此这个素材还可用在“一次看天空的经历”、“一次愉快的乡村经历”等题目当中。接下来，我们以“冰岛自驾游”为例，看看怎样解决此类话题。许多人想去冰岛旅行一睹自然界的奇迹——梦幻北极光，租一辆野营车前往更是能让你最大限度地探索和追寻那神秘的华彩……

真题演练

Describe a long car journey you went on.

You should say:
- where you went

- what you did at this place
- who you went there with
- and explain why you went on that journey by car.

考生范文

Opening Sentence: One of the most impressive car trips to me is definitely the self-drive tour to Iceland with my roommate.

Background: I still remember it was at the end of October and early November two years ago when we rent a campervan and drove along the Ring Road, which is the most epic choice for road trip in Iceland as it encircles the entire country. It took us about one and a half week with stops on along the way where we could be exposed to picturesque countryside view. There was nothing better than driving past bubbling geothermal springs, sparkling rainbows, beautiful horses, tumultuous waterfalls and rugged mountains day after day. And we had to keep an eye on the road especially at night because a herd of sheep and reindeer could suddenly cross our path without warning, which was also a fun experience. But what impressed me most was the hunt for northern lights. You know, Iceland is one of the best places in the world to see these colourful lights dancing in the night sky. We searched for the northern lights every evening and lucked out with four nights of strong aurora activity and clear skies. It was like a magic that when you looked up, you found the dark sky was covered by the mysterious dancing green glows, which couldn't be more spectacular. Sometimes the colour wouldn't be such bright and made it easy to miss. The weak version of northern lights looked grey to the naked eye, much like wispy clouds or fog moving in the wind.

Reasons/Feelings: Although there were bus tours that drove the route, we went for travelling by car for some benefits. Firstly, we could enjoy the freedom and flexibility that self drive tours offer where we could manage time as we saw fit and explore Iceland in our own way. Also, we were able to spend some nights in the countryside and possibly have better chance seeing the northern lights. It gave us the freedom to stay out all night or move locations on a whim. Most importantly, my van was equipped with what we need for living, from a fold-down bed, sink with running water, electric cooler to gas grill and battery powered heating system, so it covered our accommodation too, enabling us to pull over and sleep pretty much anywhere. And it thus could maximise our time exploring and photographing landscapes as well.

Conclusion: Anyway, it has been one of the most unforgettable adventures in my life and I surely would recommend it to others who would like to try their lucks to track

down the northern lights.

考官点评

This answer is too long. At around 440 words would take about 3 minutes to get through and the examiner would stop the candidate before the end.

It's an excellent answer though with good 'less common' language, 'collocations'— 'lucked out', 'paraphrasing' and some 'idiomatic' language. I think this would easily hit the top scores.

Grammatically, it's not quite as good. Although the errors are small, there are quite a few of them, such as; '...two years ago when we rent a' should be '...two years ago when we rented a', 'most epic choice for road trip...' needs to add an 'a'— '...most epic choice for a road trip', '...one and a half week' should be '...one and a half weeks', '...picturesque countryside view' needs to be 'views'— '...picturesque countryside views' and '...hunt for northern lights' needs to be '...hunt for the northern lights' and '...colour wouldn't be such bright' changes to '...colour wouldn't be so bright.' Lastly, '...try their lucks' should be '...try their luck.' This means that I don't believe the top scores would be given.

拓展练习

1. Describe a time you watched the sky.

You should say:
- when this happened
- who you were with
- what you saw
- and explain how you felt when you watching the sky.

2. Describe a long car journey you went on.

You should say:
- where you went
- what you did at this place
- who you went there with
- and explain why you went on that journey by car.

3. Describe a bicycle/motorbike/car trip that is interesting.

You should say:
- where you would like to go
- how you would like to go there
- who you would like to go with
- and explain why you would like to go there by car, motorbike or bike.

4. Describe a long journey/short trips you would like to make again.

You should say:
- where you went
- who you went with

- what you did during the trip
- and explain why you would like to make the trip again.

和小孩待在一起的时光

176

关于“被小孩逗笑的时刻”这个话题，关键词为“小孩”“被逗笑”，其中“小孩”可能是“新搬来的邻居”，你跟他（或她）有一段单独相处的经历，让你觉得无比欢乐，因为他（或她）时不时会做一些让人哭笑不得的“蠢事”……

真题演练

Describe a time that a child did something that made you laugh.

You should say:
- who the child was
- when this happened
- what the child did
- and explain why it was funny.

考生范文

Opening Sentence: I'm going to describe a hilarious experience with my neighbour Sam, a 9-year-old boy, whose family has moved to our neighbourhood for a year or so.

Background: We haven't got a lot of chance to play and talk but whenever I meet him, I can't help thinking of the time we spent together last week. I was asked to keep an eye on Sam for a day because both his parents were out for business.

Reasons: At the beginning, everything was fine. I mean, Sam acted as other well-behaved school boys working on his homework by his desk. I was glad he was not a troublemaker as I expected. An hour later, however, I found him not in the living room and there came the music from somewhere. I searched him by the music and when I found him in his mother's bedroom, I was shocked! What I saw was really surprising and amusing! Guess what? Sam was in his mother's floral dress and high heels, putting on his mother's makeups! When he realised I was watching, he didn't fell shy at all and continued his business. He was trying so hard to draw dark eyelines and coloured his lips red. At the same time, he was dancing to the beats of the music from his ipad. It was Lady GaGa's 'Bad Romance' and I finally realised that he was doing an impression of Lady GaGa. I could not help laughing and it took a while for me to stop. It was extremely funny to see a boy play a female star featuring flamboyant and unconventional look. His face was with heavy foundation and lipstick, his outfit didn't fit him and his exaggerating dance moves made me think it would be so classic that I had to capture this moment at once.

Conclusion: Though I had a lot of fun with Sam, it took me such a long time to remove the makeup completely. Anyway, this guy has got talents.

考官点评

A good answer. There is some good 'less common' language as well as some 'collocations' and 'paraphrasing', however there's no 'idiomatic' language that's required for a score of 7 and up.

Grammatically, there are too many small errors for the higher scores. Some, but not all, of the errors are; '...family has moved to our...' should be '...family moved to our...', '...for a year or so' to '...a year or so ago', 'We haven't got a...' to 'We didn't have a...' , 'a lot of chance...' to 'a lot of chances...' and 'well-behaved school boys...' should be 'well-behaved school boys do...'.

拓展练习

1. Describe a person that just moved home.

You should say:
- when and where this person moved
- how you know this person
- what this person is like
- and explain how you feel about this person.

2. Describe an experience you spend your time with a child.

You should say:
- when you spent time with this child
- who this child was
- what you did together
- and explain how you felt about it.

3. Describe an interesting neighbour.

You should say:
- who this person is
- how you know this person
- what this person likes to do
- and explain why you think this neighbour is interesting.

4. Describe something that made you laugh.

You should say:
- what it was
- when it was
- what happened
- and explain why you laughed.

5. Describe a recent event that made you happy.

You should say:
- when and where it was
- who was involved
- what happened
- and explain why it made you happy.

转学的体验

177

“搬家或转学的经历”这一话题难度相对较低。毕竟转学或者搬家应该是每个人都有过的经历。虽然题目中给了两个选项，但其考查的本质是一致的，都是描述脱离熟悉的旧环境，进入新环境。搬家和转学的原因相辅相成，转学可以是因为换了住所，搬家也可以是因为换了新学校。至于面对一个全新的环境时内心的感受，大概是既充满期待又有点担忧和恐惧吧？

真题演练

Describe a time you moved to a new home or school.

You should say:
- when you moved
- where you moved
- why you moved
- and explain how you felt about moving.

考生范文

Opening Sentence: I'm going to talk about a time when I moved to a boarding high school in another city.

Background: It took place 6 years ago when I was still a second-year student. It is said that the new school offered a better learning atmosphere with a better reputation. But that was not exactly the reason why I wanted to transfer there. The fact was, the school bullying in my former high school was so serious, which terribly bothered my study and life, that I would like to study elsewhere to get rid of this.

Feelings/Reasons: I still remember how I felt back then, especially the first day in the new school. On one hand, I was kind of excited and quite looking forward to it. As you know, I was going to meet new people and study in a brand new environment. There were many interesting clubs and activities that I've never tried before waiting ahead of me. I couldn't wait to experience them one by one. But at the same time, I felt a bit nervous and worried. I was not sure if I could get used to the new lessons, new school rule and even the new canteen. And I was afraid I couldn't get on well with the new classmates and stayed lonely in the following three years. What's more, it was the first time for me to stay that far away from

my house. I could only go home at the weekend, which made me feel a bit homesick. So in the first week, I called my mother on a daily basis to get some comfort. However, then I found there was no point in worrying because I was such an outgoing person. I got myself adapted to the new school soon.

Conclusion: Sometimes when I look back, I'm kind of glad about experiencing a change like that in my life.

考官点评

A good answer with some good 'paraphrasing' and 'less common' language. There isn't any 'idiomatic' language though and there're some words being used incorrectly, for example, 'terribly bothered' don't go together, 'really bothered' would be better, or even 'bothered me terribly'. Another example would be '...to get rid of this.' This could be changed to '...to avoid it.'

Grammatically, it's excellent with only two small errors; 'It is said that the new school...' should be 'It was said that the new school...' and '...new school rule' should be '...new school rules.' This element I believe would deserve an 8.

拓展练习

1. Describe your first day of school/course/job.

You should say:
- when it happened
- where it happened
- what happened
- and explain how you felt during that day.

2. Describe a time when you stayed far away from your home.

You should say:
- when and where it was
- how long you stayed there
- why you stayed there and what you did there
- and explain how you felt about staying far away from home.

3. Describe a recent change of you.

You should say:
- what it was
- when this change happened
- what you did for the change
- and explain how you felt about it.

忙碌的高考

178

不管你是学生，还是已经出来工作的人，都不可避免地经历过高考。高考对于中国学生来说绝对是一段难忘的经历，起早贪黑地忙着复习和刷题，手机等一切电子设备可能会被爸妈全部没收，甚至有些住校的学生每天只能“三点一线”。也许那段时间会异常忙碌，也许情绪会十分压抑，但当中不乏追求梦想的亢奋和不断进步的成就感……我们来看看怎么用这段经历来对付关于“忙碌”的题目。

真题演练

Describe a time when you were very busy.

You should say:
- when this time was
- what you did at this time
- how you arranged your time
- and explain how you felt during this busy time.

考生范文

Opening Sentence: I guess one of the busiest time in my life would definitely be the last year in high school when I was preparing for the college entrance exam, known as Gaokao in Chinese.

Background: As you know, it's an extremely essential test for high school students as it determines whether they can get into their dream university, kind of a watershed of their life destination. I can vividly remember, though it was a few year ago, that how hard I studied for a whole year. I mean, I was working till midnight and getting up early every morning. Sometimes it was much earlier than the time when the classroom or library was open so I had to wait outside, leaning on the wall and reading with the help of the street lamp. It was like, I spent all my time practicing and reviewing materials for all subjects except for eating, going to the toilet and sleeping. I barely had time and chance to surf the net or watch online funny videos as parents took my smart phone away in case that I got distracted. They knew I was not that self-disciplined, if I kept my phone with me, I couldn't help checking it or playing on it all the time. And once I used it, I would get addicted to it and hardly stop. I had to admit that after they kept my phone away from me, I could indeed better focus on my study. Basically my family and I tried whatever we could to help me get a good score in Gaokao. Those days were suffering, but once I made even little progress, I would have a sense of achievement and feel motivated to keep going.

Feelings: I still remember what it was like when we were waiting for the result at the

end of June when the tests had been graded and the results came to release region by region. I was furiously dialing telephone hot lines with family members around the home computer. It was really a nail-bitter, just like a wait for a winning lottery number. I felt extremely nervous but at the same time, a bit looking forward to it as I wanted to know if I could have a score high enough for my dream university. Once I got myself informed that I did quite a good job in the exam, I jumped and almost cried for joy. What a relief to know all of my hard work paid off!

Conclusion: Anyway, some critics would consider Gaokao cruel and unreasonable with a score that kind of determines students' future, I think it's beneficial to students though. I mean ,the entire preparation as part of the life journey is a good and valuable experience for a teenager. It was the first time in my life when I realised that I needed to work really hard to get what I wanted. And one can actually get out of what he/she puts into it.

考官点评

Again, here I think the answer is too long. At very nearly 500 words, only about half of it would be spoken in 2 minutes.

Overall though, a good answer with some good 'less common' as well as 'idiomatic' language that I think could deserve an 8. The grammar, however, I don't think would reach that level. Some of the errors include; '...one of the busiest time' should be '...one of the busiest times', '...though it was a few year ago' needs to change to '...though it was a few years ago' and in the same sentence; '...that how hard I studied for a whole year' should be 'how hard I studied for a whole year.'

The sentence 'I spent all my time practicing and reviewing materials for all subjects except for eating, going to the toilet and sleeping' has a meaning of eating, going to the toilet and sleeping in part of the course, it would be better phrased as 'I spent all my time practicing and reviewing materials for all subjects except for when I need to go to the toilet, eat or sleep.'

The last example I will mention is that 'Those days were suffering.' could improve by saying 'I suffered during those days.'

拓展练习

1. Describe an experience that you were not allowed to use your mobile phone.

You should say: ⑨ when it happened

⑩ where you were

- what you did there
- and explain why using mobile phone there was not allowed.

2. Describe a time you got up extremely early.

You should say:
- when it was
- what time you got up
- how you feel when you got up
- and explain why you got up early.

3. Describe a time you arrived early.

You should say:
- when it was
- where you went
- why you arrived early
- and explain what you were doing while waiting.

4. Describe an age/stage you enjoyed mostly in your life.

You should say:
- what the age/stage was
- what did you like to do back then
- who you enjoyed mostly back then
- and explain why you really like that age/stage.

5. Describe a positive experience that you had as a teenager.

You should say:
- what the positive experience was
- where you were
- who you were with
- and explain why you found the experience positive.

6. Describe a time you had to wait for something special to happen.

You should say:
- when it was
- what it was
- what you did
- and explain why you had to wait.

新航道男神课堂

179

关于“你想要学习的一门课程”这一话题，涉及的核心名词可能是 class or lesson、course、subject 等。考生可以选择说学习某门专业课程，如语言类课程，可以说一门生活技能，如烹饪课、烘焙课，可以说一门健身课程，如瑜伽课、跑步课，甚至还可以说一种教求生技能等的课程。同时，关于这种教育相关的话题，在 Part 3 部分常见的拓展题目可能涉及老师品质的考查、教育模式和方式的对比等等，平时要注意积累相关的素材。接下来，我们来看看如何运用“语言课”来破解所有“语言类”相关话题。

真题演练

Describe a course you learnt at school, university or evening class.

You should say:
- what the course was
- what you did at school, university or evening class
- who taught the course
- and explain what you learnt from the course.

考生范文

Opening Sentence: I learnt English course at New Channel School which is located in the centre of my city.

Background: As I live quite far away from city, so normally it takes me about 30 minutes to get there by bus. The environment of this school is really awesome, and the classroom is spacious and well-lit. I can even see a big flower garden through the big glass windows.

As I wanted to apply some really top universities either in the UK, Canada or Australia. The requirements of the English skill for some top universities are very high, however, my English was not that good, especially my English speaking skill, so I desperately wanted to improve it and get a high score during the IELTS exam. I took 4 classes every weekend which include speaking, listening, writing and reading sessions. I decided to join a class of 8 people, as I do believe I would have more chances to interact with all my classmates and teachers.

There were 4 different teachers who took in charge of different sessions, but the one who really left deep expression to me is Eric who taught me IELTS Speaking. Eric is around 30 years old with a small figure and he looks far away younger than his age. He likes to wear a white shirt with a pair of sneakers. Apart from that, he is extremely patient to us.

Feelings: Personally speaking, I've not only learnt how to prepare IELTS from this course, but also gained so much confidence. Take the speaking class for example, you know, I was so afraid of speaking English in front of other people. Eric asked us to retell a joke in English in front of class every day before the class begins, so our class was always full of laughter. On top of this, Eric is so passionate about teaching English that I adopted this passion from him and I like to read and speak English everyday now.

Conclusion: I really enjoyed the class in New Channel; I would like to recommend my friends to study English there.

考官点评

A good answer, with some good vocabulary, including some 'less common' language. However, there are no 'idiomatic' terms used, so it wouldn't be good enough for an 8.

Grammatically, again, it's not an 8. There are too many mistakes to get this score. For example; '...learnt English course' should be '...learnt an English course'. 'As..., so normally it takes me about 30 minutes to get there by bus.' needs to change to 'As..., it normally takes me about 30 minutes to get there by bus.' and 'As I wanted to apply some really top universities either in the UK, Canada or Australia. The requirements...' could change to 'I wanted to apply some really top universities either in the UK, Canada or Australia, but the requirements...'. Also, '...he looks far away younger than his age' would need to change to '...he looks far younger.'

拓展练习

1. Describe something that you want to learn more.

You should say:
- what it is
- where you can learn it
- how to learn it
- and explain why you want to keep learning it.

2. Describe a subject you didn't like before but have interest in now.

You should say:
- what it was
- when you studied the subject
- why you didn't like it before
- and explain why you have interest in it now.

3. Describe a class or training session that you enjoyed.

You should say:
- what the teacher (and the students) did
- when and where you had this class
- what you learnt in this class or training session
- and explain why you enjoyed it.

4. Describe an English lesson you had.

You should say:
- what the lesson was about
- where you studied it
- when you studied it
- and explain why you studied this lesson.

5. Describe a course that you want to learn.

You should say:
- what this course is

- when you want to learn it
- where you can learn it
- and explain why you want to learn it.

6. Describe something you did to help learning another language.

You should say:
- what you did
- where and when you did it
- who you did it with
- and explain why it was helpful.

7. Describe a positive change in your life.

You should say:
- what the change was
- when it happened
- how it happened
- and explain why it was a positive change.

困难的抉择

180

关于“decision”类的话题看似很难很抽象，但只要回归生活的细节，一切将迎刃而解。别人做的决定我们不同意也是常有的事。这个“别人”可以是朋友、家人又或者学校。比如，对于每个准备出国留学的同学来说，也许都会面对这样的难题：选学校到底看排名还是看专业？当你的想法和家人不一致的时候，又该如何抉择呢？这里我们以“不认同的家人的决定”为例，看看如何解决相关话题。

真题演练

Describe a decision made by others that you disagreed with.

You should say:
- what the decision was
- how it was made
- what you disagreed with
- and explain why you disagreed with it.

考生范文

Opening Sentence: I would like to talk about a time when I had a hard time making an essential decision.

Background: It was about one year ago when I made up my mind to study abroad for the master's degree and had to decide which university and major I was supposed to apply for. I found it was kind of difficult especially when I found my parents had different opinions from mine. It seemed that they paid more attention to the reputation of the university than the major I chose to study so they preferred

a university which ranked top in the chart even if I didn't like the major. They thought a well-known university was more likely to ensure me a well-paid job. By contrast, I was concerned more about whether the program suited me or not. I was quite confused back then and didn't know what to do until I met Jason, my cousin who is 3 years older than me and just finished his master's degree in London. I didn't expect he would show up in a wedding of our relatives as I thought he was supposed to be overseas at that time. It had been such a long time before we saw each other that we went for a walk in a park nearby after the wedding banquet to have a proper chat.

Reasons: After a couple minutes of catch-up, he noticed I was a bit not myself and asked if things didn't go well for me. So I told him all I was confused about. To my surprise, he held views against my parents and suggested me following my heart when I chose where to study in the following years. He advised me to pick a school with the major I was interested in. He stressed that interest was the best teacher so if I chose things I didn't like, I wouldn't be willing to spend time and effort on it and surely I couldn't have in-depth thinking about it, not to mention gain achievements. In that case, even if my exceptional university background could get me through the first round of interview, I couldn't survive the next round which involved more expertise or profound discussion. That sounded really plausible that it soon dispelled away all of my worries and problems. I felt enlightened and showed my appreciation to Tom, who showed up in time to help. It has been the most meaningful long walk so far, which lasted for three hours but worth the time.

Conclusion: Thanks to his suggestion, I chose my university based on my preference in major and it turned out to be a wise decision. As now, I am in the company I like doing the job I desire, which sounds ideal for many. If I had listened to my parents instead of my heart, I wouldn't have devoted myself into what I studied and things could be so much different.

考官点评

This answer is again too long. At nearly 500 words, it would take more than 3 minutes to say. Like previously, this wouldn't reduce the score. The examiner would simply stop and mark to the point after 2 minutes elapse.

Overall, a good answer. There is good Coherence and some good 'less common' words and some good 'collocations'—'well-paid' and 'catch up' as well as 'paraphrasing'. It would need some more 'idiomatic' language to reach the top level scores though.

The grammar has some mistakes, for instance; '...study abroad for the master's

degree' should be '...study abroad for a master's degree', '...major I chose to study' needs to change to '...major I wanted to choose to study', '...ensure me a well-paid job' would be better as '...ensure a well-paid job', '...such a long time before we saw each other' should be '...such a long time we hadn't seen each other', '...suggested me following' should change to '...suggested I follow' and '...when I chose where to study' needs to be '...when I choose where to study.' Furthermore, '...have in-depth thinking about it' would need to be '...have in-depth thought about it', '...sounded really plausible' should be '...sounded so plausible', '...dispelled away all' should change to '...dispelled all' and lastly, '...three hours but worth the time' should be '...three hours but was worth the time.' There are too many errors here for the very high scores.

A final small note is that the name at the beginning was Jason, then it became Tom. Names should remain consistent, otherwise the examiner might feel you've memorised the answer and are just throwing names in where needed.

拓展练习

1. Describe a difficult decision you once made and proven to be right in the end.

You should say:
- when you made the decision
- what the decision was
- who was with you
- and explain why you had a deep impression on this decision.

2. Describe a long walk you ever had.

You should say:
- when this happened
- where you walked
- who you were with
- and explain how you felt about the walk.

3. Describe a situation when you received some useful advice.

You should say:
- what the situation was
- who gave you the advice
- what the advice was
- and explain how this advice was useful to you.

4. Describe an important conversation that influenced you.

You should say:
- when this happened
- who you were talking with
- what you talked about
- and explain how this conversation influenced you.

乐于助人的经历

181

很多人都有过这样的经历：路上遇到一脸无助、衣衫褴褛的陌生人问你能不能给点零钱让他坐车回家。很多人对这种行为见惯不惯，马上摇头摆手转身离去，因为他们认为这是骗人的套路。然而在国外留学期间，笔者遇到同样情况时，却给出了和大家完全不同的反应……

真题演练

Describe an occasion when you helped a person.

You should say:
- who you helped
- what you did to help this person
- what was the result
- and explain why you wanted to help this person.

考生范文

Opening Sentence: I'm going to talk about a time when I gave someone a hand.

Background: It happened like three years ago when I was invited to Britain as an exchange student. Once, my roommate and I just finished shopping and we were ready to walk out of Waitrose. Suddenly, a girl in her twenties came to stop us from moving forward and turned to us for help. She asked if we could give her 3 pounds for bus to home. And she then explained that she just argued with her boyfriend and ended up jumping off the bus angrily with her purse left in her boyfriend's jacket.

Reasons: I took a glance at my roommate to ask for her opinion. She felt reluctant to help and wanted to leave immediately. As you know, it could be a trick of getting money by using our sympathy and compassion. But I looked into the stranger's eyes. She looked so helpless and I could even imagine how many times she was refused by others and how frustrated she had been. So in the end, I decided to believe what she said and did her a favor. However, both my roommate and I didn't carry any cash so I had to walk back into the supermarket to buy something with my debit card and asked for some cash back. The girl received the money and expressed her thanks to us cheerfully. I felt pleased for being friendly and helpful and I hoped someone would do the same to me when I was in need.

Conclusion: Sometimes when I share the story with others, they may laugh at my response because like my roommate, they tend to believe the girl just pretended to be powerless to cheat on strangers. Anyway, what I gave out was no more than 3 pounds and if it could help someone out of trouble, it was worth spending.

考官点评

A good answer. There are quite a few 'less common' words and 'collocations' like 'cash back' and 'jumping off', but not very much in 'paraphrasing' or 'idiomatic' language.

Grammatically, it's good but with a few errors. For example, '...came to stop us from moving forward' would be better as '...approached us and stopped us from moving forward', '...with her purse left' could change to '...leaving her purse', '...asked for some cash back' should be '...get some cash back' and 'The girl received the money and...' would be better as ' When we gave her the money she...'.

拓展练习

1. Describe an interesting or unusual thing you did recently (in your free time).

You should say:
- what you did
- when and where you did it
- who you did it with
- and explain why you think it was interesting or unusual.

2. Describe a time that you and your friend had a disagreement.

You should say:
- when this happened
- who you disagreed with
- what you and your friend argued about
- and explain if you two solved the disagreement in the end.

一次由堵车引起的失约

182

关于描述“你不得不等待的经历”这一话题，考生可以选择描述“堵车”“等待某人手术”“医院挂号”“银行排队”等各种你能想到的关于“不得不等待”的场景。同时，这一系列等待可能会产生一些后果，以“堵车”为例，比如“因为堵车你可能错过了某一次重要的面试或约会迟到”“因为堵车可能要错过一次重要的约会令你十分生气”“因为你选择了错误的交通方式，这种错误的决定导致了某种局面”等等。可见，“堵车”是一个非常实用的素材，一切的不快可能都是由于“堵车”哦！

真题演练

Describe a time when you had to wait in a traffic jam/congestion.

You should say:
- when it happened
- where it happened
- how you passed the time while waiting
- and explain how you felt when you were in that traffic jam.

考生范文

Opening Sentence: I'd like to describe a time when I could do nothing but wait in a traffic jam.

Background: I still remember that it was a Friday last year when I was on my way to a company for a job interview. I was totally keen on that job and I really hoped I could make it. At first, I wanted to get there by metro but it was too crowded for me to squeeze myself into the carriage twice. So I decided to take a taxi instead, which was a choice that made me regret for. To be more specific, I found myself getting stuck in a serious traffic jam then. It was in the rush hour! How could I forget it? What was worse, it seemed there was a severe traffic accident ahead the road. The traffic was bumper-to-bumper and we couldn't get any further.

Feelings/Reasons: I checked the time on my watch over and over again, feeling extremely anxious because I knew it was impossible for me to make it. I wish I could jump out of the car and rush to the interview venue, but actually, there was nothing I could do to change the situation. The only thing I could do was to wait. As you could imagine, I end up being more than 1 hour's late for the interview, which made me miss the opportunity to apply for my ideal job. I was disappointed for that with no doubt. I had prepared a lot for it, it's like, I devoted 3 hours each day to practising the possible interview questions and working on how to make myself stand out from the crowd, but in the end, I had no chance to present what I got. As well as that, I was angry with myself for making a wrong decision. If I had stuck to the choice of metro, I would have possibly arrived the destination on time.

Conclusion: I promise myself I would never take a taxi in the rush hour if there was an important appointment.

考官点评

A very good answer with some good 'less common' and 'idiomatic' language. The grammar, however, has some issues that would drop the score. Some of these are: '...was a choice that made me regret for.' could change to '...was a regrettable choice.' and '...severe traffic accident ahead the road.' would be better as '...severe traffic accident ahead.' as well as '...I end up being more...' should be '...I ended up being more...' and '...more than 1 hour's...' should be '...more than 1 hour...' For the Grammar, I think there are too many mistakes for an 8.

拓展练习

1. Describe a situation you waited for something.

You should say:
- when and where it happened
- what you waited for
- how long you waited for it
- and explain how you felt about waiting.

2. Describe a situation that you got a little angry.

You should say:
- what it was that made you angry
- where and when this happened
- what you were doing at the time
- and explain why you felt angry.

3. Describe a time you missed an important appointment for something.

You should say:
- when and where it happened
- what the appointment was for
- what happened when you missed it
- and explain how you felt about the appointment.

4. Describe an occasion that you were late for.

You should say:
- when this happened
- what occasion you were late for
- why you were late
- and explain the result of your being late.

5. Describe a time when you made a wrong decision.

You should say:
- what decision you made
- when you made it
- why you made the decision
- and explain why you think it was a wrong decision.

6. Describe a wrong decision made by someone you know.

You should say:
- what the decision was
- who made it
- what the result was
- and explain why you think it was wrong.

一份完美的工作

183

关于“你梦寐以求的工作或理想的工作”这一话题，有些人会想当老师、警察或医生，也有人

想当一名画家、歌手或演员，还有一些有着其他职业追求。不管考生选择说的是哪一职业或行业，前提是必须了解从事这一职业所需的技能和资质，以及自己为什么适合、为什么想从事这一职业或对这一职业的看法，这是答题的关键。如今随着中国的日益强大，全球兴起了一股汉语热，对汉语老师的需求越来越大，也有越来越多的学校、组织愿意高薪聘请汉语教学方面的人才。这对于一心想在国外发展的小伙伴来说是福音，而对外汉语教师也成了众人心目中的理想工作。可是当一名汉语老师真的只要求会说中文这么简单吗？

真题演练

Describe a perfect job you would like to have in the future.

You should say:
- what it is
- how you can get this job
- what kinds of work you would do for the job
- and explain why you want to have it.

考生范文

Opening Sentences: When it comes to my dream job, it would definitely be teaching Chinese as a second language. I have been dreaming of developing it as my life-long career since I was young.

Background: I have to admit that this job is not as easy as it seems. In other words, it doesn't mean you can be a good Chinese teacher for a foreigner as a Chinese. It involves rich language knowledge, deep understanding of Chinese culture and most importantly, flexible ways of teaching. Basically, teachers in this sector are required to obtain a specific certificate. So to achieve my goal, the first step would be to prepare for the test for the certificate, including the written test and delivering a demo lesson.

Reasons: As for why I consider it as a perfect job, personally speaking, for one thing, it suits my interest and my strength. As a student with a relevant Bachelor Degree, I believe I'm equipped myself with expertise in this aspect, and I'm quite a patient and fun person so maintaining the classroom dynamic would not be a problem for me. For another, it's noble as well as promising profession. Recently, Chinese has become an optional course or even a compulsory course in secondary school in numbers of developed countries like USA and UK. More and more concern has been placed on the language so there would be increasing demand of experts in this aspect. So I believe that in the future, it would not only be a respectable job but also a well-paid one.

Conclusion: So it's plain to see why I consider it as a wonderful job and worth my time and effort.

考官点评

Generally a good answer, but there are slightly too many Grammar mistakes for an 8 or 9 and there's no real 'idiomatic' language. I have listed the problems below:

1 – A Chinese is incorrect – should be 'a Chinese person' or maybe 'someone born in China'.

2 – 'prepare for the test certificate' would be better flow.

3&4 – These should be plural, so they need to add 's'. Otherwise, you only have one interest or strength.

5 – Grammatically wrong – should be 'I've' or 'I have'.

6 – Wrong word. 'area' would be better.

7 – Missing an 'a'. 'a noble profession'.

8 – Countries starting with 'united' always need 'the' at the beginning of their name. 'the USA and the UK'.

9 – Repetitive, we had 'aspect' earlier and still wrong. 'field' would be a good replacement.

10 – 'So' is slightly repetitive as it has just been used at the beginning of the previous sentence. I would suggest merging those two sentences.

Fixing these problems and adding some 'idiomatic' language like 'it's not the piece of cake that it seems' rather than 'that this job is not as easy as it seems' would push this into the 8/9 bands of Lexical Resource and Grammar.

拓展练习

1. Describe a paid job you did or someone you know did.

You should say:
- what the job was
- how you/this person found this job
- how long you/this person had this job
- and explain how you/this person feel(s) about this job.

2. Describe a well-paid job that you will be good at.

You should say:
- what it is
- how you can find this job
- what qualities it requires
- and explain why it is well paid and why you think you will be good at this.

3. Describe a job you would like to do in the future.

You should say:
- what the job would be
- what you would do in that job
- how you can get the job

- and explain why you would like to do that job.

4. Describe an unusual job you would (like to) do, if you had the opportunity.

You should say:
- what job it would be
- what you would do in that job
- why this job is unusual
- and explain why you would like to do that job.

考官版

第一次吃传统英式炸鱼薯条

184

真题演练

Describe an occasion when you ate a kind of food for the first time.

You should say:
- when you had it
- what it was
- where you ate it
- and explain why it was special/unforgettable.

Describe a kind of foreign food you have had.

You should say:
- when you had it
- what it was
- where you ate it
- and explain how you felt about it.

考官范文

- **when you had it**

I like to talk about food that I had when I was visiting England last year to see which university I would like to go to.

- **what it was**

As for what it was, it was the old-fashioned and traditional English fish and chips...what else could it be! Many of my friends in China told me that if I do go to England I must try this dish. I know that when President Xi Jinping visited England a year or so ago one of his private requests to David Cameron was to try the classic fish and chips. So I figure, if it's good enough for him it's certainly good enough for me. I tried

adding some salt and vinegar, albeit a tiny bit and found it added to the flavour enormously, so proceeded to pour loads more on and ended up devouring[①] it, including parts of the paper by mistake[②].

①狼吞虎咽地吃
②错误地

- **where you ate it**

I have never eaten food from paper before and certainly not whilst[③] walking down the beach with some friends but, to be honest with you it was a little slice of heaven[④]. The sunshine, the company[⑤] and its slightly strange but delicious food, you know, everything was just fantastic.

③同时
④仿佛置身于天堂一样
⑤陪伴

- **and explain how you felt about it.**

I can see why this is such a popular dish. It was relatively cheap, very fast and easy to get and extremely tasty. I'm sure I could eat this all day everyday, although my waistline would probably expand beyond belief[⑥] if I did that.

⑥难以置信地

- **and explain why it was special/unforgettable.**

It was a truly unforgettable experience because it really gave me a feeling of belonging and an inkling into a part of English culture[⑦]. I realise that this is not something I would be able to do every day and, if I'm truthful, I wouldn't want to, because it would diminish that perfect day I've already had.

⑦使我有一种归属感，并对英国文化略知一二

难忘的 13 岁生日

185

真题演练

Describe a happy family event from your childhood that you remember well.

You should say:
- what the event was
- when and where it happened
- what you saw or did
- and explain why you remember this event so well.

Describe a happy event/an unforgettable event/journey you had in your childhood.

You should say:
- what the event was
- when and where it happened
- who participated in this event
- and explain why you remember this event so well.

考官范文

❶ what the event was/when and where it happened

Well, the childhood event that I would like to talk about today was my 13th birthday. I was born in February so this special day has always fallen in or around Chinese New Year. That particular year my parents and I went on holiday for the first time to Europe. They'd heard about the Alps in France and Switzerland and wanted to take on a skiing. Whilst we were on the trip my mum and dad had organised a party with the hotel for me to celebrate. At the time, I didn't know about the party until it happened because when we got to the hotel dining hall it was set up for a birthday. At first, I didn't twig[①] that it was for me, I thought someone else just had a birthday on the same day, but then it slowly dawned on me[②] and I had a smile on my face from ear to ear[③].

①发现
②慢慢醒悟
③笑得合不拢嘴

❷ who participated in this event

Our entire travel group were in on the surprise. I was amazed that everyone managed to keep the secret, even some of the other children. I think, all in all, there was about 25 people.

❸ what you saw or did

We had a lovely meal together and I remember playing lots of games afterwards, but I think the best part of that was the air rifle competition[④]. I don't think anyone ever shot a gun before, let alone a rifle but we were told that is part of the biathlon[⑤] in the winter games. I didn't win the competition, but I was so excited and thrilled by what was going on that I didn't care.

④气步枪比赛
⑤冬季两项

❹ and explain why you remember this event so well.

I think the reason why I remember this so well and it sticks in my mind[⑥] is just that, even today, I think it was the best party of my life. The surprise coupled with[⑦] the excitement and love that I felt during the day I just don't think can be topped[⑧].

⑥铭记于心
⑦外加
⑧超越

令人印象深刻的婚礼

186

真题演练

Describe a wedding you have been to.

You should say: ❶ where it was
❷ who you went with
❸ what you saw

- and explain how you felt about the wedding.

Describe a family celebration (such as wedding) that you attended.

You should say:
- when and where this celebration was held
- what you did in this celebration
- who was there
- and explain why this celebration was held.

考官范文

when and where this celebration was held/where it was

I like to talk about my friend's wedding, well, my girlfriend's friend really, that I went to in October last year. It was not in Beijing, so we had to fly out to a place called Nehe which is in the north-east of China in Heilongjiang Province.

who you went with/who was there

I went together with my girlfriend and flew in a couple of days before the big day[①]. A lot of her other friends were going to be there, some just as guests but others as bridesmaids like my girlfriend. All in all, at the ceremony, there must have been well over a hundred people.

①大喜的日子

what you did in this celebration/what you saw

I didn't really do all that much to be honest, but my girlfriend ran around like a headless chicken[②] both before and during the wedding. It was quite a traditional wedding and there are various tasks that the groom needs to do before the party. I'm not sure if you know about this, but one of the things he needs to do is find the shoes of his bride-to-be[③] that other people hide either on their person or in a wardrobe or something. Both he and the best man[④] go around the people and offer them red pockets[⑤] in order to get their help finding them. It is actually quite a lot of fun.

②无头绪瞎忙一通
③准新娘
④伴郎
⑤红包

and explain why this celebration was held/how you felt about the wedding.

I was really glad to be invited to this happy occasion and the couple both looked amazing, really out of this world[⑥]. Both sets of parents cried, as did my girlfriend. To tell you the truth, I had a tear in my eye too. I must admit this was certainly one of the best weddings I have ever been to not only because of the food and music but because of the general atmosphere of the people. Everyone was very happy and the whole thing went really smoothly.

⑥十全十美的

我们结婚了

187

真题演练

Describe a time when you prepared for a happy event.

You should say:
- when this happened
- who you were with
- what you prepared for
- and explain how you felt about the event.

Describe a recent happy event that you have had.

You should say:
- when this happened
- what the event was
- who was with you
- and explain why you felt happy about it.

考官范文

when this happened/what the event was

Wow, this is going to be difficult. Not because I think it's a hard topic, quite the opposite, I'm not sure how I'm going to fit this into just two minutes! Anyway, here goes. I'm going to talk to you about the day I got married. It was nearly 2 years ago now and I'm still very much in the happy bunny stage[①]. Long may it continue.

① 仍沉浸在快乐之中。

who was with you/who you were with

As for who I was with, well obviously my wife to be and many of our friends, including my best friend, Moy, who acted as my best man. My parents weren't able to fly to China to be with me, which was a shame, but I know they were there in spirit.

what you prepared for

Honestly, for me, the preparation was really quite easy. My fiancée and her family did most of the preparation like booking the hotel, organising the dinner and even sorting out the registration. The only thing I had to do was make sure I could fit into my suit and make sure I knew where and when to go for the ceremony.

and explain how you felt about the event/why you felt happy about it.

To say that I was over the moon on that day doesn't even come close to describing how I felt. I was so far beyond the moon I don't think I was even in the same solar system. The joy I had in my heart on seeing her the

first time in her wedding dress was just beyond words[②] and the ability to have shared that with friends and new family filled me with both pride and gratitude. It's truly a day I will never forget as I'm sure it is for everyone, and I'm looking forward to spending the rest of my life with my soulmate[③].

②难以言表
③灵魂伴侣

拓展练习

Describe a party you want to hold for someone in future.

You should say:
- what kind of party it is
- whom you would like to be the guest
- where the party would be held
- and explain what kinds of things would occur at the party.

北京奥林匹克运动会

188

真题演练

Describe an important event in the history of your country.

You should say:
- where it took place
- when it happened
- how you knew about it
- and explain why you think it was important.

Describe an event in history.

You should say:
- what event it was
- when it happened
- how you heard about it
- and explain whether this event was influential.

考官范文

what event it was

I don't want to talk today about a really old event in history that happened hundreds or maybe even thousands of years ago; I'd rather describe an event in the recent history of China, the Olympic Games held nearly 10 years ago, principally in Beijing.

where it took place/when it happened

The actual games kicked off[①] in August 2008, but the preparation involved started four or five years before that. From memory, I believe the announcement was made at the end of the 2004 Olympics. A lot of the events were held in Beijing, but there were others like the sailing and equestrian events[②] that were held in other cities like Qingdao.

①开始
②帆船和马术赛事

● how you knew it/how you heard about it

I remember hearing about it soon after the official announcement because it was all over the news. Everyone was talking about it with mixed feelings[3]. I remember I was over the moon[4] that we had won the bid but also a little bit apprehensive[5] because we would have many foreigners visit our country and I really didn't know what they would make of[6] it.

③百感交集
④欣喜若狂
⑤担心的，忧虑的
⑥如何看待

● and explain whether this event was influential/important.

I genuinely think that this was a momentous occasion because the world's spotlight was on us and it was a hugely successful event not only because we were top of the table in metals[7] but, and perhaps more importantly, because we gained the respect and understanding of other countries around the world that previously didn't really know much about us. I believe it was the turning point[8] for China to really become a member of the world stage and show everyone that we really are a great nation. The interest economically, politically and socially in China from other countries has grown exponentially over the last decade[9] and has allowed mini golden era to develop and I think that's a wonderful thing!

⑦奖牌榜第一
⑧转折点
⑨过去十年，其他国家对于中国经济、政治和社会的兴趣强烈增长

令人期待的非洲狩猎之旅

189

真题演练

Describe a special trip you would like to go on in the future.

You should say:
- where this place is
- who you would like to go with
- what you would like to do there
- and explain why this would be a special trip.

Describe a holiday you will take in the future.

You should say:
- when and where you would like to go
- who you would like to go with
- what you would like to do there
- and explain why you would like to go there.

考官范文

● when and where you would like to go/where this place is

A trip that I have always wanted to do, or go on, is an African safari[1]. I've wanted to do this for years but have just never found the time or, to be honest, the money. I need to do a bit more research into the available

①非洲狩猎之旅

options as to exactly where I go because I don't know if the best ones are in something like South Africa or Uganda or Zambia or somewhere else.

- **who you would like to go with**

Initially, I have always thought of going alone but now that I am married I would very much like to take my wife. We have discussed it briefly, but I'm really still not sure as you would feel about all the wild animals surrounding her and riding on the back of an elephant.

- **what you would like to do there**

The main thing I would like to do there other than just chilling out[②] and relaxing is to visit some of the national parks and see the animals in their natural habitat. I have been to various zoos around the world and I feel that even though I have seen exotic animals, it just wouldn't be the same. I'm not interested in hunting element that I know some people do, I'd just like to see these majestic creatures in action and experience a different way of life.

②放松

- **and explain why you would like to go there/why this would be a special trip.**

This kind of trip is really a once-in-a-lifetime[③] thing. And I'm not sure when I get there if I'd be excited or just scared shitless[④]. I think probably a little bit of both, it is although man is the dominant species of this planet, seeing the king of the jungle up close and personally might make me reconsider.

③一生仅有一次的
④极其害怕

尚未实现的攀登梦

190

真题演练

Describe an ambition you have not achieved yet.

You should say:
- what it is
- when you first had this ambition
- why you had this ambition
- what you have done to achieve it
- and explain why you haven't achieved it yet.

Describe a goal you want to achieve in the future.

You should say:
- what the goal is
- what you would do to achieve it
- when you will achieve it
- and explain why you want to achieve it in the future.

考官范文

- what the goal is/why you had this ambition

One ambition that I'd like to talk about that I haven't achieved yet is to climb a mountain. In particular I'd like to climb Mount Everest. For me, I don't want to have all the same ambitions as everybody else; I'd like to have a few that are different and also more challenging. This is something that very few people have achieved and this is why I want to do it.

- what you have done to achieve it/what you would do to achieve it

It would be a new thing for me because I've never done anything like this before, and probably requires quite a lot of training although I'd need to look into this more. I know that you can go to the first base camp without any training, but then going up to the peak, because of the lack of oxygen and altitude sickness[①], I would rather make sure my body is prepared for what it might encounter.

①高原反应

- when you first had this ambition/when you will achieve it

I've had this ambition since I watched a documentary about the Nepalese sherpas and how they go up and down this mountain on almost a daily basis and just found it fascinating. It also showed how the villages around Everest have changed because of the tourism industry and that because there are many more people who wish to climb the mountain their economy has grown.

- and explain why you haven't achieved it yet/why you want to achieve it in the future.

As for why I haven't achieved this yet, money is the main factor and also to be honest, I'm a little scared. Lots of people die at the peak of Everest and there are avalanches[②] and things like this so firstly I think I need to pluck up some courage[③] in order to do it. Having said that, I hope I can do it in the next few years because if I get too old I'll probably never do it. So, it is something that is definitely achievable that I must push myself to do.

②雪崩
③鼓起勇气

去瑞典看北极光

191

真题演练

Describe a time you had good experience in the countryside.

You should say:
- where you went
- what you did

- when you did it
- who you went with
- and explain why it was enjoyable.

Describe a time you watched the sky.

You should say:
- when this happened
- who you were with
- what you saw
- and explain how you felt when you were watching the sky.

考官范文

- **where you went/when you did it/when this happened**

The time that instantly comes to my mind is when I went to Sweden to look at the northern lights. It was about four years ago now and one of the quietest and most exciting times of my life.

- **who you went with/who you were with**

Actually, it was a trip that I did on my own. I was getting really stressed with my work and, if I'm honest, with life in general and wanted to get away from everyone and everything.

- **what you did/what you saw**

I flew into Stockholm initially and had a couple of days to acclimatise myself to[①] the new time zone. You know, get over the jetlag[②]. A good friend of mine who was studying in the UK said she would pop over[③] and meet me from London so we had a nice meal on my second night. On the third day, I flew north little place called Karuna which is about 300 miles north of the Arctic Circle. It was a wonderful little countryside village quite literally in the middle of nowhere[④].

①使适应
②倒时差
③突然到访
④在偏僻的地方

- **and explain why it was enjoyable/how you felt when you were watching the sky.**

I spent four or five days going out every night among the beautiful frozen lakes and trees just looking up at the starry sky hoping to see the aurora borealis[⑤]. I'd found a place on my snowmobile[⑥] that was a little like in a clearing surrounded by trees. To say it was peaceful in this place would be a gross understatement[⑦]. There was no sound, I mean, at all. No birds, no animals, no planes, cars and most importantly no people. It was just me, the elements, the stars and the northern lights. It is actually quite difficult for me to put how I felt into words. It might sound a little strange, and a little out there, but I felt connected with the universe, or at least our

⑤北极光
⑥摩托雪橇
⑦有点轻描淡写

little corner of it, and supremely peaceful. I'd highly recommend it.

糟糕的体验——高峰乘地铁去面试

192

真题演练

Describe a trip you took by public transport.

You should say:
- when and where you went
- what kind of transport you used
- how was your trip
- and explain why you chose to use public transport.

Describe a short journey that you disliked.

You should say:
- where you went
- who you went with
- what you did
- and explain why you disliked this journey.

考官范文

- **when and where you went**

I'd like to talk about the journey I had to make to go for my last job interview. It was two weeks ago last Monday and I needed to be there at 9 a.m. sharp. It was at a company based in Guomao which is by the East 3rd Ring Road here in Beijing.

- **what kind of transport you used**

As I live quite far from the centre of Beijing and I thought it would be a nightmare if I took a car, I decided to go by subway. I don't normally use the metro system as I don't really need to. Most of the places I go I can either ride my bicycle or walk.

- **who you went with/what you did/how was your trip**

My parents asked if I wanted them to accompany me but I thought it would be a bit silly if I turned out to a job interview with my mum and dad in tow. It wouldn't really make a very good first impression.

- **and explain why you chose to use public transport/why you disliked this journey.**

I thought that I could read the corporate material that I'd downloaded and maybe prepare some questions to ask them while I sat on the train, and

calculated that it would take me about an hour and a half to get there which would be easier than by car. How wrong I was! The entire journey was just ridiculously stressful from start to finish[①]. There were so many people at the platform at the beginning that I had to wait for four trains before I could get on and then when I had to change lines I couldn't figure out which direction I needed to go and ended up getting on a train that, although it was the right line, was going the wrong way. By the time I got to the company offices I was hot and bothered[②], miserable, stressed and really not in the mood[③] to play nice in an interview. But, I went to the toilet and wash my face, took a breath and calmed down. I haven't heard yet whether I passed the interview, so wish me luck!

①自始至终
②烦躁不安的
③没有心情

恶劣天气引起的计划改变

193

真题演练

Describe one time when the weather changed your plan.

You should say:
- when it happened
- what you planned to do
- what you did after you changed your plan
- and explain how you felt about it when the weather stopped your plan.

Describe some bad weather that you have experienced.

You should say:
- what the bad weather was
- when you experienced it
- what happened during that time
- and explain how you felt about this bad weather.

考官范文

what the bad weather was/when you experienced it/when it happened

I'm going to describe for you a time when I had well, just a nightmare because of the weather. It must have been two or three years ago now when I was cycling back home from my university. It's probably about 6 or 7 km and normally takes me about 20 minutes. It was a bit cloudy when I set off but I thought 'it's only 20 minutes, I'll be fine'. Oh, how wrong I was! After about two minutes, the heavens opened out of what seemed to be nowhere. I don't think I'd ever experienced that much rain before, forget cats and dogs[①] this was more like elephants and hippos!

①指下雨猛烈地

- **what you planned to do/what happened during that time**

It was my girlfriend's birthday and I had planned to get home, change and then go out to a park with her, then dinner and maybe a movie, but that wasn't going to happen. By the time I got to my apartment I felt like an exhausted drowned rat[②] and just wanted to have a shower, get clean and dry and go to bed.

②像只落汤鸡

- **what you did after you changed your plan**

In the end, after washing, I called her, explained what had happened and asked her if she would just like to come over and that I'd cook a nice meal and we could watch a movie curled up[③] on the sofa. She understood and, somewhat reluctantly, agreed.

③蜷缩

- **and explain how you felt about it when the weather stopped your plan.**

I felt very disappointed that I couldn't take my girlfriend out for her birthday and I'm sure she felt the same but actually, you know, it was quite nice just the two of us spending some quality time together. Sometimes it's nice to have some peace and quiet[④] and just relax. Obviously, the following year I made it up to her by taking her away for the weekend to a spa. Now that was a great weekend, and a story for another time!

④安安静静

修不好的笔记本电脑

194

真题演练

Describe a time someone or something made noise.

You should say:
- when this happened
- who this person was/what this thing was
- what kind of noise it was
- and explain what you did when you heard the noise.

Describe a problem with equipment that you couldn't solve.

You should say:
- what the equipment was
- what the problem was
- what you did
- and explain how you felt when you couldn't solve the problem.

考官范文

- **what this thing was/what the equipment was**

I'm going to talk to you today about my computer. It's getting a bit old now

and some of the hardware I think is beginning to malfunction, particularly the CPU fan.

- **when this happened**

I suppose this has been going on for about two or three weeks now and, to be honest, it's driving me up the wall[①].

①快把我逼疯了

- **what kind of noise it was/what the problem was**

It just won't turn off, so there's a constant buzzing a bit like a very large bee[②]. I'm not sure why this is, because my computer's processor shouldn't be getting that hot and when I'm trying to use Skype and the microphone, the people on the other end hear it too and it ends up distorting my voice. Apparently, it's so bad that the people can't really understand me or hear me.

②像蜜蜂一样发出持续不断的嗡嗡声

- **and explain what you did when you heard the noise/how you felt when you couldn't solve the problem.**

I've tried cleaning the inside of the laptop just in case it was just on the CPU that was overheating, but this didn't work. I also reduced the workload of the CPU, but that didn't seem to work either. To be honest, at the moment, I've gone through annoyed and I'm out the other side. This is affecting everything I do because I can't stand to use my computer for any real length of time. I think I might have to bite the bullet[③] and just buy a new one. It might be a bit expensive but, like I said earlier, the current one is getting on a bit[④] and no matter how much TLC[⑤] I give it, it just won't play ball[⑥]. You know, computers, can't live with them, can't live without them![⑦]

③狠下心
④变得老旧了
⑤亲切的关爱
⑥合作，作出妥协
⑦电脑，失之我忧，得之亦忧！

浪费时间的低级错误

195

真题演练

Describe something you did which was a waste of time.

You should say:
- what the thing was
- when you did it
- how you did it
- and explain why it was a waste of time.

Describe a mistake that you once made.

You should say:
- what the mistake was
- when and where you made it

- who was with you
- and explain how the mistake affected you.

考官范文

- **what the thing was/what the mistake was**

Well, where do I start with this topic. Computers. Sometimes I think they're the best invention mankind has ever created, and others, I think they were put on this earth just to test our patience. I was trying to upgrade the operating system on my laptop from Windows 8 to Windows 10. Easy I thought, no problem! That I think, was my first mistake.

- **when and where you made it**

It was about three weeks ago on a Friday evening and I thought I've got loads of time. All night. I can get it set up exactly how I want it. Yup, that was mistake number two!

- **how you did it/who was with you**

I normally have a friend help me with this, but I thought I'd try it on my own because I'd seen him do this kind of thing before. Mistake number three! But everything started off okay. I'd attached the CD-ROM drive[①], put in the Blu-ray disc[②] and restarted the machine. It booted up[③] and asked me if I wanted to install Windows 10. Yes please, and I hit Enter. Whizz, whizz, whirr went the CD and everything looked good. After a couple of minutes it asked me if I wanted to install onto the C drive. Again, I pressed Enter. 'Are you sure?' It asked. Yes, absolutely positive, and pressed Enter. Formatting[④] C drive came up on the screen. Oh dear! I thought. Actually that's not entirely true, but I'm trying to remain polite and not use rude words. It was deleting all my data!!

①光驱
②蓝光碟
③启动
④格式化

- **and explain why it was a waste of time/how the mistake affected you.**

I think you can imagine the rest. I lost all my drivers and my data, even my games. But you surely had a backup?! I hear you say. Have a guess what mistake number four was. One keystroke was all it took to completely wipe my computer and spend the entire weekend and even part of the following week hitting my head against a brick wall[⑤] trying to restore it. In the end, I gave it to my friend who had it up and running in about three hours flat. A whole weekend wasted! The moral of this story? Look carefully before you press Enter, computers are not your friend!

⑤白费力气

简单易懂的小学数学课

196

真题演练

Describe a mathematics class you attended at primary school.

You should say:
- when and where you attended the class
- what the teacher taught
- what you did
- and explain what you learnt from the class/how you felt about the class.

考官范文

when and where you attended the class

Wow, this is quite a difficult question to answer, not because of the topic, it's just that I'm not sure if I can remember back that far. It was more than ten years ago now. I remember that the school was very near home because I always went with my mum on her bicycle. From memory, it was only about 10 minutes.

what the teacher taught

I don't really remember exactly what she taught, but I think it was things like the times tables[①] and basic arithmetic[②]. I don' think we got into things like long division[③] until junior school. But again, my memory is a bit hazy[④].

①乘法表
②基础算术
③长除法
④我有点记不清了

what you did

I do recall that it was quite a big class, there must've been about 30 of us in the classroom. It was very colourful, with lots of drawings that we had done in other classes. I think the classes were about an hour, and we did everything in the same room. The teachers came to us rather than the other way around.[⑤]

⑤老师们会过来看看我们。

and explain what you learnt from the class/how you felt about the class.

I learnt quite a lot in this class and remember finding numeracy and mathematics very interesting. I think this is mainly because of my teacher. Teacher Wang was beautiful, and above all patient. She never got angry even if we did something wrong or made mistakes and could explain things in a very understandable[⑥] way.

⑥易懂的

拓展练习

Describe a science class you have attended.

You should say:
- where it is or was
- when you study or studied there
- what you remember about it (briefly)
- and explain why you remember it more than other classes.

需要发挥想象力的创业规划

197

真题演练

Describe a time you needed to use imagination.

You should say:
- what the situation was
- why you needed to use imagination
- what the difficulties were
- and explain how you felt about it.

Describe a difficult thing you did well.

You should say:
- when you did it
- what you did
- what preparations you made for it
- and explain what you felt and learnt after doing it.

考官范文

when you did it

Well, it must have been about 5 years ago when I had just started my university course. I'd signed up for a business major and was really looking forward to the challenges ahead.

what the situation was/why you needed to use imagination

I remember being in the classroom with my classmates. It must have been about three months into the course. We were asked to get into groups of 6 and given a project to develop a business plan together for a viable[①] business in the local area. Needless to say, we were all a bit clueless at the beginning and had no idea what to do or where to start.

①可行的

what the difficulties were/what you did/what preparations you made for it

Actually, looking back at it now, the hardest part wasn't thinking of the type of business we could do, it was what we should call it. Nobody could think of a name that we can all agree on. We had studied some of this

in class, but not much, and the teacher was available to us for questions and the like, but I still found it very difficult to get our heads together[②] and imagine a business that we could create and be successful. You know, it was just getting started that was so difficult. Once we actually got over the initial hurdle[③] and started working on the plan it all kind of fell into place[④].

②集思广益
③克服了最初的障碍
④变得有条不紊

● **and explain what you felt and learnt after doing it/how you felt about it.**

For me, I think it was the best thing I learnt in the entire three-year programme. It forced me to use not only my intellect but also my imagination and in doing so helped me develop both. These days I am a budding entrepreneur[⑤] and actually working with some of my classmates on a similar idea to that which we had all those years ago. It just goes to show how deeply that project influenced me.

⑤刚起步的创业者

借东西忘还的体验

198

真题演练

Describe a time when you forgot something.

You should say:
- when this happened
- what you forgot to do
- who you were with
- and explain the consequences of forgetting it.

Describe an occasion when you borrowed something from others.

You should say:
- what you borrowed
- whom you borrowed from
- when you borrowed it
- and explain why you borrowed this from others.

考官范文

● **what you borrowed/what you forgot to do/when this happened**

I'm going to describe for you a time when I borrowed an important course book from my classmate and then promptly forgot to give it back to her. Stupid, I know, but there you go[①]. It must have been about 3 months ago now, during our finals at university.

①但却是事实；就是这样

● **who you were with**

Everyone in the year was revising hard for the upcoming exams and, to

be honest, I was pulling my hair out[②] over my Maths. I've never really been very good at Maths but my best friend, Lily, is just brilliant at it. I don't know how she does it but it's obviously just how her brain works[③].

②感到焦虑
③显然她的脑袋很灵光

- **whom you borrowed from/when you borrowed it**

I remember we were studying together in the uni library and she was helping me with my calculus[④]. She just had an excellent way of explaining it to me that I could understand. When the teacher went over it, it just seem to go in one ear and out of the other[⑤] without stopping in the middle.

④微积分
⑤左耳进，右耳出

- **and explain why you borrowed this from others/the consequences of forgetting it.**

I'd forgotten my text book so we were using hers. We must have finished studying at about 10 o'clock at night and I asked her if I could borrow her book and take it back home for the weekend, so I could prepare more for the exam that was happening the following Tuesday. After working like a dog[⑥] all weekend my mother came into my bedroom on Sunday afternoon rushing me to get ready so that we can make it to the airport on time in order for me to go back to university. In my hurry[⑦], I left Lily's book on my bedside table. I didn't realise until I saw her Monday morning and she asked for it back. She was crushed[⑧], as was I, when I told I'd forgotten to bring it back as it was going to affect both of our exams on Tuesday. There was nothing I could do other than apologise profusely[⑨] but it turned out all right in the end as we both passed.

⑥拼命地学习
⑦匆忙之中
⑧感到崩溃
⑨一再道歉

富有挑战的小组演讲

199

真题演练

Describe a team project for study or entertainment.

You should say:
- when and where you did it
- who you did it with
- how you did it
- and explain why you liked it or disliked it.

Describe a team project/group activity you did.

You should say:
- what it was
- when you did it
- with whom you did it

- how you finished it
- and explain what you learnt from it.

考官范文

- **what it was/when and where you did it**

The project I'm going to talk about is one I did for my English teacher at university. It was at the end of our foundation year when we had finished our English course and would be moving on to our Business Management course. Basically, we had to do a group presentation introducing some of the elements that we would be studying the following year, like Accounting or Business Law.

- **who you did it with/with whom you did it**

We were able to choose our own groups, which was great because it meant that I could work with my dorm mates so, there were 6 of us in our team.

- **how you did it/how you finished it**

It was actually quite an interesting end of year project, but also very challenging. Obviously, we hadn't covered any of the material that we needed to present and needed to do lots of research. Our teacher told us to find out who was teaching the courses as well as to talk to the students a year above us so that we can get truly accurate information. It turned into a little bit of a nightmare because our class schedules always seemed to be in conflict[①] and we couldn't find the time to get hold of[②] anyone.

①矛盾的
②找到……与之联系

- **and explain why you liked it or disliked it/what you learnt from it.**

I did enjoy doing it though because, even at the time, I realised that it would help me prepare for the first proper year of my major and although I knew I wasn't going to know everything about business what, it would certainly give me a leg up[③] over some of the other students.

③助我一臂之力

不得不说的高质量服务

200

真题演练

Describe an organisation (such as a company, a factory, a government organisation or a student organisation at school).

You should say: - where this organisation is

- how you know about this organisation
- what this organisation does
- and explain how you feel about it.

Describe an occasion that you received a good service from a company or shop.

You should say:
- what the service was
- when you received the service
- where you received the service
- and explain why you think it was a good service.

考官范文

what the organisation is/what this organisation does

The organisation that I'm going to talk about today is actually an airline, Air China to be precise. It's the national airline of China and flies not only domestically but also internationally all around the world.

how you know about this organisation

As for how I know this organisation, it's a bit hard not to as you can't live in China and not have flown with them at least once. They advertise all over the place and, to be honest, you can't really get away from them. They're a bit like CCTV in that respect.

when and where you received the service/what the service was

It was actually when my wife and I were flying to England. My grandad had recently passed away, my mother's father, and we were going back for the funeral. We had all the tickets quickly and when we got to the airport I realised that I got the time wrong. I'd read the tickets as 1 o'clock in the afternoon not 1 o'clock in the morning. It was a stupid thing to do. Sometimes, I'm just so dense[①].

①愚蠢的

and explain how you feel about it/why you think it was a good service.

We spoke to the Air China customer service manager and explained the situation. I didn't have a clue[②] how I was going to solve this, my mind was just a blank[③]. But she was so sweet and understanding, she just budged us on the next flight available. I was absolutely flabbergasted[④] at her kindness and with the speed that this got sorted[⑤]. I now have nothing but praise for Air China and would heartily recommend them to anybody. Not to sound like a broken record[⑥], but they are just great!

②毫无头绪
③大脑一片空白
④大吃一惊的
⑤得到处理
⑥不想再重复地说

全国柔道比赛冠军体验

201

真题演练

Describe a competition you would like to take part in.

You should say:
- what the competition is
- what cost you would have to pay to take part in this competition
- how you would practice for it
- and explain why you would like to take part in it.

Describe a team you have been part of.

You should say:
- when this team was formed
- who was on the team
- what you did together
- and explain why you became part of the team.

考官范文

- **what the competition is/when this team was formed/who was on the team**

Actually, one of the proudest moments of my life was when I won a gold medal in a National Judo Competition. I was part of a team who was representing our club. There were about eight of us in all selected from our best members.

- **what cost you would have to pay to take part in this competition**

It was a three-day event, Saturday through Monday, with clubs from all over the country participating. All the expenses including the travel and hotel were paid for, we just had to pay for any incidentals[①], so it was kind of mini holiday.

①杂费

- **how you would practice for it/what you did together**

Well, we'd been training for this since the last nationals and it was actually the first that I would take part in. I was going to represent us in the heavyweight division[②] with other members of our team in the middleweight and lightweight categories. Even though we compete individually we all work together as a team to improve the club's national standing[③].

②重量级
③提升俱乐部在全国的声誉

- **and explain why you would like to take part in it/why you became part of the team.**

I was truly honoured to be asked to go with the group as I was a

fairly new member at the time. I had done martial arts before, when I was a child, and took to judo like a duck to water④. I don't normally do competitions, but a lot of my friends in the club encouraged and persuaded me to do it. I'm really glad they did. You know, it gave me not only an enormous sense of self-satisfaction but also, a deep and binding sense of team spirit that has remained with me to this day.

④如鱼得水

与讨厌却不得不友好对待的人不期而遇

202

真题演练

Describe a time you were friendly to someone you didn't like.

You should say:
- when and where it happened
- who he or she was
- why you didn't like this person
- and explain why you were friendly to him or her on that occasion.

Describe a time when you felt surprised to meet someone.

You should say:
- when this happened
- who the person was
- what you did together on that day
- and explain why you thought it was a surprise to meet this person.

考官范文

when and where it happened/when this happened

You know, coincidences are funny old things①. Two weeks ago, I was in a coffee shop having, strangely enough, a coffee with some friends before going over to my parents for dinner to meet the new neighbours.

①说起来也真是巧

who he or she was/who the person was

There was an older lady, maybe 35, two tables over on her phone. She was speaking so loudly that I think they could have heard her on the moon. Everyone in the café, was getting really irritated by② her, but no one was doing anything.

②被……激怒

what you did together on that day/why you didn't like this person

It went on for so long and got so bad that I decided to say something to her. I wouldn't say I was rude but, if I'm honest, I wasn't entirely polite either. Firm, I would say. She apologised and said that she was speaking with her mother who was mildly deaf and that she would finish the call

soon. I thought, okay, good reason, but couldn't you have made the call outside or something.

- **and explain why you thought it was a surprise to meet this person/why you were friendly to him or her on that occasion.**

I think you might be able to see where I'm going with this. Yes, she was my new neighbour. Needless to say, surprised doesn't quite cover it.[③] I tried to be both polite and friendly during the dinner but you could cut the tension between us with a knife[④]. I don't think my parents cottoned on to[⑤] it as neither of us told them the story of what happened earlier in the day. I still bump into[⑥] her in the corridors occasionally and always smile and say hello, but I don't think we're ever going to be good friends.

③不用说，惊讶溢于言表。
④形容气氛十分紧张
⑤理解，明白
⑥偶然遇上

他乡遇故知

203

真题演练

Describe an occasion when you met a friend who you hadn't seen for a long time.

You should say:
- who this friend was
- when and where you met him/her
- why you hadn't seen him/her for a long time
- and explain how you felt when you met him/her.

Describe a time when you felt surprised to meet someone.

You should say:
- when this happened
- who the person was
- what you did together on that day
- and explain why you thought it was a surprise to meet this person.

考官范文

- **who this friend was/who the person was**

The friend I'm going to describe today was actually my flatmate when I first came to Beijing 5 years ago to study. He was a German chap called Hans and a couple of years older than me. We lived together for about two years before he went back to Germany. That must've been about three years ago.

- **when and where you met him/her/when this happened**

My little story begins when I was flying to England last summer to look at universities and see which ones I would like to attend for my Masters.

As I was disembarking the plane[①] at Heathrow I heard someone call my name. At first, it didn't really register[②] as it was a long flight from Beijing to London. I was tired and just kept walking. Then someone gently grabbed me by the shoulder so I turned round. It was Hans with his bright blue eyes and blond Bavarian hair.

①下飞机
②注意到

- **why you hadn't seen him/her for a long time**

We had kept in touch occasionally through email but I had no contact with him for about a year. It turned out that he'd been in China for a few weeks visiting his girlfriend and was going back to complete his PhD at LSE[③] in London, which was a surprise, because I thought he was in Germany. That was the university that was at the top of my list of places to go.

③伦敦政治经济学院

- **and explain how you felt when you met him/her/why you thought it was a surprise to meet this person/what you did together on that day.**

It was such a pleasant surprise to see him again! He hasn't really changed at all and still had his wry grin[④] that always made me smile. We walked through the airport to the baggage claim[⑤] together and caught up with all the things that had happened to both of us since we last saw each other. It was like he'd never left. We didn't have too much time together on that day as we were both being met by different people but we hung out while I was in England and he showed me around the LSE campus, which was fantastic, really beyond my wildest dreams[⑥]. I've been better at staying in touch with them more recently and, actually, we have planned to meet up for Christmas. That's going to be a great reunion!

④讪笑
⑤行李认领处
⑥大大出乎意料

奇怪的梦境

204

真题演练

Describe a dream you have had.

You should say:
- when it was
- who was in the dream
- what happened in your dream
- and explain how you felt about this dream.

考官范文

- **when it was**

To be honest, I don't often remember my dreams but, I think it was a couple of months ago that I had this particular dream, although I'm not

exactly sure.

● **who was in the dream**

I can only remember bits of it and I remember being in the White House, you know in Washington DC, and for some reason I was talking with Donald Trump, but my parents were there too. From what I can recall, it was only those three.

● **what happened in your dream**

I don't remember why, but I think I was trying to advise him on something. We got into an argument, well, not an argument as such, more like a heated discussion about the world. Then I was back home with my folks talking about how wonderful the holiday was and how lucky I was to talk with President Trump.

● **and explain how you felt about this dream.**

As for how I felt about this dream, well, to be honest, I'm not really sure. Confused I think would be a good start. My brain was obviously a little muddled up[①]. When I do remember my dreams I always try and look at them and figure them out[②], you know, why did I dream that and the like. I always feel that it's my subconscious[③] trying to tell me something, but with this particular dream I'm clueless[④] as to where it came from. Maybe there was something on the news[⑤] that I saw, I'm really not sure. I'm still trying to figure it out, I hope I do!

①我的大脑显然有些思维混乱
②弄清
③下意识的
④一无所知的
⑤在新闻节目中的

家乡的最新变化

205

真题演练

Describe recent changes in your hometown.

You should say:
- what the changes are
- when these changes were made
- why these changes were made
- and explain how you feel about these changes.

考官范文

● **what the changes are**

My hometown is Beijing and there have been almost an uncountable number of[①] changes here over the last 15 years or so. For a start, it has grown exponentially[②] and added a huge number of residential and office

①无数的
②迅速增长地，迅猛发展地

buildings and parks. Places like the Olympic Park, by the 4th Ring Road North, would be a good example of this. Also, the amount of traffic has blown up[3] out of all proportion[4], not only the amount of cars on the road, but also the amount of planes and trains and even the subway system.

③加剧，大幅度增长
④不成比例地，不均衡地

- **when these changes were made**

These changes have all happened since we won the Olympic Bid back in 2000. So, about 17 years and have increased in frequency and quantity, more and more and time's gone on.

- **why these changes were made**

I think any city needs to grow and the more it grows, then the more it needs to grow. Being the capital of China lots of people gravitate[5] here for opportunities, whether this be locals or foreigners, you know, westerners. I'm not sure how much more it can grow, mainly because of the geographical locations. There are mountains on one side and desert on the other, so we'll need to figure out[6] how to overcome these barriers[7] first.

⑤受吸引
⑥搞清楚，弄明白
⑦克服这些障碍

- **and explain how you feel about these changes.**

Mostly, I think the changes that have happened are a good thing. As a race we always want to look forward and grow and I think if it's managed well[8] it can be a positive influence on society. Sometimes, I don't like being stuck in a traffic jam[9] or being a bit squashed on the subway[10] but it's the price of progress[11] I suppose.

⑧如果管理得当
⑨交通拥堵
⑩地铁拥挤
⑪发展要付出的代价

拓展练习

Describe a change that will improve your local area.

You should say:
- what the change is
- why the change is needed
- whether there will be any problems associated with the change
- and explain how it will improve your local area.

计划做却一直未做的事

206

真题演练

Describe something you want to do for a long time but you haven't done yet.

You should say:
- what it is
- why you would like to do it

- how easy or difficult it is to do it
- and explain why you haven't done it yet.

Describe a change you would like to make to your life in the future.

You should say:
- what change you would like to make
- when you would like to make this change
- how it would change your life
- and explain why you would like to make this change.

考官范文

- **what it is/what change you would like to make**

I think the biggest change I would like to make is one that everyone wants to make, and that's to have children.

- **why you would like to do it/when you would like to make this change**

I've been with my girlfriend for 3 or 4 years now and we're thinking about getting married. The natural next step is then to have children. I'd like to have kids within the next five years as I'll be pushing 30 by then and my father had me by about then and I would want to wait to much longer.

- **how easy or difficult it is to do it/how it would change your life**

From what I know when I've spoken to my parents or grandparents having the child is relatively easy, but raising them is the hard part. I'm sure I was the model of perfection why I was growing up! No, just kidding! But I really enjoyed my childhood and remember both my parents being around to look after me. And that I think is the biggest impact that it would have on me; having to be there, care for and look after a little version of me for the rest of my life is, honestly, a little daunting, but in a good way[①].

①有点令人望而生畏，但恰到好处

- **and explain why you would like to make this change/why you haven't done it yet.**

Obviously, it's a very natural thing to want to have a family, but I firmly believe it should be done in a solid, loving environment. So, yes, married first, then kids. I suppose I'll see how it goes, but I know my future wife feels the same as I do and hopefully we'll have one of each, you know, a boy and a girl.

5 物品类

考生版

低头族无法抗拒的诱惑——手机

207

关于“生活中除电脑外的电子设备”这一道题，可能考生们首先想到的是手机，也有可能有些人会想说电视机。当然，这些主题都可以，但我们要始终秉承着说“容易拓展的”话题。什么叫“容易拓展的”呢？简单来讲，就是你想说的这个物品能说的、可说的东西太多了。手机就十分符合这个特征，我们可以从外观、性能、牌子、价格、功能等多个方面去介绍，而电视机，能说的内容似乎就单一了很多。此外，可能会有考生要聊一些比较新技术的设备，但切记，一定要介绍清楚是什么产品，使用过程中有什么感受。

真题演练

Describe an electronic device you use in your life (not a computer).

You should say:
- what it is
- how you got it
- how you use it
- and explain how you benefit from using it.

考生范文

Opening Sentences: The electronic device I would like to describe is my smart phone. It has been an essential part of my daily life and I use it every day.

Background: It's the fifth-generation iPhone, not the latest one of Apple's collection. My father bought it for me in a Hong Kong Apple Flagship Store three months after it was launched in 2015. I remember it made a great hit back then though its price was over 5000RMB. It looks chic with a rose gold Metallic Body and ultra-thin design. So it is also light and easy to carry. Plus, its 4.7-inch touch screen is big enough for an excellent movie-watching experience and it looks so sleek and neat.

Reasons/Feelings: I like to use it mainly because it's multifunctional. I can use it not only to keep in touch with others in a variety of ways from calls, texting to social networking

apps, but also for entertainment like surfing the net, shooting some videos and watching dramas. More than that, it has a 12 megapixel camera so that it can be used to take high definition photos and I don't need to carry an extra which may weigh me down during a trip. It is also easy to share the pictures with others by WeChat or Facebook. I also connect my iPhone with the printer by Bluetooth to print my photos out. What's more, it has a GPS function which is definitely my necessity because I always lose my way. It is also easy to access the huge amount of apps in Apple store. I can always download the games that I like. I think this electronic device simplifies my life and it's a good tool to kill time or to have some fun.

Conclusion: As you can see, I can use it almost for everything! I can't believe I can survive one day without it!

考官点评

Overall, a very good answer. It has some good 'less common' words and 'collocations', for example, 'ultra-thin', 'megapixel' and 'multi-functional'. However, there is little in the way of 'idiomatic' language.

Grammatically, it's excellent with only a few small errors, such as, '...it made a great hit back then...'. One thing I would say is that there is very little range. Nearly all the sentences start with 'It is also' or 'I also', which is too repetitive for the very high scores.

拓展练习

1. Describe your first mobile phone.

You should say:
- when you got it
- how you got it
- what you used it for
- and explain how you felt when you got it.

2. Describe a product you bought and felt happy.

You should say:
- what it was
- why you bought it
- how long you used it
- and explain why you were happy buying this product.

3. Describe an electronic product you use in your life.

You should say:
- what it was
- why you used it
- how long you used it

- and explain how you felt about this product.

救人于“火热”之中的空调

208

相信很多生活在南方的考生特别熟悉一句话——“这个夏天，你的命是空调给的”，这句话充分体现了空调的重要性。因此，在说这道“离了它就活不了的东西”时，空调绝对是一个好的选择。下面这道题的背景段，我们可以从两方面去说：可以谈谈空调的专业背景，比如空调什么时候被发明及被应用的，也可以从自己和空调的“结缘”开始，比如什么时候买了空调，或者什么时候发现了空调的重要性。而练习题部分“你买到家里的电子产品”这道题，背景段就只能说什么时候、我在哪里买的什么空调了。

真题演练

Describe something that you could not live without except computers or cell phones.

You should say:
- what it is
- where you got it
- how often you use it
- and explain why you think you could not live without it.

考生范文

Opening Sentence: As a Cantonese, I would definitely say that you can shut down my computer and take away my mobile phone, but never ever turn off my air conditioner especially during the summer.

Background: I always wonder that how ancient people could survive during such hot days. Back in the days, my family only had a low power air conditioner. So it didn't have a good cooling performance. At the beginning of the year, I bought a new one from the shopping mall and the brand of it is Panasonic. It was a good deal because I bought it in the winter but I had to admit that unlike some old air conditioners, this one was a multifunctional machine. I even didn't realise how the technology could be developed in such an amazing way. The basic functions are cooling and heating. What's more, it could also dehumidify and purify the air.

Reasons: I don't think I can live without it now because in summer, the temperature is almost 40 degrees Celcius, which makes me feel like I can't breathe. And in the winter, it would become really cold inside. With long time rainy days, the rooms are also become so wet. Using air conditioner could solve these problems which are brought by the weather. I remember last month, the electricity had been cut off in my apartment. It was painful to stay in the room, and there were also too many mosquitos. I really wanted to cry. After changing this air

conditioner, my parents always said that buying this is the most intelligent thing that I have ever done in my life.

Conclusion: So I thought you could understand how important to live with the air conditioners.

考官点评

Overall, a very good answer. The length and flow are excellent. There are some 'less common' words but the 'paraphrasing' is severely limited, as is 'idiomatic' language.

Grammatically, it's good but has some errors: '...always wonder that how ancient...' should change to '...always wonder how ancient...' and '...long time rainy days...' should change to '...long rainy days...'. The other grammatical problem is '...but I had to admit that...'. Here it is being used incorrectly; this phrase is used when the first part of the sentence is negative and the second positive. In the example above both sides are positive.

拓展练习

1. Describe a thing that you cannot live without in your life.

You should say:
- what it is
- where you get it
- how often you use it
- and explain why you think you could not live without it.

2. Describe a useful electronic equipment you bought for your home (not a computer or TV).

You should say:
- what it was
- where you bought it
- why you bought it
- and explain why you think it is useful.

3. Describe a piece of equipment in your home.

You should say:
- what it is
- how often you use it
- who you usually use it with
- and explain why this item is important to you.

书虫人手一个的阅读器——Kindle

209

说起“有用物品”这一题，我们还可以选择什么呢？这里有个好建议就是电子设备，即你曾经问别人借的电子设备。还是要注意，太新潮的电子设备说起来很冒险，因为很有可能因为语言的限制导致描述不清是什么设备，考官就会听得云里雾里。所以，建议考生还是选择一些国内外都比较

流行的设备。这样同时，我们还可以和其他与“电子设备”有关的题目进行关联。今天，我们就来介绍大家都知道的电子阅读器——Kindle。

真题演练

Describe a useful thing that you once borrowed.

You should say:
- what it was
- when you borrowed it
- where you borrowed it
- and explain why you think it is useful.

考生范文

Opening Sentence: If I've got enough money, the Kindle Fire would be the first thing I would buy because after I borrowed it from my cousin and tried it, I couldn't stop myself from missing it.

Background: I first knew the product from my high school English teacher. She knew I was a bookworm especially for English novels and thus recommended me Kindle, where I can access English books at low prices. But I didn't have chance to use it until my cousin bought one. As you know, it is a low-priced tablet produced and released by Amazon. It's bigger than a smart phone but smaller than most other tablets. It's designed to make the device easier to manipulate, while still offering a relatively large touch screen. It can serve as a computer and more importantly, an electronic book reader. The perfect design, nice outlook, good quality hardware and friendly interface make it an ideal device for users. To me, it is a very important technology device for purchasing online products, listening audio books and reading eBooks.

Reasons: It means a lot to a book lover like me. For one thing, lighter than many paperbacks, Kindle can hold a small library of books. It's designed to interface seamlessly with Amazon's online store where more than a million titles in electronic format are available. For another, Kindle is wireless so as long as it is connected to Wi-Fi, I'm able to buy a book or subscribe to an electronic version of a newspaper on Amazon and download it directly to the Kindle, which really facilitates my reading experience. I guess that's pretty much why it can compete with e-book readers in the market before its launch. And I find myself enjoy reading much more than before since I tried it. But I had to give it back to my cousin. Now, I also have my own one and but still remember the feeling when I borrowed it.

Conclusion: I would say it's the most important electronic device I've ever had only after smart phone.

考官点评

Overall, an excellent answer. There is a good amount of 'less common' language as well as 'idiomatic language' and 'paraphasing' and it would deserve the higher scores.

Grammatically, again it's excellent with only very minor errors and, in my opinion, would reach the top scores.

The only negative thing that I would say about this particular example is that it sounds a little bit too much like a sales pitch for Kindle, rather than just someone talking about the product.

拓展练习

Describe an electronic machine you want to buy.

You should say:
- what it is
- when you knew about this machine
- what specific features you want
- and explain why you want this machine.

保时捷

210

关于这道“交通工具（vehicle）”题，很多考生会联想到谈一辆喜欢的车，那这个时候，我们就可以与“一件很贵的东西”相结合了。但要记住，关于这辆车一定要给一些具体的细节描述，不可以一句话只说一下车的牌子就概括了哦！

真题演练

Describe a vehicle you would like to buy (or own).

You should say:
- what kind of vehicle it is
- how you would get (buy) it
- why you would like to have it
- and explain why you would prefer this means of transport.

考生范文

Opening Sentences: OK, right then, after a bit of thought, the vehicle I would like to buy is a Porsche car. I know it sounds a bit of crazy, and I may not be able to afford it in the near future, but I really want to own one.

Background: As far as I can remember, the first time I took a ride in a Porsche car was when I was visiting my friends in Belgium. My friend drove a red sports car to pick me up from the airport. It was a super expensive car which was given by

his father as his birthday gift. Actually, it only had two doors and it could only accommodate one large suitcase. I guessed it would be uncomfortable for people to sit in the back but my friend told me that it was not a car to carry a lot of people. Well, I really agreed that it was not a practical car but I still wanted to own it if I had had enough money.

Reasons: First, the Hi-fi stereo is really awesome, so music is played with fantastic sound effects. Besides, it can accelerate extremely fast, so the driver can take a corner extremely fast. It's an absolute blast to drive. That road trip from the airport to my hotel is really enjoyable. What's more, there are many equipment in it, such as a refrigerator, free Wi-Fi and communication system. One more thing I want to mention why I want to have this car is that it shows the social status of the person and I can actually make someone's day by letting them take a picture of my car, or sit in my car. This car is still a bit too expensive for me, but I am working towards my dream of owning a Porsche car. However, if I still can't afford it after 10 years hard-working, I may take a loan from the bank or borrow some money from my family members. Even though I can choose some cheap vehicles, I still want this because it's fast, convenient and fashionable. What's more, it could satisfy my vanity.

Conclusion: I really hope that I can afford a Porsche car someday in the near future.

考官点评

Overall, a very good answer. There is a good amount of 'less common' words, 'paraphrasing' and 'collocations' with the occasion piece of 'idiomatic' language. I think this would be good enough to obtain 7 or greater.

Grammatically, again very good with only a few errors, such as, '...a bit of crazy...' should be '...kind of crazy...'.

One logical error that I noticed was where it says '...Besides, it can accelerate extremely fast, so the driver can take a corner extremely fast...'. It isn't necessarily true as you should never accelerate into a corner, and you can take a corner very fast in car that has slow acceleration (but a high top speed).

拓展练习

1. Describe something expensive you would buy if you had a lot of money.

You should say:
- what you would buy
- how much it would cost
- what you would do with it
- and explain why you would buy it.

2. Describe a vehicle you want to buy in the future.

You should say:
- what kind of vehicle it is
- how you would get (buy) it
- why you would like to have it
- and explain why you prefer this kind of transportation.

3. Describe something you want to buy in the future.

You should say:
- what you would buy
- how much it would cost
- what you would do with it
- and explain why you would want to buy it.

4. Describe something you'd like to own if you had a lot of money.

You should say:
- what you would buy
- how much it would cost
- what you would do with it
- and explain why you would want to buy it.

穿上立马人见人爱的蕾丝小礼裙

211

关于“特殊场合的服装”这一道题，很多考生潜意识都觉得是“西装、正装”。但正装的种类也有很多，比如礼服，礼服也可以分多种场合，比如毕业典礼服。在练习题中有一道题考查的是“喜欢穿的服装类型”，这时如果你还说是毕业典礼服，就会显得十分牵强了。因此，在回答这道题时，女生可以考虑选择谈论一件漂亮的、实用的小裙子，男生可以说一说一件有纪念意义的球衣。

真题演练

Describe an item of clothing or jewellery that you wear on special occasions.

You should say:
- what this clothing looks like
- where you bought it
- on what special occasions you wear it
- and explain why you wear it on special occasions.

考生范文

Opening Sentences: To be honest, I tend to wear baggy tees made of cotton most of the time. The reason for that is plain to see—they're incredibly comfortable to wear. However, for special occasions, I won't dress up myself casually. Instead, I would put on my navy-blue lace party dress.

Background: I bought it online from ASOS, the biggest online shop for fashionable outfits in Britain. I remember it was 50 percent off as I bought it, making it a real

bargain. The lovely sleeveless dress is made of polyester and lace, which has a fitted bodice, scoop neckline and deep v-back with a trendy exposed zipper. It features a short a-line skirt with a sparkling beaded band at the natural waistline.

Reasons: As a semi-formal dress, it's definitely a fresh alternative to the usual little-black-dress and a perfect choice for family celebrations, homecoming, cocktail party as well as wedding receptions. The colour is really special because I got too many black dresses. That's the main reason why I like it best. Also, it's rather slimming and flattering. It fits me perfectly well and always can make me stand out from the crowd. Besides that, it is quite comfortable even though most of the formal clothes, especially dresses are really tight. I often wear it on special occasions as it won't influence my steps, and I don't need to care about my paces. Lastly, it has a small pocket on one side and it is really secret which is hard to be seen. So I can put some important things in it. I have to say this dress makes me feel confident.

Conclusion: That's why I usually pick it out from my wardrobe without a second thought whenever I need to be dressy.

考官点评

Overall, a good answer. Lexically, it has some 'less common' language and 'collocations', for example '...dress up...' and '...stand out...'. There isn't much in the way of 'idiomatic' language or 'paraphrasing' though, which I think would keep it out of the very top scores.

Grammatically, it's excellent, with only a few errors. For example, '...I won't dress up myself casually...' needs to change to something like '...I won't dress too casually...', '...I got too many...' should be '...I have got too many...' and '...and always can make me...' should change to '...and always makes me...'. I think this would be able to reach the higher scores.

拓展练习

1. Describe the type of clothes that you like to wear.

You should say:
- what type (or style) of clothes
- where you usually buy these clothes
- how often you wear them
- and explain why you like this style of clothes.

2. Describe a piece of (formal) clothes you wear on special occasions.

You should say:
- what this clothing looks like

- where you bought it
- on what special occasions you wear it
- and explain why you wear it on special occasions.

3. Describe a piece of clothes that given by someone.

You should say:
- who bought it for you
- why it was bought for you
- what it looked like
- and explain how you felt about it.

不得不说的泰国第一神汤——冬阴功

212

在这里，我们首先要区分两道题“Describe a special meal you had”和“Describe a meal (or dish) that you like to eat”。很多考生会觉得这两道题是一个内容，但其区别在于“Describe a special meal you had”是个“事件题”，我们需要阐述清楚这次 meal 的时间、地点以及为什么 special。而“Describe a meal (or dish) that you like to eat”这道题则可以只针对喜欢吃的 meal 是什么来说，背景段也从刚才的事件介绍变成了对 meal 是什么的介绍。

真题演练

Describe a meal (or dish) that you like to eat.

You should say:
- what it is
- where you usually eat it
- what the meal is made of
- and explain why you like it.

考生范文

Opening Sentences: As a foodie, I can safely say that I've tried cuisines from different parts of the world. Among them, my favourite would definitely be Tom yam kung, the top one Thai dish loved by foreigners, according to the recent investigation.

Background: If I remember correctly, the first time I tried this spicy shrimp soup was three years ago when I was sightseeing in PHUKET. Our tour guide introduced it as the most well-known recipe and recommended it to us. The soup's main ingredient is shrimp, as you know from its name because in Thai language, shrimp is referred to as 'kung'. Also, it has some vegetable components like lemon grass, chilly and kaffir-lime, which add a special flavor to the soup. Normally, the soup is served with a plate of steamed rice and a dish of omelette.

Reasons: As I first tried it, I loved it almost immediately, simply because it is savory for its unique sour and spicy taste that you will certainly need it more and more

if you try it just once. Besides, it includes medicinal properties in its herbal ingredients as well. Say, lemon grass can help relieve excessive gas in the stomach or intestine, reduce heat in the body and prevent the spread of some kinds of bacteria. What's more, there are many vegetables in it and you will get enough nutrition. It is an awesome food in the winter as you know, when I feel cold and I could have a bowl of Tom yam kung soup, I will feel really warm and comfortable.

Conclusion: You will see that the food not only tastes good, but also makes you healthy. No wonder it is noted as the number one of Thai dishes and my favourite.

考官点评

Overall, not a bad answer, however there are a number of lexical and grammatical mistakes.

Lexically speaking, there are some 'less common' words (unique, medicinal, excessive, are examples) as well as some 'collocations', 'well-known', for instance. Some of the words are incorrect though, '...the recent investigation...' should be '...the recent survey...' and '...because it is savory for its unique...' could possible change to '...because it is known for its unique...'. Also, there is little in the way of 'paraphrasing' and 'idiomatic' language, which I think would keep it out of the top scores.

Looking at the Grammar we can see a number of mistakes with at least one that may cause misunderstanding; '...As I first tried it...' should be 'when I first tried it...', with the rest of that sentence changing from '...I loved it almost immediately, simply because it is savory for its unique sour and spicy taste that you will certainly need it more and more if you try it just once.' to '...I loved it almost immediately, simply because it was so delicious and moreish that you can't just have it once.' as an example. The other main errors that really stand out are: '...and a dish of omelette.' simply needs to be '...and an omelette.' and '...is noted as the number one of Thai dishes...' would be better as '...is known as the most popular of the Thai dishes...'. These errors, I believe, would stop this example from reaching the top scores.

拓展练习

1. Describe a foreign cuisine.

You should say:
- what it is
- where you can eat it
- how you know about this food
- and explain why you would like to try it.

2. Describe a kind of foreign food you have had.

You should say:
- what it was
- where you ate it
- when you ate it
- and explain how you felt about this food.

艺术作品

213

“艺术品”题这些年一直是雅思口语考试中不冷不热的一道题。很多考生都觉得这道题非常难说，因为它涉及一些与艺术作品相关的专业名词。也正因为这样，针对该类题目，考生需要注重并提前做好准备，不要等上了考场遇到这道题时“无从下嘴”。这里给大家的一个小tips就是如果考场上真遇到这道题，大脑一片空白，也无需紧张。我们可以编一个艺术作品，这幅作品可以是你在微博上不小心看到的，也可以是你们学校艺术长廊挂着的；它既可以出自同学之手，也可以出自某个自闭少年。总之，我们只要能为考官勾画出一个作品就可以。“艺术品”题大体分为两类，描述一幅绘画或描述一个雕塑。接下来，我们分别举例看看如何来描述吧！

真题演练

Describe a work of art you have seen (e.g. a painting or sculpture).

You should say:
- when you saw this work of art
- where you saw it
- what it looked like
- and explain your impression of it.

考生范文

1：绘画

Opening Sentences: The piece of art I am going to talk about is ‘The Starry Night’ which is painted by one of the greatest painters, Vincent van Gogh. I suppose it is one of the most recognised pieces of art in the world. You know, you can see it everywhere. It can be seen on things like mugs, table clothes, T-shirts, ceramics etc.

Background: As far as I can remember, I saw this work of art in the Museum of Modern Art when I was having a trip to New York three years ago, or to be specific, in 2014. As a student majoring in art and painting, I always wanted to see this masterpiece and I was so excited at that day.

‘The Starry Night’ is an oil on canvas by the Dutch post-impressionist painter Vincent van Gogh. It depicts the view from the east-facing window of his asylum room at Saint-Rémy-de-Provence, just before sunrise. From our tourist guide, I heard that one of the biggest points of interest about this painting is

that it came entirely from Van Gogh's imagination. As a man who always paints what he sees, it's a remarkable break from Van Gogh's normal work.

Reasons/Feelings: As for my impression of it, I think it is really a masterpiece. First of all, this painting is really colourful. I like the yellow moon and stars, and blue sky on this painting. When I looked at it, I felt really peaceful. Another thing is that I could feel the positive energy from this painting somehow. You know, I heard a lot of stories about this humble painter before I went to see his work, for example, people didn't appreciate his work until his death and how tough his life was. But I think he definitely was a nice and warm-hearted person.

Conclusion: If I had another chance to visit New York, I would like to see this painting again. Thanks for your listening!

考官点评

Overall, a good answer. Looking at the Lexical Resource element, it seems a little repetitive sometimes. For example, Van Gogh is mentioned 3 times in the second paragraph. Also, although there are some good 'less common' words and 'collocations', for example '...post-impressionist...', there is very little in the way of 'paraphrasing' and 'idiomatic' language. The lack of both of these means that it would not hit the top scores.

Grammatically speaking, there are a few small errors, for example '...which is painted...' should be '...which was painted...', '...I always wanted to...' should change to '...I have always wanted to...' and '...If I had another chance...' should be '...If I have another chance...'. Even with these minor errors the score would still reach the upper levels.

考生范文

2：孔子雕像

Opening Sentence: The piece of art that I would like to talk about is the 'statue of Confucius' in my middle school.

Background: Since I started my middle school study, it has been there. I still remembered in the first day of my class, when I walked into my classroom, I saw this tall statue of Confucius. There was a footstone of the statue which included the words 'the greatest educator, philosopher and thinker in China—Confucius.' I think all of the Chinese students know this great person. As what we all had learnt, he wore a long robe and he had long hair and a full beard. What's more, this sculpture also had the typical sculpture of Confucius which included two intersecting hands in front of the breast.

Reasons: The statue of Confucius is always impressive because it is meaningful and it could definitely represent our country—the nation of propriety. First, the

sculpture doesn't show the thumb of the Confucius. It represents the image of modesty. He also puts four fingers together which means that all human beings are brothers and sisters and the society is in the great harmony. The age of the sculpture is about 60 to 70 years old which seems like an experienced scholar. His facial expression is also dignified but it is not violent because Confucius is a kindly and intelligent educator. Our school put it in front of our campus as they wanted to encourage us to work hard and think hard like Confucius. I could see this statue every day, so you know, when I got some good grades, this statue encouraged me to be better; when I failed my exams, he was like a person to comfort me.

Conclusion: So I would say thank you for having been there in my middle school and it will always be impressive.

考官点评

Overall, a good answer. However, similarly to the previous answer is a little repetitive, saying 'Confucius' 8 times and 'sculpture' at least 4 times. There are also very few 'discourse markers'.

The vocabulary does contain some 'less common' words such as 'intersecting' and 'scholar', but doesn't really contain 'idiomatic' language or 'collocations'.

Grammatically, it is not particularly smooth. It is not necessarily wrong, but wouldn't be considered native and therefore able to reach the highest scores. For example, '...Since I started my middle school study, it has been there...' could change to 'It has been there since I started studying at middle school...' and '...The age of the sculpture is about 60 to 70 years old...' would be better as '... It's about 60 or 70 years old now...'.

拓展练习

1. Describe a painting or a work of art in your school.

You should say:
- when you first saw this work of art
- where you saw it
- what it looked like
- and explain your feelings about this work of art when you saw it.

2. Describe a statue of art.

You should say:
- when you saw this work of art
- where you saw it
- what it looked like
- and explain your impression of it.

童年不可缺少的捉迷藏游戏

214

说起“童年玩过的室内游戏”，很多考生第一反应就是乐高或者纸牌，但很快你会发现很难说清楚这种游戏的规则。与其这样，不如选择一些耳熟能详，还容易介绍清楚游戏规则的游戏。这样考官不至于听不懂你在说什么。接下来要介绍的游戏，大多数人以前都接触过——捉迷藏。

真题演练

Describe an indoor game (not a sport) you used to play when you were a child.

You should say:
- what the game was
- when, where and with whom you usually played it
- how you played it
- and explain why you liked this game.

考生范文

Opening Sentences: OK, then, the indoor game I am going to talk about is called 'Hide and Seek'. In my view, this game was really popular in the childhood.

Background: I used to play this game at my grandpa's house with all my cousins when we were around 8 years old. You know, my grandpa lives in a countryside villa, so the house is very spacious. We can hide anywhere we like, like under the bed, behind the door or curtain.

As for how we played it, well, first of all, we decided who will be the seeker by flipping a coin, then the seeker should close his or her eyes for a short time while the other players are hiding. The seeker then opens his or her eyes and tries to find the hiders; the first one found is the next seeker, and the last is the winner of the round.

Reasons: Anyway, moving onto the business of why I liked playing this game so much, I would say there were two reasons. One reason is that I was very good at playing this game. You know, I used to be the winner of this game many times. This games helped me to find out how patient I could be. You know, if you want to win the game, you have to hide in a secret place and wait. Another reason is that playing this game brought my cousins and I closer together and I really enjoyed spending time with them. It was really special for me because it accompanied me through my childhood. Because of this game, my childhood is filled with happy and funny memories.

Conclusion: So yeah, now I guess you understand why I enjoyed this game.

考官点评

Overall, a very good answer with a good range of 'discourse markers'.

The vocabulary is good with some 'less common' words such as 'spacious' and 'accompanied', even though this is used incorrectly. For the higher scores I would want more in the way of 'paraphrasing' and 'idiomatic' language.

Grammatically, there isn't enough range for the very high scores in my opinion and contains some basic errors, for example '...really popular in the childhood' should be '...really popular in my childhood...'.

一封特别的信

215

说起“一封重要的信”这个考题，很多考生都觉得非常难。首先现在写信的人少之又少，另外，信中写了什么内容才能算是重要的呢？可能大家忘了，我们从小到大的录取通知书都是以信件的方式邮寄过来的，比如国内大学的录取通知书，国外大学的 offer 等。这对我们来说不就是一封特别的、重要的信吗？

真题演练

Describe an important letter that you received.

You should say:
- who wrote it
- what the letter was about
- how you felt about the letter
- and explain why it was important.

考生范文

Opening Sentences: Well, after a bit of thought, I suppose one of the most important letters I've received was an offer letter from a university I applied to—Oxford University, to be precise—so that's what I think I'll talk about. I'm afraid that I can't remember who sent me that letter, but it was definitely sent by someone from the university admission office.

Background: As for what the letter was about, well it was mainly informing me that I had been accepted onto their Master's program. As well as this, they also sent me a brochure in PDF which gave me some information of their campus and city life.

Reasons: I was on the top of the world at that time, you know, Oxford University is one of the best universities in the world, and I really wanted to have a place in Oxford University. Studying in the Oxford University is my dream since I was a little girl. It felt like all the years of hard work have finally paid off; that feeling was so great that words can't express.

Well, I have to say that this letter is so important to me. It means that I can study abroad which will definitely bring me a lot of benefits in the long run. First of all, it's good for my future career. The majority of the companies like to hire students who graduated from the top universities in the world. I do believe that I can find a decent job immediately once I graduate from Oxford University. Moreover, I reckon that studying abroad will help me become more mature and independent. You know, when you live alone in a foreign country, you have to take care of yourself and face the difficulties all by yourself. So I'm sure this will have a positive effect on my life in general.

Conclusion: I am really looking forwarding to studying in Oxford.

考官点评

Overall, a good answer. It is a little repetitive though. In paragraph 3 'Oxford University' is mentioned 3 times in 2 sentences and 5 times overall.

The vocabulary is good and there is some 'paraphrasing' but, for the highest scores, there should be more. There is some 'idiomatic' language, '...on top of the world...' and '...in the long run...', which is good.

Grammatically, although it doesn't flow entirely like a native person, I believe it would reach the higher scores.

拓展练习

Describe a good news you have received.

You should say:
- what kind of news it was
- where you got it
- when you got it
- and explain why you believed that it was good.

自制的珠子手链

216

关于“手工艺品”这一道题，我们可以与“礼物”题合并，比如做了一个礼物送给朋友或家人。关于手工艺品的一些扩展，比如自己动手缝制了一个书包或做了一个瓷碗。但在理由（Reasons）段可以提到这个东西对你的意义，它可以是“你第一次动手做的礼物”，也可以是“你无数次想放弃然后坚持下来的手工”。总之，赋予它一点意义，让回答的内容更加真实。

真题演练

Describe an art and craft activity you did at school.

You should say:
- when this happened

- what you did in the activity
- who you did it with
- and explain how you felt about this activity.

考生范文

Opening Sentence: There was a time when I was asked to make a craft by myself.

Background: It was like ages ago when I was still a second-year primary school student and art course was compulsory. Once in class, we didn't do any painting but made a beaded bracelet. It was an individual task so basically I had to make it totally on my own. Of course I could turn to my teacher or classmates for help if I was confused about the steps. But I didn't think that was necessary as it was quite a simple job. All we needed was colourful beads to choose, some elastic cords, scissors and PVA glue. The first step was to thread the beads onto the cord in the order I like. Then when I thought there were enough beads on the cord, I tried the bracelet around my wrist for size. After that, I tied the ends in a double or triple knot, put a dab of PVA glue on it and left it to dry. Finally, I needed to trim the ends of the cord and the stretchy bracelet was done.

Feelings/Reasons: It was a fresh experience of making handcraft for me so it was fun and exciting. Also, it gave me a sense of achievement and confidence for making something beautiful by myself. I believed I would buy the materials myself and make it again in my spare time. Actually, I sent this handmade bracelet to my best friend Lily three days later on her birthday. It turned out that she was quite surprised and happy to receive that. I planned to buy her a doll as a gift at the beginning. But then I thought a doll was quite ordinary, and you might find a doll with the same look everywhere on the street. So I changed my mind and decided to give her something special or unique, something made by myself.

Conclusion: In my eyes, a handmade gift was more heartwarming as it took me time, effort and energy to get it done. From then on, whenever I would like to send gifts on birthdays or weddings, I still prefer sending something made by myself. And you know what, they love it!

考官点评

An excellent answer. There is little in the way of 'collocations', 'idioms' and 'paraphrasing' though which can restrict this from the very top marks. The only errors I can find easily are 'In my eyes...', which might be better as 'In my opinion' or even '...As I see it...' and the tense error '...they love it' should be '...they loved it...'

拓展练习

1. Describe a time that you had a free gift.

You should say:
- when did you have this gift
- where did you have it
- what was the gift
- and explain how you felt about it.

2. Describe a handmade gift you gave to your friends or relatives.

You should say:
- what the gift was
- when you gave it
- how you made it by hand
- and explain why you gave a handmade gift to your friends or relatives.

3. Describe a gift you (recently) gave to someone.

You should say:
- what it was
- who you gave it to
- when you gave it
- and explain why you chose it as a gift.

珍藏版童年旧照

217

说起“家里保留的老古董”，很多考生会想说家里的一本年头很久的书籍、一幅字画或一台老家电。当然，这些都是可以的。但如果只是单纯地介绍这个老古董，你会发现一定说不够两分钟。这就需要我们在理由（Reasons）段去扩充，比如说一下这个老古董对你的意义。这时你就会发现，照片是一个非常好的选择，因为照片是记录生活留下回忆的好东西。同时，这样我们还可以与和“照片”有关的话题进行合并。接下来，我们看一下“老照片”是如何融入这道题的。

真题演练

Describe an antique or some other old things that your family has kept for a long time.

You should say:
- what it is
- how (or when) your family first got this thing
- how long your family has kept it
- and explain why this thing is important to your family.

考生范文

Opening Sentences: There is a photo with my family treasured in my album for many years. Every year, during the Spring Festival, when our family members get together in my grandparents' family and chat together, we always mention that photo.

Background: That was taken in my six-year-old's birthday party. Thanks to this photo, I met my best friend in my life. In the photo, there is a little girl with her Barbie and my grandparents. She was my neighbours. When I was a child, I had seldom played with her because she was asked to study all the time. On that day, my grandparents bought me a cake and I saw her looking at me with sorrow. I hesitated to ask her what happened. To my surprise, she cried with tears and said she was blamed for her failure in the math examination. My grandparents comforted and invited her to my birthday party.

When we were having a party, I received a Barbie from my relatives. She was so fond of it that she cannot remove her eyes. I was curious about her action and asked why she stared at my Barbie. She told me that her mother promised once she got the first in her class, she would receive the Barbie as a reward. But she failed in the math and she was very upset. My grandparents heard that and encouraged me to send it to her. She accepted and we took a photo at last.

Reasons: Every time, when I saw this photo, it reminded of my grandparents and how they taught me to be a good person. Even though, I really liked that Barbie doll, but I never felt regretful to give it to my friend because I knew that this Barbie doll comforted her. This photo also represents the beginning of our friendship. Since that day, we became very close friends till now. The Barbie doll has always appeared in my best friend's life when she gives speeches or writes essays. I am full of grateful that I could become her bestie and she's always with me when I face the difficulties.

Conclusion: And the photo, of course, is my precious thing.

考官点评

Overall, a good answer. The vocabulary lacks the 'paraphrasing', 'idiomatic' language and 'collocations' to obtain the highest scores.

Grammatically, again there are too many errors to reach the highest scores and they are generally too serious to be considered an easy mistake. 'There is a photo with my family treasured in my album for many years' would be better as 'There is a photo of my family in an album that we have treasured for many years...' and '...when our family members get together in my grandparents' family...' should change to '...when our family members get together at my grandparents' house...' to give a couple of examples.

拓展练习

1. Describe a photograph you like.

You should say:
- who were in the photo
- when and where it was taken
- who took the photo
- and explain why you like it.

2. Describe a picture or photo you like the most.

You should say:
- what is in the photo
- where you took it
- when you took it
- and explain why you like it the most.

3. Describe a picture or photograph in your family.

You should say:
- what is in the picture
- where this picture is in your home
- how this picture was taken
- and explain why you think this picture is meaningful.

4. Describe a good photo someone took for you.

You should say:
- what is in the picture
- who took it for you
- how this picture was taken
- and explain why you think this picture is meaningful.

5. Describe a photo of yourself you have taken.

You should say:
- what is in the picture
- when you took it
- how this picture was taken
- and explain how you felt about this picture.

考官版

一份难以抉择的珍贵礼物

218

真题演练

Describe a gift for others that took you long time to choose.

You should say:
- what it was
- who you gave it to
- how you chose it
- and explain why you spent a long time on choosing it.

Describe a present you gave to your friend.

You should say:
- what it was
- who you gave it to
- when you gave it
- and explain why you chose it as a gift.

考官范文

what it was/who you gave it to

I remember a few years ago I wanted to give a gift to a distant friend of mine who had just tied the knot with① her now husband. She was a very close friend at school and our classmates often said that we were joined at the hip② but after we graduated we drifted apart③ and went our separate ways④ and we hadn't contacted each other for donkeys years⑤.

when you gave it

Just by chance I found from a mutual friend that she was due to get married and I thought about perhaps trying to rekindle our friendship⑥ by sending her a wedding gift, I thought long and hard about⑦ what to get especially as I didn't know her husband and I didn't know much about her current life and what she was doing in her career, I found it really hard to buy something.

how you chose it

In the end, I decided to send her an old class photo of us and our classmates and I wrote a well-wishing message on the back of the picture

①与……结婚，喜结连理
②如胶似漆
③各奔东西
④分道扬镳，各奔前程
⑤很久
⑥再续友情
⑦对……深思熟虑

for her and her husband. I thought this was a good gift as it certainly had a lot of sentimental value for the both of us and I was sure she would have liked it.

- **and explain why you spent a long time on choosing it/why you chose it as a gift.**

It took me ages to[8] decide on what I should buy and how much money I should spend but finally I had the idea of sending her a gift that would remind her of our school days! And in doing so we have been in touch with each other much more regularly since I sent the gift. So basically, I was pretty chuffed with myself because firstly I was able to give my old classmate a really nice wedding present that had a deep sentimental meaning for the both of us. But for me, the real icing on the cake was that[9] I was able to reignite the friendship[10].

⑧花了很长时间……
⑨锦上添花的是……
⑩重拾友谊

一张有趣的家庭旧照

219

真题演练

Describe an old family photo.

- what is in the photo
- where this picture is in your home
- how this picture was taken
- and explain how you think about this photo.

Describe an interesting photo.

- what is in the photo
- where this picture is in your home
- how this picture was taken
- and explain why you think it is interesting.

考官范文

- **what is in the photo**

I have a really wonderful picture that stands out in my mind[1] and that is a photo where all of my family members are present at my grandma's house during the Chinese Spring Festival a few years ago. From older relatives to younger members of the family such as me and my cousins all squashed in together[2].

①闪现在我的脑海中
②所有人挤在一起

● **where this picture is in your home**

In my dad's study there is a long book shelf that stretches right across the length of one of the walls. The shelf is packed full of books and journals etc. but just above those books, nailed to[③] the wall is a long line of photographs. I would say that it kind of resembles a family photo album but instead of keeping all the old photos in an album, he proudly displays the best ones across the wall.

③钉在

● **how this picture was taken**

I remember dad was trying to set up his camera and no one was batting an eye lid[④] about what he was doing and everyone was minding their own business, but as soon as dad had set the timer on his camera he then got everyone's attention and they all smiled naturally and looked at the camera and he captured the perfect image.

④眨眼睛

● **and explain how you think about this photo/why you think it is interesting.**

It is interesting to me now because nowadays I rarely see all the family members together at the same time due to one reason or another so this family photo is a wonderful memory of that time. So, when I look at it on the wall in my dad's study I am instantly transported back into a wonderful memory[⑤] where all the family was happy together, just for a split second[⑥].

⑤立刻被带回到那段美好的记忆
⑥一瞬间

一件令人不满意的闲置物品——食物搅拌机

220

真题演练

Describe something you bought that you were not satisfied with.

You should say:
- what you bought
- when and where you bought it
- why you bought it
- and explain why you were not satisfied with it.

Describe something you bought but don't often use.

You should say:
- what it is
- when and where you bought it
- why you bought it
- and explain why you don't often use it.

考官范文

● **what you bought/what it is**

Oh! This is a no-brainer! [①] I would have to say it would be a food processor. It is an electrical machine, and as it turns out was quite expensive. It is designed to process different foods to make your cooking preparation a lot easier and a little more healthy.

①想都不用想！

● **when and where you bought it**

I bought it from a very respectable [②] retail outlet that sold high-end [③] electrical products for the home and it was actually recommended to me by a friend. My friend was raving about [④] this product for months and months and he kept insisting to me that I must buy one because he said he was able to prepare and cook food in a totally different way and most importantly he said it saved a lot of time in food preparation.

②相当好的
③高端的
④大肆赞扬

● **why you bought it**

The reason why I bought it is that it seemed to be quite a complex machine that could really change the way I prepare and cook food and would save a lot of time. Also due to my change in career which affected my working hours, I have little time to prepare and cook food at home now, especially during the week days. Finally, another reason is that food processors can help get rid of some of the toxins that may exist in some food products such as meat and fish.

● **and explain why you were not satisfied with it/why you don't often use it.**

I think that after I purchased the food processor I must have used it once in the last year! Also, I'm a little bit old school [⑤] and I often like to do things the old-fashioned way without the aid or assistance of such machinery. So, at the end of the day, I feel I have wasted quite a bit of money on this product because I have hardly touched it. Although, that said, I think I'll hang onto it for the time being just in-case I have a change in heart and decide to use it more but to be honest I don't think I will because I barely have the time to cook at home anymore due to my hectic working hours [⑥] ! Eating out is way more convenient!

⑤老派
⑥由于工作繁忙

儿时得到的珍贵玩具——自行车

221

真题演练

Describe a present you received when you were a child.

You should say:
- who gave it to you
- when you got it
- how you used with this present
- and explain how you felt when you got this present.

Describe a toy you used to play with in your childhood.

You should say:
- who gave it to you
- when you got it
- how often you played it
- and explain why you think it is special.

考官范文

- **who gave it to you**

Well, first and foremost I would say that children usually receive a lot of gifts as a child! It's all part of growing up, right? But many years ago I was given a gift by my parents that changed my life quite a lot. It was my very first bike.

- **when you got it**

It would have been given to me on my birthday when I was maybe five or six years old. For birthdays and other festivals children often get given 'Red Envelopes' or 'Lucky Money' from close relatives and family friends but I didn't want the money anymore! I had been asking my parents for a bike for such a long time that they finally got me one.

- **how you used with this present/how often you played it**

I would first start off by riding around the parks where I lived with my best friend. We both got on like a house on fire[①] and used to ride around all day together. As we got older and braver we would then ride to school together too, especially when the weather was not bitterly cold! During the warmer months I found it to be a great way of doing some exercise and also I felt quite a bit of freedom to go where I wanted, when I wanted.

①一见如故，一拍即合

- **and explain how you felt when you got this present/why you think it is special.**

As I was really keen to get a bike and I didn't want to get any money for

my birthday but instead I wanted a gift, it really is something that I can physically remember as I remember it being so shiny and new! I was over the moon with it and rode it for a long time. Come to think of it⑦, I should remember to thank my parents for buying me my first bike all those years ago!

②想起来了，细想一下

本土制造的传统商品——绿茶

222

真题演练

Describe a popular product made in your country (e.g. food, handcraft or car, etc).

You should say:
- what it is
- what people use it for
- how it became popular in your country/your region
- and explain why it is popular in your country/your region.

Describe a traditional product in your country.

You should say:
- what it is
- when you first saw or used it
- what it is made of
- and explain why you like it.

考官范文

● what it is

A very popular product in China today is Tea. There are now many different kinds, but one of the most famous is Green Tea. It has been a popular tea in China for a very long time and is also popular in other countries around the world.

● what it is made of/what people use it for/when you first saw or used it

Tea is a natural product that is made from specific leaves and is added with hot water. People drink it for a variety of different purposes. It can be enjoyed socially amongst different groups of people and it also contains a variety of health benefits to help cleanse the body and maintain good health. I first drank tea when I was a child. My elder relatives would often drink it and I remember I would often drink some from their cups. I enjoyed it more during the colder months as it could really warm me up and at the same time, was pretty refreshing.

● **how it became popular in your country/your region**

I wouldn't say that it was actually invented here but it was first discovered in China when a shrub[①] from a nearby tree fell into some water that was being boiled by a nobleman[②] and the rest is all history[③]! Most people would say that tea is deeply woven into Chinese culture[④] and there are many different types of tea from various regions that people can enjoy today.

①灌木
②贵族
③接下来的事情大家都知道了
④深深地融入中国文化

● **and explain why it is popular in your country/your region/why you like it.**

Tea has been a very common beverage in China and other countries for thousands of years. Tea can be enjoyed either in social circles or for medicinal purposes[⑤]. Green Tea and other forms of tea have been popular in China for hundreds of years and like I said earlier according to Chinese beliefs it is a good way of expelling toxins in the body[⑥].

⑤药用
⑥排除体内毒素

攒钱想买的特殊物品——照相机

223

真题演练

Describe something special that you saved money to buy.

You should say:
- what it was
- how long it took you to save money
- why you wanted to buy it
- and explain how you felt after you bought it.

Describe something you bought recently that made you happy.

You should say:
- what it was
- where you bought it
- why you bought it
- and explain why it made you happy.

考官范文

● **what it was/where you bought it**

I recently saved up money[①] to buy myself a new camera. The price was pretty sky high[②] and as my income each month is quite low it took me a few months, but by being frugal with[③] my money, I managed to save up.

①攒钱
②价格极高的
③节省

● **how long it took you to save money**

I would say that it took me about 4 months to save up the money to buy the camera and the extra accessories[④] that came with it such as a tri-

pod④, spare battery⑤ and I had to make sure I had enough money left over to purchase a long-term guarantee if the camera experienced any problems and needed to be repaired or replaced.

④附件
⑤三脚架
⑥备用电池

- **why you wanted to buy it**

I have always been a keen photographer and it has always been one of my favourite past times. I felt that by using the camera on my phone I couldn't get the right quality of shots⑦ that I wanted because of the technical limitations and drawbacks of taking snaps on the camera phone. So I began looking around for a better quality of camera that gave me more functions and features to take better images.

⑦保证不了拍摄质量

- **and explain how you felt after you bought it/why it made you happy.**

First and foremost I am absolutely chuffed to bits with⑧ this camera. The physical features are perfect as it is small enough to go into my backpack but the technical features are absolutely mind-blowing⑨. Although the price was high, I am so happy with the quality of the photographs that I have created that even my friends and family members have given me some great praise and even hinted⑩ that perhaps I should become a professional photographer! I could have chosen a cheaper camera but as the saying sometimes goes, if you buy cheap, you buy twice!

⑧对……心满意足
⑨令人印象深刻的，令人极震惊的
⑩暗示

一种重要的植物——竹子

224

真题演练

Describe a plant grown in your country.

You should say:
- what the plant is
- where it is grown
- why you like or dislike it
- and explain why it is important to your country.

Describe an important plant in your country (such as fruits, flowers or vegetables).

You should say:
- what the plant is
- how you know it
- why it is important
- and explain how much you like this plant.

考官范文

● **what the plant is/where it is grown**

For me, the first plant that springs to mind is[①] Bamboo. It is most commonly found in Asian countries and is used as a building material[②], a raw product[③] and even a source of food! It can be found in tropical places due to the climate which makes it the fastest growing plant in the world.

①第一个浮现在脑海的……是……
②建筑材料
③初级产品

● **how you know it**

I know of this plant because bamboo is widespread in China. A lot of people have different uses for it, which makes it a pretty versatile[④] plant. It has been depicted in many traditional Chinese works of art and is a common feature in many public parks and scenic areas. It has also become a very popular house plant[⑤]. It is very nice to add some peace and tranquility[⑥] to any living space.

④多用途的
⑤室内植物
⑥和平宁静

● **why you like or dislike it**

I do like this plant a lot and I actually fancy myself as a bit of a horticulturalist[⑦] and I do have two huge bamboo plants in my garden! I like them because they can grow tall and although flowers may not necessarily bloom on them, they do have a certain beauty which people seem to find attractive. Let's not forget that it tastes pretty good too! It is also pretty easy to maintain. It doesn't need too much sunlight and too much water for it to grow and remain healthy.

⑦园艺种植者

● **and explain why it is important to your country/how much you like this plant.**

The bamboo is a very important part of Chinese culture. In ancient China, the bamboo is often used as a metaphor to describe human characteristics such as tenacity and strength[⑧]. I really like this plant because I think it is a symbol of strength and it has managed to evolve and stand the tests of time[⑨] and still be an important part of Chinese culture today.

⑧坚韧和顽强
⑨经得起时间的考验

你喜欢并熟知的一种花——荷花

225

真题演练

Describe a kind of flower that you like.

You should say: ● what the flower is
● how you know it

- where it is grown
- and explain why you like it.

Describe a plant you are familiar with in your country.

You should say:
- what the plant is
- how you know it
- why it is important
- and explain how much you like this plant.

考官范文

- **what the flower is/where it is grown**

Without a shadow of a doubt① I must say that the Lotus flower is the one that really stands out. It is a traditional Chinese flower and grows in various water filled places. This makes it an aquatic plant② and can be cultivated in Water Gardens. It is not necessarily a native flower but over thousands of years it has continued to develop and survive③ and has prolonged its longevity④ until today.

①毫无疑问
②水生植物
③生存与发展
④延长寿命

- **how you know it**

I know this flower because it is a national symbol for some Asian countries but also it is a very traditional flower that can be found growing in ponds and lakes in parts of China and other hot and tropical places. Let's not forget that the lotus can also grow in some parts of Australia. In a local park there is a small gold fish pond and on one side of the pond there are half a dozen lotus flowers just gently resting on the surface. It creates a really nice ambience⑤ and you can easily kill time by just watching the gold fish swim about.

⑤创造一个良好的环境或氛围

- **why it is important**

I think the lotus flower and the lotus roots play an important part in Chinese cuisine. The roots can be eaten with a number of different types of food and have great health benefits. The flower petals can also be used as wrapping for some types of dishes to add to the aesthetic pleasure of eating a particular kind of food.

- **and explain why you like it/how much you like this plant.**

I like this flower for two reasons. The first is for its elegance and beauty as it sits on the surface of the water. The size of the petals and the green leaves can grow really big too and when the flowers are in bloom⑥ they can look very nice. Secondly, the lotus root⑦ is delicious!

⑥开着花
⑦莲藕

假期从家带回来的特殊礼物——一幅画

226

真题演练

Describe something special you brought home from a holiday.

You should say:
- what it was
- when and where you went
- what you did with it after you brought it home
- and explain why you thought it was special.

Describe a time that you had a gift.

You should say:
- what it was
- when and where you got it
- why you got it
- and explain how you felt about it.

考官范文

- **what it was/who bought it for you**

I would say that the most special thing that I brought back from a holiday was a painting of a famous landmark that had been created by a very well known local artist who was selling his artworks in a local gallery. I just stumbled across① this small gallery with some really amazing paintings, it was just down to pot luck②.

①偶然发现
②只是碰碰运气

- **when and where you went/when and where you got it**

It was the summer of last year and I was on a short trip to Hong Kong with my family. We had been to see so many famous sights and landmarks in Hong Kong that it was pretty exhausting, but just on the outskirts of downtown we stumbled across a really nice and quaint little Art gallery. It just so happened that a lot of the exhibits were for sale③ and as I hadn't spent too much money so far during the trip, I decided to splash out④ and buy a really beautiful painting.

③出售，待售
④挥霍一下

- **why you got it/what you did with it after you brought it home**

As soon as I got home I was thinking about where I should hang it up. I wanted to put it in my bedroom as it was a reminder of our family holiday. I decided that I should put it up on the wall opposite my desk and computer so If I feel like reminiscing about⑤ a certain event in my life, that painting will bring all those fond memories of⑥ Hong Kong

⑤追忆
⑥对……的美好回忆

flooding back.

● **and explain how you felt about it/why you thought it was special.**

It was special because it was an original painting and not only was it original, but I actually met the artist who painted the picture and really gave me some profound insight into what his inspiration was and his emotions at the time of painting. He was a little reluctant to sell it to me at first as I'm not big-on art⑦ I told him not to worry about it as it would be well looked after and in safe hands⑧ for many years to come!

⑦我不是特别喜欢艺术
⑧在可靠的人手中；安然无恙

你拥有的一件家具——床头柜

227

真题演练

Describe a piece of furniture that you own.

You should say:
- what it is
- where you bought it
- how you use it
- and explain why you like it.

考官范文

● **what it is**

A nice piece of furniture that I own is a very nice bedside table. It's a small table that goes next to the bed but in addition to it just being a table, there are some drawers as well for safe keeping. It was made from real wood and it had a very nice varnish① so that the wood felt smooth for a long time. The style was pretty straightforward! It just had four legs and a top!

①清漆；光泽面

● **where you bought it**

I bought it just the other day actually! I had been looking to buy for ages but hadn't found anything that was suitable for what I really wanted. I had looked all around the town in various different shops trying to find one but it was beginning to become a hopeless search. However one day when I happened to be in an antique shopping having a wonder about, my eyes immediately caught sight of② the perfect thing.

②看到，瞥见

● **how you use it**

After I had bought it, I placed it right next to my bed as it fit perfectly between the wall and my bed. On top of the bedside table is now a lamp which is perfect for when I want to read in bed or need to turn on a light

at sometime during the night. I can also keep my mobile phone, spare cash[③] and other small essential items in the drawers below.

③闲钱

● **and explain why you like it.**

I like it because it is not only practical but also fits perfectly next to my bed. The colour really complements the other colours in my room but the most important thing is that I can store all my bits and bobs[④] in there that I may not need everyday but are still essential nonetheless.

④零碎东西

你写的一封重要的信

228

真题演练

Describe an important letter or email you wrote.

You should say:
- who you wrote to
- when you wrote it
- what you wrote
- and explain why you wrote that letter.

考官范文

● **who you wrote to**

Well to be honest I seldom write emails or letters to family members or friends as I prefer to speak to them face to face or on the phone but for my work, writing emails is a big part of my daily work communication. Just the other day, I wrote an email to an acquaintance in response to an invitation I had received about a week ago. I was invited to attend an exhibition which was showcasing[①] a new product on energy efficiency.

①展示

● **when you wrote it**

Well as soon as I had received the invitation I jumped at the chance[②] and I replied as promptly as I could. I knew there was only a limited amount of space and tickets available as it was a first-come, first serve policy[③] so I didn't want to waste any time in replying. I would say that email is the most common and most formal way of communication although other social media platforms such as WeChat, WhatsAPP and Facebook are still powerful tools in which we can communicate.

②抓住机会
③先到先得政策

● **what you wrote**

I just wrote a short email confirming that I would like one ticket to attend the exhibition on the appropriate date. I didn't need to go into details and

give them my life story but just a simple reply was enough. Thankfully as I didn't have to write a lot, I was able to fire it off pretty sharp④ and in no time⑤ they also replied to me confirming my ticket allocation.

④很迅速地写信过去
⑤立刻，马上

❻ **and explain why you wrote that letter.**

I was really hoping to get the invitation because it would have been a bit of a blow⑥ if I hadn't been able to attend the exhibition. So I was over the moon when the final confirmation of my ticket allocation finally came through and I knew that I was going to be able to attend and see all the new prototypes⑦ on show.

⑥将受到打击
⑦原型

改变我们生活的一项重要发明——手机

229

真题演练

Describe an important invention which has changed our life.

You should say:
- what it is
- how it's changed our life
- how popular it is among different age groups
- and explain how you feel about it.

考官范文

❶ **what it is**

Well there is a lot to choose from! But I would have to say that the most important invention that has changed our lives, certainly in the way we interact with others is the Mobile Phone. I reckon it is one of the most important inventions of our time and that it still seeks to improve itself over and over again.

❷ **how it's changed our life**

It has totally changed the way we communicate with others and how we can use it is a tool to get instant access to① so much information that is available around us. And this is a product that continues to evolve and makes our lives much easier in how we get in touch with others. We can access so much now just from our phones that it is totally changed the way we control our lives.

①即刻获得

❸ **how popular it is among different age groups**

I think at first the mobile phone was popular among business people that needed to communicate more efficiently to handle their business affairs②.

But over the years the technology and the market changed so much that now, it seems that everyone has some sort of mobile phone device so they can connect to everyone more conveniently and handle their daily affairs. The technical aspects of our mobile phones are much more appealing to[3] younger phone users as opposed to[4] older phone users.

②处理业务
③对……更具吸引力
④相较

- and explain how you feel about it.

It has completely changed how we act and how we communicate now that I can't imagine life without the mobile phone. Obviously there are pro's and con's as there are with most things but in this field I would say that the pro's outweigh the con's. If I do not have my mobile phone with me, then I feel I am at a loose end[5] because I cannot communicate with anyone!

⑤无所事事的

6 抽象 & 媒体类

考生版

美丽的法语

230

学习永无止境，当然“学习”这个话题在雅思口语中是必不可少的一个话题，可能是问“你想要习得的语言”“学校里学习过的一门课程”，又或是“你想要进一步学习的东西”。在这里我们可以主要围绕这门学科是什么、怎么学以及为什么学来回答，也可以扩展一下谈到在哪里学、老师是谁或者希望谁做你的老师。总之，只要话题紧紧围绕着“学习”就可以了。

真题演练

Describe a foreign language (not English) you want to learn.

You should say:
- what it is
- where you learn it
- how you learn it
- and explain why you would like to learn it.

考生范文

Opening Sentences: The foreign language I've always wanted to learn is French. In my view, it's the most beautiful language in the world.

Background: French is one of the widely-spoken languages; it is an official language in 29 countries, including France, Belgium, Canada etc. Also, it's spoken officially in many international organisations including the United Nations, the European Union, the WTO etc.

In terms of where I learn it, well, to begin with, I'd like to enroll some online courses and learn the pronunciation of this language at the first stage. Then I would like to find a study centre where I can learn this language systematically. After I get the hang of this language, I would like to join some French community in Beijing that I can practise this language with some native speakers. I suppose it will be quite difficult for me at the beginning, but I heard that there are so many similarities between French and English. My English is not bad, so I won't worry too much about my French.

Reasons: There are a couple of reasons why I want to learn French instead of other languages. For one thing, France is internationally and locally famous for its mouth-watering cuisine. As a foodie, I'm really into the patisseries, and I even want to learn how to make them. For another, France is a beautiful and romantic country with so many famous historic sites, so I want to travel to France and learn things about this beautiful country all by myself.

Conclusion: I really hope my French can be as good as my English in the near future.

考官点评

Overall, a very good answer. It has some good 'less common' words as well as some 'collocations' and 'idiomatic' language such as '...After I get the hang of this language...'. There's some paraphrasing and this would reach the upper scores.

Grammatically, again, excellent and would certainly reach the top scores.

拓展练习

1. Describe a course you learnt at school, university or evening class.

You should say:
- what the course was
- what you did at school, university or evening class
- who taught the course
- and explain what you learnt from the course.

2. **Describe something that you want to learn more.**

You should say:
- what it is
- where you can learn it
- how to learn it
- and explain why you want to keep learning it.

3. Describe a class or training session that you enjoyed.

You should say:
- what the teacher (and the students) did
- when and where you had this class
- what you learnt in this class or training session
- and explain why you enjoyed it.

一次美妙的骑马课

231

“技能”这个话题和想学习的“学科”还是有一些区别的，因此我们单独拿出来说一下。“技能”这个话题出现过的考题，其问法会有一些区别，主要体现在时态上：一种是“你想要学习的一项技能”，一种是“小时候学会的一项技能”。但不管这个问题怎么问，我们都可以谈这个技能是谁教会的，和这个人的关系是什么，在哪里或是在何种情形下学会的这项技能。这里以“你想要学习的一项技能”为例，我们来谈谈“骑马”这项技能。

真题演练

Describe a new skill you want to learn.

You should say:
- what it is
- where you can learn it
- how to learn it
- and explain why you want to learn it.

考生范文

Opening Sentences: The new skill I want to learn is called horse-riding. I guess I may felt like a bird if I could ride a horse in a vast pasture land.

Background: As for where I can learn it, well, I did some research a couple of months ago. The perfect spot to learn horse-riding is called Rose Garden. This place is about an hour's drive just to the south west of Guangzhou. Since it is quite close to the Guangzhou University City, I suppose their target audiences are those university students. So, the price is inexpensive because of this. Well, I can't quite remember the exact price for each session, I'm afraid. But if I'm not mistaken, the hourly price is around 200RMB including the coaching fee.

To be honest, even though I am a quick learner, I can't teach myself horse-

riding. Well, first and foremost, I guess finding a good coach is the most important thing. You know, a qualified coach can teach me a lot of practical skills so that I won't waste too much money and time on it. Also, I may need catch some reading about the horse and some other resources related to this skill.

Reasons: Well, regarding why I want to learn it, first of all, as I was saying, I felt like a bird if I could ride a horse. Also, I am so adventurous and like to try something different. Last but not least, I once read a news report which said that horse-riding is a great cardiovascular workout; it could benefit my body as well as the whole person.

Conclusion: Oh, speaking of this, I wish I could start to learn how to ride a horse after the IELTS exam.

考官点评

Overall, a good answer, with a range of 'discourse markers', but looks a bit like they're trying too hard, especially the last sentence.

Lexically, it has some good 'less common' words; 'cardiovascular' and 'first and foremost' for example, but little in the way of 'paraphrasing', 'collocations' or 'idiomatic' language. This would limit it from the very high scores.

Grammatically, it's excellent with only a couple of errors such as '...I may felt like a bird...' would be better as '...I'd feel like a bird...' and '...after the IELTS exam...' might be better as '...after this IELTS exam...'. This is certainly worth the upper scores.

拓展练习

1. Describe a (useful) skill you recently learnt.

You should say:
- what the skill is/was
- where you learnt it
- how you learnt it
- and explain how you think this skill will be useful in the future.

2. Describe a skill you learnt as a child.

You should say:
- what this skill was
- when you learnt it
- how you learnt it
- and explain why you think it was important.

生活技能 get——包饺子

232

这道题中的“技能”跟上一题的区别之处在于，该题考查的范围更小，只能谈家人教你的一项技能，不能谈别人教给你的技能。因此，审题也非常重要，一不小心跑题了，就会影响成绩。话题的切入点和上一题也基本相似，这里我们以“包饺子”这项传统的家庭技能为例看看怎么对付“跟家人学到的一项技能”这道题。

真题演练

Describe something useful you learnt from a member of your family.

You should say:
- what it was
- who you learnt it from
- how you learnt it
- and explain why you think it is useful.

考生范文

Opening Sentences: The useful skill I learnt from a family member is making dumplings. As you may know, dumplings are well-known both at home and abroad. Our Chinese people like to make dumplings on some really special occasions such as Chinese New Year.

Background: Well, I learnt this skill from my mother who is really good at making dumplings. I even heard from my grandma that my mum could make very scrumptious dumplings since she was only 10 years old. So, I decided to learn this skill from my mum. She just taught me how to make dumplings last winter holiday.

I would say my mum is a really good teacher, you know, she broke the complicated procedure into small tasks. Every time I learnt a new step and ready move to the next, she asked me to repeat the same routine from the very beginning, so that I won't get so confused about the order of each steps. At the beginning, it was very hard for me to make dumplings; after practising a few times under my mum's instruction, I got the hang of it very quickly.

Reasons: The main reason why my mum taught me is that she thought it's a really good practice for my DIY skill. Also, making dumplings is one of the Chinese traditions, so I always wanted to learn this skill when I was young. On the top of that, I think this is really useful simply because dumpling is one of the most famous Chinese food and it is well-received among all the western people. So, If I had the chance to study abroad, I could make dumplings by myself and share with my new foreign friends.

Conclusion: Now I guess you could understand why I think it is useful.

考官点评

Overall, an excellent answer with a good logical flow to it as well as a range of 'discourse markers'.

Lexically, it has some good 'less common' words; 'scrumptious' and 'routine' as well as some 'collocations', 'well-known' for example. It lacks enough good 'idiomatic' language and 'paraphrasing' to reach the very high scores. Also, as a general note, 'dumplings' was repeated too many times—3 in the first paragraph alone!

Grammatically, there are a few mistakes such as: '...Our Chinese people like...' should be '...Chinese people like...', '...and ready move...' should be '...and was ready move...' , '...each steps...' needs to change to '...each step...' and '...my DIY skill...' needs the 's' — '...my DIY skills...' , but it would still reach the upper scores.

拓展练习

Describe the thing you learnt from a family member.

You should say:
- what it is
- how well you master it
- how you learnt it
- and explain the reason why your family taught it to you.

留学梦

233

“目标”或者“计划”类的题目都是对未来的一个期待，这个目标可像王健林那样的“先赚一个亿”的“小”目标，也可以是你近期准备做的事，想必在看这本书的你最近的小目标就是顺利与雅思分手，成功踏上海外求学的道路吧。这里我们主要围绕目标或者计划，说说自己为实现梦想做了哪些努力，什么时候实现这个目标，如何实现这个目标，或者谈谈为什么要实现这个目标，完成这个计划或者目标对你有哪些好处等。

真题演练

Describe a goal you want to achieve in the future.

You should say:
- what the goal is
- what you would do to achieve it
- when you will achieve
- and explain why you want to achieve it.

考生范文

Opening Sentences: The goal I really want to achieve is to study abroad. And I am so glad that I am working towards my goal now.

Background: As far as I can remember, the first time I set this goal was when I was the first-year student of my university. Some of excellent graduates shared their overseas study experience with us in a social networking event inside of my university. I was so impressed by what they had done during their period of study abroad.

With regard to what I would do to achieve it, to begin with, I need to get a really good GPA score. To gain acceptance into a more selective university, I have to go the extra mile. Apart from that, I try to participate in as many activities as possible, such as doing some volunteer work, finding a summer internship related to the major I'm studying and things like that. Plus, taking the IELTS exam and getting a good score plays a pivotal role in applying to top universities in the world.

Reasons: There are a couple of reasons why I want to achieve it. First of all, studying abroad is a great way to broaden my worldview. I could spend quite a long time staying in a totally different country and learning about different cultures. Another obvious plus point is that I would be more independent, you know, I need to take care of myself and face all the difficulties by myself. Hopefully I can achieve this goal after I graduate from my uni, or to be specific, in one year.

Conclusion: I'm going to apply to some of top universities in the UK after I get an ideal score for my IELTS exam. Fingers crossed for my exam!

考官点评

An excellent answer, with good Coherence and a range of 'discourse markers'.

Lexically, it has all the features required for the highest scores: 'idiomatic' language, '...go the extra mile...'; 'less common' words, 'broaden' and 'independent' and even some 'paraphrasing'.

Grammatically, again excellent. The only small errors I can find are: '...the first-year student...' should change to '...a first-year student...' and '...a more selective university...' would be better as '...a more select university...'. This would certainly reach the very high scores.

拓展练习

Describe a plan you have for the future.

You should say:
- what the plan is
- when you thought of the plan
- who is involved in the plan
- and explain how you think you will achieve the plan.

最爱的金秋

234

“季节”这个话题无论在Part 1还是Part 2中都常有涉及，问题基本上是以“喜好类”的形式出现，可能会是“最喜欢的季节”，也可能会谈到“最不喜欢的季节”。不管是谈到喜欢还是不喜欢的季节，大家都可以谈一下那个季节到底是什么样子的，以及你喜欢或不喜欢的原因是什么。以“秋天”为例，这个季节既没有夏天的炎热，也没有冬天的臃肿和春天的潮湿，自然成了笔者最喜欢的季节，没有之一！

真题演练

Describe your favourite season.

You should say:
- what season it is
- what the weather is like at this time
- what people usually do at this time (or, what you usually do)
- and explain what is special about that season.

考生范文

Opening Sentences: To be honest, I think all seasons have their own good. But among them, I'd say my favourite is autumn.

Background: As we know, autumn comes between summer and winter, lasting from September to November. In China, the weather in autumn is mild and not much unsettled. It's neither too warm nor too cold like you experience in winter and summer, and it's not as wet as spring either. Also, it seems that autumn in China is about festivity, for example, the Mid-Autumn Festival is to tribute to the full moon and on China's National Day, we celebrate our country's birthday. Of course, it means public holidays for workers and school children too.

Reasons: While daytime gets shorter in autumn, I still would say it's the best time for outdoor activities like jogging. The weather is cool and comfortable so you won't sweat much like in summer and you can just wear light outfit without being as bulky as in winter to keep warm. More importantly, you'll find it a great time to do any kind of hiking as it's rather dry and hardly rains. Another great thing about autumn is that it's also an ideal season for sightseeing. Leaves change colours in autumn and those from gingko trees are especially stunning. They turn bright gold and fall, making sidewalks veritable Yellow Brick Road. Lastly, autumn is a harvest season, which means I can try a wide range of seasonal fruits.

Conclusion: If you're coming to China for travelling, I would suggest you to come in autumn. It's plain to see how great the season is.

考官点评

Overall, a good answer.

It shows some use of 'less common' language such as, 'bulky' and 'sweat' as well as 'veritable'. It lacks however, much in the way of 'paraphrasing' and 'idiomatic' language although 'Yellow B rick Road' is approaching the right lines.

Grammatically, it's good. There are a few errors, for example, '...have their own good...' is missing a word at the end, '...have their own good elements...' maybe and '...is to tribute to...' needs to change to '...is the tribute to...'. This would still be able to reach the upper scores though.

拓展练习

Describe a season that you like.

You should say:
- what season it is
- what is special with the season
- what people do in this season
- and explain why you like the season.

影响深刻的“妮妲”台风

235

“天气”这个话题要和“季节”话题好好区分开来，因此我们也单独来看一下。近些年，有关该话题的常考题目为“你经历过的一场坏天气”，我们可以谈论一下这个坏天气发生在什么时候，产生了哪些不好的影响，给你的生活带来了哪些不便等。住在珠江三角洲的“童鞋”对夏日的台风应是司空见惯了，这里我们以去年凶猛的“妮妲”台风为例，看看如何谈论坏天气这个话题。

真题演练

Describe a bad weather that you have experienced before.

You should say:
- what the bad weather is
- when you experienced it
- what happened during that time
- and explain how you felt about this bad weather.

考生范文

Opening Sentences: I live in the south part of China. As you know, the place features its subtropical climate, which means typhoons occurs a lot. Today, I would like to describe a time when I experienced a strong typhoon called Nida.

Background: I remember it swept over southern China in summer last year. It was said to be the strongest typhoon to hit the Pearl River Delta since 1983. On the day

it struck Guangzhou, the sky became dark in the morning as if it was late at night. As you could imagine, torrential rain kept pouring down with gales and thunder, which was pretty scary and noisy outside.

We were told to stay indoor that day so I could only know what happened by the news from TV. It was reported that there were quite a lot of damages it caused. The streets and some coastal cottages were flooded, the traffic was in mess and in some cases, people had to move forward in the water by boat. Also, things were blown away by the strong wind, from young plants to covers of the factories. Many flights had been cancelled or delayed because of the severe weather condition.

Feelings/Reasons: I felt terribly sorry for those who got injured or lost their home due to the bad weather and of course, for the damaged and inconvenience it caused to the country too. But at the same time, I was glad that I could have a day off at home because schools had been asked to suspend class to ensure safety of workers and students. So basically, I didn't suffer from this 'worst of the year' weather, instead, I stayed at home with my window shut surfing the net and relaxing for a whole day.

Conclusion: But I believed nobody wanted his or her city to experience an extremely bad weather even if there could be one day off.

考官点评

Overall a good answer, but doesn't really have too many 'discourse markers'.

Lexically, it contains some great 'less common' language, such as 'torrential' and 'severe' as well as some good 'collocations' and 'paraphrasing'. I'm not sure if 'gales and thunder' go together 'Thunder and Lighting' would be better.

The grammar is not as good though, with frequent mistakes. For example, '...the place features its subtropical climate' should be '...the place features a subtropical climate...', '...typhoons occurs a lot...' needs to drop the 's'—'...typhoons occur a lot...', '...told to stay indoor' needs to add an 's' '...told to stay indoors...', '...people had to move forward in the water by boat...' needs to be reworded, maybe to '...people needed a boat to get anywhere...'. Also, the last sentence would be better as 'But I don't believe anybody would want this kind of weather to hit his or her city just so that can have a day off.'

拓展练习

Describe a bad weather experience.

You should say:
- what sort of bad weather it was
- when it happened

- where you were when it happened
- and explain how it affected you.

小时候的共同回忆——捉迷藏

236

“游戏”是“抽象类”常考的话题之一。可以谈一些室内游戏，比如说电脑游戏、纸牌游戏、各种棋类，或者是小时候大家都爱玩的捉迷藏；也可以谈一些室外的游戏，比如接飞盘、跳格子或者球类游戏。主要围绕和谁玩、在哪里玩以及如何玩这个游戏来展开回答。这里我们以“捉迷藏”为例来看看怎么说。

真题演练

Describe a game not a sport you used to play when you were a child.

You should say:
- what the game was
- when, where and with whom you usually played it
- how you played it
- and explain what was special about this game.

考生范文

Opening Sentences: OK, then, the game I am going to talk about is called ‘Hide and Seek’. In my view, I really think this game is popular in the childhood. And everyone in my country are really familiar with this game.

Background: I used to play this game at my grandpa’s house with all my cousins when we were around 8 years old. At that time, we didn’t have any electrical equipment to entertain ourselves. So, we liked to play games together. As for where we usually played it, well, you know, we liked to play it in my grandpa’s countryside villa. His villa is very spacious which consists of more than 8 bedrooms, 4 toilets, 2 terraces and 1 study room. We can hide anywhere we liked as long as we stay inside of the house, like under the bed, behind the door or curtain.

As for how we played it, well, first of all, we decided who will be the seeker by flipping a coin, then the seeker should close his or her eyes for a short time while the other players find a safe place, then hide. After a minute, the seeker then opens his or her eyes and tries to find all the hiders; the first one found is the next seeker, and the last is the winner of the round.

Feelings: Anyway, moving onto the business of what was special about this game, one thing that really worth mentioning is that everyone could join this game and feel over-joyed. Another thing I shouldn’t forget to mention is that this game brought my cousins and I closer together and I really enjoyed spending time with them. Now whenever I saw some young kids playing this game in my residential area,

it always reminds me of the old good days I spent with my cousins.

Conclusion: That's pretty much of it, thanks for listening!

考官点评

Overall, a very good answer with good Coherence and a range of 'discourse markers'.

Lexically speaking it has some good 'less common' words, 'terrace' and 'residential' for example, as well as some good 'collocations', such as 'over-joyed'. There is an attempt at 'idiomatic' language, but it's not correct: '...the old good days...' should be '...the good old days...'.

Grammatically, it does show range but there are too many small errors for the very top scores. For example, '...popular in the childhood.' could change to '...popular for children.', 'And everyone in my country are...' should change to 'And everyone in my country is...', '...very spacious which consists...' needs to be '...very spacious and consists...' and '...that really worth mentioning...' should be '...that really is worth mentioning...' to name a few.

As a final note, the last sentence is unnecessary as there are enough words to cover 2 minutes and it sounds a bit fake.

拓展练习

1. Describe a game in your childhood.

You should say:
- what the game was
- when, where and with whom you usually played it
- how you played it
- and explain what was special about this game.

2. Describe a game you enjoy (not sport).

You should say:
- what kind of game it is
- who you play it with
- where you play it
- and explain why you enjoy playing it.

二胎政策

237

"法律"这种题目虽然有点"冷门"，但一旦出现会让很多考生想丢弃盔甲撒腿就跑。看到这题先别腿软，先想想有什么条例是和自己的生活密切相关的。通过自己身边的一些实例或者对自己产生影响的法律法规来谈，会更容易一些。比如，公共场所施行全面禁烟的法律法规，这会对烟民造成什么影响。还有去年的开放二胎政策，对独生子女而言，是不是有种"喜大普奔"的感觉？当然你可以表达出自己的立场，以及阐述一下维持该立场的原因。

真题演练

Describe a good law in your country.

You should say:
- what the law is
- how you first learnt about this law
- who benefits from this law (who is affected by this law)
- and explain why you think this is a good law.

考生范文

Opening Sentences: I guess one of the most influential laws that has taken effect since 2016 is definitely the two-child policy. I'm glad that the decades-long one-child policy finally ended as the new law became effective on January 1st, 2016. So, at present, all married couples are allowed to have two children. This law is actually a revised version of the previous rule where they can have a second baby only if one parent is an only child.

Background: I first got this great news from my aunt, who always wants to have another child and concerns about the latest policy of family planning. She shared the news with us when having dim sum together in a sunny morning. And I still remember the policy was so widespread and popular that almost everyone was discussing about it at that time. I think that was mainly because it can benefit every family or literally everyone. So even if I didn't meet my aunt, I could still know it sooner or later.

Reasons: In my opinion, it's a positive move for us. In terms of families, parents would like to have more than one child to take care of them during the old age, take charge of the family business or maybe simply add more joy to their life. The only child, likewise, also wants more siblings or cousins to grow up or play with during the childhood so that he or she could feel less lonely, and always have company. From the aspect of an individual, besides, it can be seen a step worth celebrating as it means greater personal freedom in China. At least Chinese nowadays stops suffering from a variety of punishments, from fines and the loss of employment to forced abortions.

Conclusion: Though I think if China is serious about respecting human rights, the government should immediately end controls over people's decisions to plan families and have children, the new law still means progress and it takes time to be perfected.

考官点评

Overall, a good answer, however for the very top scores I'd like to see more of a range of 'discourse markers'.

Lexically speaking, it has some good 'less common' language such as, 'influential' and 'widespread' as well as some great 'collocations', 'family planning' for example. It lacks 'idiomatic' language though, which again would stop it from hitting the highest scores.

Grammatically, there are quite a few errors: '...who always wants to have...' should be '...who always wanted to have...', '...together in a sunny morning...' should change to '...together on a sunny morning...', '...discussing about it at that time.' should be '...discussing it at that time.' and '...I could still know it sooner or later.' can change to '...I would still know about it sooner or later.' to name a few.

佛罗伦萨奥特莱斯

238

"一则消息"是让很多考生头疼的话题，因为考的范围实在是太小了，让人无从下手，尤其当你碰到像"描述一则你家乡本地的新闻"时更是手足无措。不过，这道题我们可以和"家乡最近的改变"联系起来，谈谈这则消息或新闻会对你或者对你周围人的生活产生一些什么样的影响。2015年，笔者的家乡开了一家"佛罗伦萨小镇"，那是一个名牌汇集却价格亲民的地方，对喜欢购物的朋友来说真是一个令人振奋的消息呀！

真题演练

Describe a piece of good news you have received.

You should say:
- what this piece of news was
- when and where you received it
- how you reacted after receiving this piece of news
- and explain why you think this was a piece of good news.

考生范文

Opening Sentence: As a shopaholic, I have to say one of the greatest news for me was that a luxury designer outlet called Florentia Village would open in my hometown, Foshan after three months.

Background: If I remember it right, I got the news from a local newspaper in June about two years ago. I was checking the headlines at home as usual. The media took quite a lot of space to cover this event and I guess that was mainly because that was what most people, especially female readers, are interested in, including me. Based on the detailed coverage, it was the third Florentia Village in China and the first in South China, which sounded fantastic enough because

before that, we could only shop at an outlet store when travelling to other parts of China or foreign countries. So as soon as I saw the news, I was extremely excited that I almost screamed and jumped for joy.

Reasons: Of course I had the right reason to be happy. To begin with, the outlet was said to offer richest brand mix, high-quality service, and remarkable discounted offers of up to 80-percent all year-round. That would be great when you could get genuine goods at discounted prices. Another highlight of this shopping centre was the authentic Italian ambiance, which you could feel there. According to the journalist, when you were choosing what you want to buy there, you would find yourself immersed in romantic and prosperous surroundings: open buildings, a big square, stone roads, arcades and verandas, and a fountain—all to make you feel that you are shopping in Italy. Also, the village was going to introduce Guangdong region's food culture. More food brand would move in, including the Hong Kong-style cafés, and Cantonese-style restaurants. All of these would make it a shopping paradise for consumers. So you could stay for a day, take your time shopping , eating and enjoying the gorgeous views.

Conclusion: Just one thing: it was not going to be located in the city centre, but I didn't really care. It would be convenient to drive there and find a place for my car in the underground parking spaces or above-ground parking lots. Anyway, till now, I visit there like two times a month to get a superb shopping experience.

考官点评

Firstly, at nearly 400 words, this answer is too long and 2 minutes would probably be towards the end of the Reasons section. Not finishing, wouldn't affect the scoring though.

Lexically, it is very good with a lot of 'less common' words such as 'headlines', 'shopaholic' and 'paradise'. There are also some good 'collocations', 'high-quality' and 'year-round' for example and some good 'paraphrasing'. There are however, some glaring errors in word choice '...I was extremely excited that I almost screamed and jumped for joy.' should be '...I was so excited that I almost screamed and jumped for joy.' as an example.

Grammatically, it is good with a few errors: '...one of the greatest news...' needs to be '...one of the greatest pieces of news...', '...are interested in...' should be '...were interested in...', '...I had the right reason to be happy.' could be better as '...I had several reasons to be happy.' and 'More food brand...' needs to add an 's'—'More food brands...'.

Lastly, the sentence '...the authentic Italian ambiance, which you could feel there.' might be better as '...the authentic Italian ambiance, which you would feel there.' As in theory, she hadn't been there yet. I think this would still reach the upper scores.

拓展练习

1. Describe a piece of local news that people were interested in.

You should say:
- what it was about
- when you saw/heard the news
- where you saw/heard the news
- and explain why it was interesting.

2. Describe a recent change to your hometown.

You should say:
- where is the change
- how it has changed
- what it used to be like
- and explain how you feel about the change.

一篇与致癌物有关的文章

239

谈一篇读过的文章也许并不难，可是谈论一篇“有关健康生活的文章”，这个范围就缩小了一大半。这个话题既可以谈一篇读过的文章，也可以谈在网上看到一篇“有关健康生活方式”的文章，所以我们完全可以把健康生活方式和一篇文章两者相结合。谈谈该文章的主要内容，为什么认为这篇养生文章好或者不好，以及谈谈在什么时间什么契机读到这篇文章。试想，当你看到标题写着“……致癌”的文章，你肯定会毫不犹豫点进去看个所以然吧？这里我们来看一篇与致癌物相关的文章。

真题演练

Describe an article you read from a magazine or from the Internet about healthy life.

You should say:
- what the article was about
- when and where you read it
- how it was related to healthy life
- and explain why you think it is a good or bad article.

考生范文

Opening Sentences: It has become a habit for me to read articles from 'Daily Mail', a British website with comprehensive information, on a daily basis. I can not only learn English-related vocabulary but also enrich my knowledge. Especially, as a health nut, I tend to pay much attention to those concerning healthy diet. It occurred to me that once I saw an article about two years ago when I was in metro on my way to the university in the morning.

Background: It caught my attention with a striking headline 'Bacon, ham and sausages 'as big a cancer threat as smoking', WHO to warn'. I believed nobody wanted to

eat or take in something that would cause a fatal disease like cancer. In the article, it said that the World Health Organisation had published a report days ago on the dangers of eating processed meats including the three mentioned in the headline. Global health experts maintained that when meat is preserved by smoking, curing or salting, or by adding preservatives, cancer-causing substances or carcinogens can be formed. What's more, even fresh red meat was expected to be regarded as bad for health.

Reasons: In my eyes, it was a nice piece and did really worth reading. For one thing, it was quite a convincing article. Unlike most similar writings, it was strongly evidence-based. I mean, it reported something from an authentic institute and provided figure support as well by saying a study had found that processed meat was to blame for one in 30 early deaths. For another, it gave readers practical suggestions instead of simply stating facts. It was like, it advised people to reduce their bowel cancer risk by eating no more than 500g per week of red meat, such as beef, pork and lamb.

Conclusion: Anyway, I totally believed what I was told. And I would say, inspired by the article, I decided to cut back on red meat to reduce my risk of developing cancer.

考官点评

Overall, a very good answer.

Looking at the vocabulary, it has quite a few 'less common' words like 'comprehensive', 'enrich' and 'preservatives', but little in the way of 'idiomatic' language, 'health nut', which would not be enough for the highest scores.

Grammatically, again, good but with a few mistakes. For example, '...tend to pay much attention...' would be better as '...tend to pay a lot of attention...', '...bad for health...' could be '...bad for people's health...' and '...provided figure support...' needs to change to '...provided figures to support...'. This would still reach the upper scores even with these errors.

拓展练习

1. Describe an article that you read from a magazine or newspaper.

You should say:
- what the article was
- when and where you read it
- what you learnt from the article
- and explain why you think it is a good or bad article.

2. Describe a good habit your friend has that you want to develop.

You should say:
- what the good habit is

- who the person is
- why you want to learn
- and explain how to develop it.

3. Describe a plan you have for the future but not related to work or study.

You should say:
- what the plan is
- when you thought of the plan
- who is involved in the plan
- and explain how you think you will achieve the plan.

连锁百货 John Lewis 的广告

240

在“媒体类”的话题中，广告出现的频率很高，如：“描述让你印象深刻的广告”“描述你认为非常成功的广告”以及“描述让你有购买欲的广告”等，这些题目的主题都是围绕着广告，其他题目也可以部分套用这些题目的素材。这里我们来看一个例子，英国大型连锁百货 John Lewis 每年的圣诞广告都是众所期待的事，在英国，很多人每年都在盼着它的出品。每一年的广告都诚意满满，不是创意无限，就是温馨感人！我们来看看为什么这则 John Lewis 的广告让人如此印象深刻……

真题演练

Describe an advertisement which has impressed you most.

You should say:
- what the product is
- when you saw it
- what contents it includes
- and explain why it is impressive.

考生范文

Opening Sentence: I'm going to talk about one of the John Lewis Christmas adverts, which I guess struck me most among all the advertisements I've seen.

Background: Apparently, it was an ad for John Lewis, the British department store chain, which releases a TV ad every year before Christmas. Since the first one was launched in 2007, it has become something of an annual tradition in British popular culture. It's got widespread media coverage and applause. Like most people, I look forward to watching it each year. Among all, the one for 2014 left me the deepest impression. I still remember the first time I watched it was from a Wechat official account for English one day after its release. Like what its name 'Monty the Penguin' refers to, it tells the tale of an unlikely friendship between a little boy Sam and his penguin friend Monty. They are pretty close to each other and do almost everything together from eating to playing. One day, Sam notices that his fluffy friend stares at kissing couples on TV as well

as the street, guessing that the lovely creature really looks forward to having a companion, or a girlfriend. Thus, he sends another penguin to Monty as his Christmas gift, which makes his friend surprised and touched. This commercial ends with the strapline 'Give someone the Christmas they've been wishing for', suggesting that you can buy what your friends dream of in John Lewis.

Reasons: I can't help watching this ad over and over again because for one thing, it's classic and definitely worth a second watch. I mean, unlike most of ads which are roughly made and simply repeat the slogan a couple of times, it involves beautiful scenes, a catchy song and a detailed story with heartwarming plots. It has artistic beauty in itself and you can enjoy it just as you enjoy a micro movie. For another, it's creative and surprising. You never find how the theme of the story relates to the thing it promotes until you watch the whole ad. You just can't guess what would happen next unless you finish, which makes it so absorbing too.

Conclusion: Given what I said before, I suppose you know why I can remember the ad till now and want to recommend it to you.

考官点评

Firstly, at nearly 400 words, this would take longer than 2 minutes to say and would probably be stopped half way through the Reasons section. Not 'finishing', wouldn't have an effect on the score though.

Lexically, it has some good 'less common' words like 'traditional' and 'strapline', but there is little in the way of 'idiomatic' language other than 'heartwarming'. The examiner would want more for the highest score levels, but it would reach the upper scores.

Grammatically, it is excellent, with only a few minor errors. For example, 'Among all...' would be better as 'Among them all, ...'. This would certainly reach the top level scores.

拓展练习

1. Describe an advertisement that you think is successful.

You should say:
- what is advertised
- what the advertisement contains (the contents of this advertisement are)
- what the function (purpose) of this advertisement is
- and explain why you think this advertisement works well.

2. Describe an advertisement that makes you want to buy something.

You should say:
- what kind of advertisement it was
- when and where you saw or heard this advertisement
- what product or service it advertised
- and explain why you decided to buy that product.

3. Describe an advertisement you have seen recently.

You should say:
- when and where you saw it
- what was advertised
- what the contents of the advertisements were
- and explain how you felt about it.

4. Describe an unforgettable advertisement (that you saw or heard or liked).

You should say:
- where you saw or heard it
- what kind of advertisement it was
- what the contents of the advertisement were
- and explain how you felt when you saw or heard it.

扣人心弦的歌剧魅影

241

“演出”这个话题在“媒体类”中也是经常出现的。常问的问题形式有“最近看过的一场演出”“你喜欢的一场演出”“你很享受的一场表演”等，这里的演出可以谈话剧、演唱会、街头表演、杂技、歌舞晚会、歌剧、音乐剧等。主要问题的方式是集中在what、when、who、where和how上，我们可以着重谈一下整个表演给自己带来的感受以及为什么有这样的感受。接下来以音乐剧“歌剧魅影”为例，我们来看看怎么描述。

真题演练

Describe a performance that you recently watched.

You should say:
- what performance it is
- when and where you watched it
- who you were with
- and explain how you felt about the performance.

考生范文

Opening Sentences: The performance I'm going to talk about is the smash hit musical called 'The Phantom of the Opera'. It's the most well-known musical all over the world. Maybe you have never seen it before, but I bet you must heard a lot about it. I would say this musical is such a masterpiece.

Background: As far as I can remember, I saw it just a couple of weeks ago. It was the time when I visited my bestie who lives in London.

I've heard so much about this musical and always wanted to see it, so I successfully persuaded my bestie to accompany me. 'The Phantom of the Opera' was shown at Her Majesty's theatre, which is located in the very centre of London, just one minute walking distance from Piccadilly circus tube station. So, it can be easily accessed if you choose to take the tube there.

Feelings/Reasons: In terms of how I felt about this performance, well, I would say I love this musical to death—maybe the best performance ever made! I was so impressed by the actor and actresses' performance. At the very beginning, I found it's quite odd to see people acting in front of you; after a short while, I could totally empathise with their performance and felt all the emotions that the main characters tried to convey. The another reason is that the music from this show is amazing. I particularly like the song 'I Remember'. I've already listened to this song countless times from the music app on my phone, and never get bored of it.

Conclusion: I strongly recommend you to see it if you have the chance.

考官点评

Overall, an excellent answer. It has some good 'less common' words like 'masterpiece' and 'peformance, as well as 'collocations' like 'smash hit' and 'well-known'. There isn't much in the way of 'paraphrasing' though.

Grammatically, again, excellent with just a few small errors. For example, '...impressed by the actor...' should be '...impressed by the actors...' and '...just one minute walking distance...' would be better as '...just a one minute walk...'. This would certainly reach the upper scores and maybe beyond.

拓展练习

Describe a show or performance that you enjoyed watching (for example, a dance or singing performance).

You should say:
- what kind of performance it was
- what and where you saw it with
- who the performer was
- and explain how you felt about this performance.

夺人眼球的"爱乐之城"

242

"电影"这个话题在雅思口语考试中经久不衰，可以堪称雅思口语考试中的经典题目。如果你还没来得及准备电影这类话题，可以好好看看这里给出的素材和范文。有关"电影"这个话题，每个季度话题的问法会有一些区别，比如"最近喜欢看的电影""很有趣的电影""愿意推荐给别人的电影"或是"想再看一次的电影"。不管这些问题如何问，其实都可以谈你是何时何地和谁一起看的电影，电影的内容是什么以及你为什么喜欢看这部电影。这里我们以去年大热的《爱乐之城》为例，来看看怎么描述"你最近喜欢看的电影"。

真题演练

Describe a foreign film that you recently enjoyed watching.

You should say:
- what film it was
- who the actors were
- what the film was about
- and explain why you enjoyed this film.

考生范文

Opening Sentences: The first foreign movie occurs to me would definitely be 'La La Land' and it dazzled me when I first saw it. So even if it missed the Best Picture of Oscar, it's still my best of the year. And I guess I'm not the only one who loves it.

Background: It is a romantic musical written and directed by Damien Chazelle, and starring Ryan Gosling and Emma Stone as a musician Mia and an aspiring actress Sebastian who meet and fall in love in Los Angeles but as success mounts, the dreams they worked so hard to maintain threaten to tear them apart.

Reasons: I think the best part of the film is its ending. It's creative and touching instead of stereotype such as 'they finally meet after five years, get together and happy ever after'. When Mia and her new guy run into Seb in his whitewashed jazz club in the movie's last scene, she gives him one longing look then turns to follow her husband out the door, while Sebastian performs the song that they knew together, recall their beautiful memories and imagines the colorful life he and Mia could have had if they'd stayed together. He could have been her husband. That could have been their kid. He's conveying all his hopes, wishes, and longings about the life they could have had through every note that he plays. I'd say this moment is one of my favourite movie moments in all of 2016 and tears filled my eyes when I first saw it. Another great thing about the film would be its original soundtrack. The melodies are catchy while the lyrics about everyday life explore the joy and pain of pursuing your dreams, which can perfectly correspond to the theme of the movie. I guess they are on most people's play list for quite a while. And the most popular dual, 'City of Stars', won two Oscars for Best Original Score as well as Best Original Song.

Conclusion: Anyway, it's a feel-good musical revival about the joys of falling in love and following your dreams with excellent soundtrack and I don't think anyone wants to miss it out!

考官点评

Firstly, at about 360 words, it would a bit long and may not be able to be completed in 2 minutes.

Lexically, it has some great 'less common' words like 'dazzled', 'stereotype' and 'conveying' to name a few. There is an error though in the word choice, '...the most popular dual...' should be '...the most popular duet...' and not much in the way of 'paraphrasing' or 'idiomatic' language.

Grammatically, it's excellent. With only a couple of mistakes like, '...Best Picture of Oscar' should be '...Oscar for Best Picture' and '...anyone wants to miss it out' would be better as '...anyone would want to miss it'. It would certainly reach the upper scores.

拓展练习

1. Describe a book or a film.

You should say:
- what the name of it was
- when you read or watched it
- what it was about
- and explain how you felt about it.

2. Describe a story or a novel that was particularly interesting to you.

You should say:
- what story or the novel was
- where you knew it
- when you read it
- and explain how you felt about it.

3. Describe a movie you would like to watch again.

You should say:
- what it is about
- when and where you watched it
- who you watched it with
- and explain why you would like to watch it again.

信息量非常足的新航道官网

243

在“媒体类”话题中，“网站”是必不可少的话题之一，也是大家最最熟悉每天都在打交道的一种媒介。这里常考的问题有“觉得有用的网站”“最喜欢的网站”“愿意推荐给他人的网站”等。这些网站类的话题无一例外地都在谈这些网站的优点。当然，在介绍网站时，我们也要说明这个网站的功能，你平时用这个网站做什么事，上这个网站的时间和频率以及为什么喜欢这个网站等。这里以新航道官网为例看一下怎么描述。在新航道官网不仅有课程的咨询，还有很多备考的信息和最新的考前速递，作为“烤鸭”，你怎么能错过呢？

真题演练

Describe a particularly useful website.

You should say:
- what type of website it is
- how you found out about it
- what it allows you to do
- and explain why you find it useful.

考生范文

Opening Sentence: Well, off the top of my head, the most useful website is XHD.cn, which is the official website of New Channel International Education Group.

Background: I found this website is really useful; it's a great website for me to learn English and get some very good resources. You know, one of the best things about this website is that I can check the latest news of IELTS test. Besides that, there is a huge collection of video speeches by some famous IELTS teachers from this company. I particularly like the 3 minutes IELTS programme.

I go on this website pretty much every day. Especially when I'm taking the public tranportation, since I live in the suburbs of Guangzhou, it usually takes me about 40 minutes to get home by tube. It will be so boring if I don't have anything to do on board. So, I'd like to kill my commute times by checking some news and watching some educational videos on this website.

Reasons: Well, in terms of why I like this website, the main reason is that this website is completely free. You know, I can download some English learning materials and watch the IELTS programme without paying any penny. I would say it is money-saving for me. Apart from that, it helped me a lot during my IELTS preparation. Before I get started to prepare for this exam, I didn't know anything about it. After I browsed this website a few times, I had more confidence to conquer this exam as I knew how to prepare and how to tackle different types of questions in the IELTS exam.

Conclusion: So yeah, I think you can understand why I found this website useful, and I strongly recommend anyone who wants to improve English to check that website. It is really worth checking. You won't regret for that.

考官点评

Overall, a good answer, with good Coherence and a range of 'discourse markers'.

Lexically, it has some good 'less common' words like, 'suburbs', commute' and conquer'. It also has some 'idiomatic' language, 'kill my commute times' and 'collocations' such as 'money-saving'. I would say that 'website' was used a bit too much though.

Grammatically, it's very good but with a few errors like, 'I found this website is really useful...' could change to 'I found this website very useful...', '...news of IELTS test...' should be '...news of the IELTS test...', '...I'd like to kill my...' needs to change to '...I like to kill my...' and '...I get started to prepare...' needs to be '...I got started to prepare...'. as well as 'You won't regret for that' needs to be 'You won't regret it'. I think this answer will still reach the upper scores.

拓展练习

1. Describe a website that you like best.

You should say:
- what type of website it is
- how you found out about it
- what it allows you to do
- and explain why you like it.

2. Describe a useful website that you like to visit.

You should say:
- what the website helps you to do
- what the contents of the website are (or, were)
- how often you go to this website
- and explain how (or, why) this website helps you.

人手必备的支付宝

244

在这个智能机弥漫的社会，手机 app 成为当下最热门话题之一。雅思口语考试偏生活化，因此我们在“抽象 & 媒体类”话题中会经常碰到这道题。不管你是描述手机、电脑还是平板电脑上面的 app，都可以谈谈这个 app 的功能，怎么知道这个 app 的，你是如何使用以及为什么你认为它很好用或为什么你喜欢使用这个 app。在当今中国，尤其是在一线城市，现金的流通率已经越来越低了。只要拿手机扫一扫，你想要的就能买到。笔者家附近的菜市场都已实现了无现金购买，支付宝和微信支付的二维码随处可见。没带钱包也不会觉得尴尬了，这么便捷的生活，你值得拥有！

真题演练

Describe a useful app on phones, computers or tablets you know.

You should say:
- what app it is
- what contents it has
- how you use it
- and explain why you think this app is useful.

考生范文

Opening Sentence: Well, the app I am going to talk about is called Alipay which is really similar to online banking but more practical and useful.

Background: Alipay offers tremendous benefits in terms of cost, value and convenience. The users of this app can make all kinds of payment through its internet based services, without leaving the comfort of their home or office. For example, it enables me to pay all the stuff I bought from convenient stores just around the corner of my place or do some online shopping at home by easily logging on my account. So, I don't have to bring my purse, carry cash or looking for my credit card when I need to purchase some commodities. Moreover, Alipay is able to offer cheap discount deals or give some coupons or vouchers that conventional bank cards can't. As a customer, I always feel happy if I can get some discounts or pay with some vouchers. By doing these, I can save some money and willing to purchase more, which in turn, Alipay helps shops boost their sales.

Well, as for how I use it, at the very beginning, I thought it was just for transferring money and I didn't know how to use it properly. Afterwards, I found it more than a wallet as I can top up my phone, pay all the bills and even order a taxi anywhere, any time. On the top of that, this app offers access to countless hotel or flight deals in China and around the world, so I'd like to book flight tickets or hotels when I need to travel. What's also worth mentioning is that this app enables me to transfer money easily and won't charge me extra fee for bank transfer.

Reasons: There are a couple of reasons why I think this app is useful. As I was saying, I could use it to pay all kinds of bills without any cash at hands. Also, it helps me record all of my transactions in detail. So, I started to keep track of where my money went, which I think is really a good way for me to save money.

Conclusion: This app is definitely a great helper and I'd like to recommend it to all my friends. That's it, thank you.

考官点评

Firstly, at nearly 400 words, it would take longer than 2 minutes to say, but this wouldn't necessarily affect the score. Also, it does sound a bit too much like an advertisement, rather than a description.

Lexically, it's very good with some good 'less common' language like 'transactions'. It doesn't have much in the way of 'paraphrasing' 'collocations' or 'idiomatic' language though which would keep it from the top scores. There are one or two though, just not enough.

Grammatically, again it's very good with just a few errors: '...convenient stores...' should be '...convenience stores...', '...or looking for my credit card...' should be '...or look for my credit card...', '...By doing these...' should be '...By doing this...' and '...for bank transfer...' should add an 'a'—'...for a bank transfer...'. Lastly, '...without any cash at hands' would be better as '...without any cash on hand...'. This I believe would reach the upper scores, but not the very highest.

拓展练习

1. Describe a program or app in your computer or phone.

You should say:
- what the app/program is
- when and where you found it
- how you use it
- and explain how you feel about it.

2. Describe a method that helps you save money.

You should say:
- what the method is
- when you started to use it
- how you knew it
- and explain why it is helpful.

一门你不喜欢的学科

245

真题演练

Describe a subject you didn't enjoy in high or secondary school.

You should say:
- what subject it was
- how the teacher taught this subject
- how long you studied this subject
- and explain why you didn't like it.

Describe a subject that you dislike in your high school.

You should say:
- what the subject was
- who taught that subject
- what the main reason that made you dislike the subject was
- and explain whether there're any things can be done to make you like that subject.

考官范文

- **what subject it was/what the subject was**

I really dreaded[①] my Math's class. It was the only topic that I was not interested in and also very poor in. My number and numeracy skills are really poor and when I even look at any complex Math equations, my

①厌恶

mind just goes blank![7]

②大脑一片空白

- **who taught that subject/how the teacher taught this subject**

Well I had several different teachers because I have studied Maths since I was a kid but my most recent teacher was Ms. Lee. She was very, very strict and had to do everything by the book[3]. She was one of those teachers that didn't take any slack from anyone but on the other hand she was a very strong and well respected teacher.

③循规蹈矩，照章办事

- **what the main reason that made you dislike the subject was/and explain why you didn't like it/how long you studied this subject**

I had been studying Math ever since Primary School and all the way through[4] my school education. I must admit that now I don't have any Math classes I feel pretty relieved about that! To be honest, Math is one of those topics I could never get my head around[5]. It would confuse me a lot and I didn't really have the patience to try and figure out all the sums and formulas. Because I couldn't get it, it bored me in a flash[6] and I knew from an early age that Math was going to be a weakness for me.

④贯穿
⑤理解，明白
⑥转瞬间，立刻

- **and explain whether there're any things can be done to make you like that subject.**

Perhaps there are things that could be done but I haven't given it much thought[7]. Maybe if I had a more patient teacher from the beginning I would be OK but I really feel lost and like a fish out of water[8] when it boils down to[9] Math.

⑦并没有对此进行过深入的思考
⑧感到迷茫，如鱼离水
⑨归根结底是因为

你感兴趣的一门科学课

246

真题演练

Describe an area of science that you are interested in (such as physics, mathematics).

You should say:
- what branch of science it is
- when you studied it
- how you studied it
- and explain why you are interested in it.

Describe an interesting physical experiment you did.

You should say:
- what physical experiment it was
- when and where you did it
- how you did it
- and explain why it made impression on you.

考官范文

- **what branch of science it is/what physical experiment it was**

When I was in high school the science that I enjoyed the most was Chemistry. Even though I wasn't actually very good at it, I found the idea of the interactions between different elements incredibly fascinating.

- **when you studied it/when and where you did it**

Well, there was one class that I particularly enjoyed. It was an experiment with water.

- **how you studied it/how you did it**

We were asked to get into groups of four with beakers① full of water and to put googles② on to protect our eyes. We were then given a small rock maybe 2 or 3 mm across and told to carefully put it in the water and stand back③. We did so, and were blown away by what happened, very nearly literally. The rock started 'burning' and jumping around on the surface of the water. We were expecting, well, to be honest, I don't really remember what we were expecting, but certainly not that. It was sodium④. It reacted violently when it came into contact with the water.

①烧杯
②护目镜
③靠后站
④钠

- **and explain why you are interested in it/why it made impression on you.**

For me, it was the surprise of the reaction that I think made me the most curious. What we knew was water, and what seemed to be a small, simple and unassuming piece of rock had such an impressive reaction. It just made me think about what other things would react that way that I didn't know about. Coke and mints, springs to mind⑤. I'm not sure if you know about that reaction, but that's another fun one.

⑤马上想到的

你小时候读过的一本书

247

真题演练

Describe a book you liked to read in your childhood.

You should say:
- who wrote this book
- what it is about
- when you read it
- and explain why you liked it.

考官范文

● **who wrote this book**

The book was written by a very famous author called Roald Dhal. He wrote a lot of famous stories mainly aimed at children and they were all really good. Sadly, the author has passed away now but reading his books was a pretty big part of my childhood and I feel glad that his stories are still quite popular today.

● **what it is about**

It's a story that is pretty well known. It's about a young boy who comes from a poor family but one day he manages to find a golden ticket which will allows him and his grandfather along with a few other lucky children to visit a very large chocolate factory! It's called 'Charlie and the Chocolate Factory'[①] and if I am not mistaken it was adapted into film[②] a few years ago and it was pretty successful.

①《查理与巧克力工厂》
②被改编成电影

● **when you read it**

I read this book ages ago. I reckon I must have been 7 or 8 years old. I remember reading it because at that time I literally couldn't put the book down once I started reading it. I would often read it before I went to bed and as I lay in bed at night I just kept on reading page after page until it got really late and my mum would get really wound up[③] because I wasn't asleep and I would be tired the next morning and would not want to go to school!

③生气的

● **and explain why you liked it.**

This book is about a young child who gets the chance to go to a wonderful chocolate factory! It's perfect! But the way the story is written manages to create a wonderful imaginative world inside a factory where there is so much chocolate and other impressive features that made the story very engrossing[④]. The most important thing is that the story unfolds nicely and is written clearly for young readers to understand.

④引人入胜的

你读了还想读的一本书

248

真题演练

Describe an exciting book you have read.

You should say:
- what it is about
- how you knew about this book
- when you read it for the first time
- and explain why you think this book is very exciting.

Describe a book you want to read again.

You should say:
- what the book is about
- why you read it
- what you learnt from this book
- and explain why you would like to read it again.

考官范文

- **what the book is about/what it is about**

This particular book was a fictional story about a very famous spy that has gone on to be very well known around the world and many films have been made about the character that first started out in a series of spy novels. The book I am going to talk about is called 'Casino Royale' and it was the first book to introduce us to the character James Bond, 007.

- **how you knew about this book/when you read it for the first time**

These books have been around for donkey's years[①] but having seen many of the films I had never actually read any of the books about James Bond, written by Ian Flemming, I first read this book when I was traveling on a train. I bought it especially for the journey and I thought that I would read this one first and if I liked it, which I did, I would read some of the other books about James Bond.

①已经流行了好多年了

- **why you read it/what you learnt from this book**

I wanted to read it because the James Bond character has been around for a long time especially in the many movies about this character so I wanted to follow the same character but in the book form as it would give me a different insight into the character. I also like the action genre of book so I thought it would be a good read[②], and it was.

Well, it was a fictitious[③] story about a fictional character[④] so I wouldn't say that I learnt anything from this book but one thing that stuck out was how James Bond is depicted in novels and how he is portrayed in the movies. Bond's character in the earlier novels is worlds apart from[⑤] the Bond that we have seen in the movies. In the books he is described as being a loner, an alcoholic and just a common spy. But in the movies it's completely different. He is portrayed as a suave[⑥] and sophisticated[⑦] action hero.

②一本好的读物
③虚构的
④一个虚构的人物
⑤和……有天壤之别
⑥儒雅的
⑦久经世故的

- **and explain why you think this book is very exciting/why you would like to read it again.**

It's exciting because the story moves along well and it has elements of action and suspense that keeps the reader hooked[⑧]. I am not sure I

⑧着迷的

would read this book again however I may continue to read more of the novels about the character James Bond.

拓展练习

1. Describe a book/magazine that you enjoyed reading.

You should say:
- what it is
- when you read it
- why you like reading it
- and explain what effect the book had on you.

2. Describe a book you recently read.

You should say:
- what book it was
- when you read it
- why you read it
- and explain what you liked and (possibly) disliked about the book.

你喜欢的报纸或杂志

249

真题演练

Describe a newspaper or a magazine.

You should say:
- what it is and why you read it
- what the benefits of reading a newspaper or a magazine are
- how often you read it and what are the contents of it
- and explain why you like reading this newspaper or magazine.

考官范文

- **what it is and why you read it**

I recently read a magazine called 'China Today'. I read this magazine because it had a lot of interesting articles about different aspects of China and its vast culture. I had never known about this magazine before but coincidently it caught my eye[①] whilst I was in a book store! In actual fact[②] I went there to buy a book but ended up buying this particular magazine instead.

①引起了我的注意
②实际上

- **what the benefits of reading a newspaper or a magazine are**

I think the benefits are that you are able to absorb the information that you can read at your own leisure and you can choose the articles which interest you the most. Just to mention that it's also handy for[③] most people that still enjoy reading the press is the availability online. Most publications have an app or a news feed[④] you can subscribe to[⑤] which

③对……方便的
④新闻推送
⑤订阅

allows you to get the articles online.

● **how often you read it and what are the contents of it**

I have only read a couple of editions because it does not always appeal to me but with this magazine you are able to read more in-depth articles about specific people or places or something like that which is away from current affairs and other sensitive new stories. I would say that from these articles I can gain a lot of information to enrich my understandings of different cultural aspects.

● **and explain why you like reading this newspaper or magazine.**

You know, it just boils down to the fact that⑥ I love reading and I really enjoy reading many different types of stories and articles. I don't often buy the actual newspaper or magazine these days because it is much easier to read the information online through an online website or an APP.

⑥归根结底是因为

一篇关于健康生活的文章

250

真题演练

Describe an article that you read from a magazine or from the Internet about the healthy life.

You should say:
- what the article was about
- when and where you read it
- how it was related to healthy life
- and explain why you think it is a good or bad article.

Describe a way to stay healthy.

You should say:
- what this way is/what you do
- how you knew about this way
- when you started to use/do it
- and explain why it can help you stay healthy.

考官范文

● **what the article was about/what this way is/what you do**

I was reading an article on-line a while ago① that was talking about walking as a way of simple easy exercise. It was explaining the benefits of this exercise and the fact that everyone can do it.

①刚才

● **when and where you read it/how you knew about this way**

It must have been last month when I was mucking around② on the Internet when I came across it and it just gave some interesting details about how

②闲逛

good it can be for you and yet, very few people actually do it enough.

- **how it was related to healthy life/when you started to use/do it**

The whole article was generally about how small simple changes to your lifestyle can help you maintain a healthier lifestyle. It wasn't that all of a sudden, you should go to the gym and workout everyday; it was more that it was suggesting little changes that are actually fairly easy, given a little willpower. For example, after dinner, go for a walk for 15 minutes, drink at least 2 litres of water a day, rather than juice or coke. Things like that.

- **and explain why you think it is a good or bad article/why it can help you stay healthy.**

You know, I think that's why I decided to try some of the suggestions. They are easy to do and I'm currently trying a little bit every day. I feel that I could do with shedding a bit of weight[③] and this way it's not really a chore, it's more of a different way of doing the same thing I do most days. I haven't seen any real change yet in my weight, but I am generally feel better. So, I'd highly recommend it to others.

③减轻一点体重

拓展练习

Describe a good habit your friend has that you want to develop.

You should say:
- what the good habit is
- who the person is
- why you want to learn
- and explain how to develop it.

你听过的一个有趣的故事

251

真题演练

Describe an interesting story you saw on TV.

You should say:
- what the story was
- when you watched it
- who was in the story
- and explain why you remember it.

Describe a story or a novel that was particularly interesting to you.

You should say:
- what it was about
- who wrote it
- why you read it
- and explain why you think it was interesting.

考官范文

● **what the story was/what it was about/who wrote it**

The story that I saw on local news television station was regarding an International Book Festival① that is to take place in my hometown, right around the corner from where I live. I paid attention to this story because it brought some attention to my hometown.

①国际书展

● **when you watched it**

This particular story among others was broadcast on the local 6 PM News. I was actually in the kitchen preparing my dinner and a TV was on in the living room and I had the volume turned up so at least I could hear the television even though I could not see it. When I heard the presenters mention the name of my hometown I quickly stopped I was doing in the kitchen and dashed into② the living room to see what the news story was about.

②冲进

● **who was in the story/why you read it**

There were not many people in this story but there was an interview with the organiser of the Book Festival and he talked about how the event would be a big success for book lovers not only in the local area but maybe from wider more far-flung③ places.

③遥远的，分布广泛的

● **and explain why you remember it/why you think it was interesting.**

I remember the story because it concerned a major event in my hometown and it's not every day we get some publicity on the television! And you know I'm interested in reading different kinds of books so for my local town to have an International Book Festival where there will be many different kinds of books to see, it's very interesting and exciting for me.

一则好消息

252

真题演练

Describe a piece of good news you heard from TV or the Internet.

You should say:
- what the news was about
- when you got this news
- where you got this news
- and explain why you think it was a piece of good news.

Describe a piece of local news that was interesting to you.

You should say:
- what it was about
- when you saw/heard the news
- where you saw/heard the news
- and explain why it was interesting.

考官范文

- **what the news was about/what it was about**

I read on a local forum that there was going to be a concert held soon by one of my favourite pop stars! I was so surprised and also really excited that after all these years of listening to his music online and on CD's or whatever[①] I know I may have the chance to see him perform live!

①等等

- **when you got this news/when you saw/heard the news**

I got this news the other day when my classmate first spotted it online and she told me to check it out. She told me about it in the morning just as we had started one of our classes! I think the teacher could hear us whispering about it at the back of the classroom but to be honest with you it was an early morning class and I think the teacher was as just as tired as we were.

- **where you got this news/where you saw/heard the news**

Like I just said, it was during one of my morning classes that my friend told me and the news nearly knocked me off my seat! I was so surprised that I found it hard to concentrate for the rest of that class and fortunately for us the teacher did not seem to hear us so we did not get into trouble for talking.

- **and explain why you think it was a piece of good news/why it was interesting.**

It was good news for me because I have wanted to see this pop star ever since I could remember and know I may have the chance. I will go to hell and back to get my hands on a ticket for this concert[②] as it may be a once in a life time chance[③] to see him perform in a venue which is not far from where I live. The interesting thing is that I was only recently thinking about buying his latest album when only a day or two later, my friend told me about the concert taking place right here in my hometown, what a coincidence!

②历经千辛万苦搞到一张演唱会门票
③一个千载难逢的机会

印象深刻的一则广告

253

真题演练

Describe an advertisement that makes you want to buy something.

You should say:
- what kind of advertisement it was
- when and where you saw or heard this advertisement
- what product or service it advertised
- and explain why you decided to buy that product.

Describe an unforgettable advertisement (that you saw or heard or liked).

You should say:
- where you saw or heard it
- what kind of advertisement it was
- what the contents of the advertisement were
- and explain how you felt when you saw or heard it.

考官范文

● **what kind of advertisement it was**

This was a TV advertisement and it was showing us about a new product launch. This particular product already has the Lion's share[①] of the market and I think that when this new product is released into the market it will really cement[②] themselves as a leader in this field.

①最大份额
②巩固，加强

● **when and where you saw or heard this advertisement**

Last night when I was just kicking back[③] and relaxing at home I began to just flick through[④] the TV channels as I was feeling pretty bored and looking for something to watch, when I instantly saw this commercial appear on the screen and it grabbed my attention immediately[⑤].

③放松
④浏览
⑤立刻引起了我的注意

● **what product or service it advertised**

It was advertising a new update of a very famous brand of Mobile Phone. On the advert they displayed some of the new features and I was instantly drawn in[⑥]! The advertisement really had a big impact and I don't think I was the only one to be blown away by[⑦] it.

⑥立刻被吸引了
⑦对……留下了深刻的印象

● **what the contents of the advertisement were**

The content of the advert was just showcasing the new features of the new updated mobile phone and it looked amazing. There was no voice-over or anything it just showed the new sleek[⑧] design of the phone and all quickly showed all the new features.

⑧造型优美的，豪华的

- **and explain how you felt when you saw or heard it/why you decided to buy that product.**

Well I was really happy that this brand had decided to release a new mobile and it looks to be light years ahead of its competitors but we will see! I'm sure there will be a big increase in the price but I think it will be well worth it. According to the advert the product will be on sale to the masses later this year so I've still got a few months to save up my money and buy it as soon as it hits the stores[⑨].

⑨上市

一档有趣的电视节目

254

真题演练

Describe a funny TV program you watch regularly.

You should say:
- what it is called and what it is about
- when you usually watch it
- why you prefer it to other programmes or channels
- and explain why you think it is funny.

Describe a TV program that makes you laugh.

You should say:
- what the program is
- what type of program it is
- what content it has
- and explain why it makes you laugh.

考官范文

- **what it is called and what it is about/what the program is**

Well this is an old American television sitcom that is no longer produced that it's very famous around the world and it is called 'Friends'.

- **when you usually watch it/what type of program it is**

It is about the daily lives of a group of friends that all live in the same apartment building. I think it is very good and very funny because it is a light-hearted take[①] on how real friends interact with each other and live together in the real-world. I would usually watch this TV show when I cannot find anything new to watch. I have watched all of the seasons over and over again but it never fails to make me laugh.

①轻松愉快的情景

- **why you prefer it to other programmes or channels/what content it has**

I wouldn't say that this TV show is now my first choice when it comes to

watching television shows but if I cannot find anything new to watch or if I feel down in the dumps[②] then I would turn to this TV show to help cheer me up[③].

②情绪低落，心情不好
③使我高兴起来

- **and explain why you think it is funny/why it makes you laugh.**

The content of this TV show is very simple and easy to understand as it just evolves around the daily lives of six close friends. Such as there were their relationships, their hobbies and how they interact with each other. As the episodes and the seasons go on we can see how the characters can change and develop just like real people. The humour in this television show is very funny and each character has their own different style of humour and it is very easy for the audience to get the jokes.

一档教育类电视节目

255

真题演练

Describe an educational TV program that you have seen.

You should say:
- what this educational TV program is about
- how often you watch or listen to this program
- how they influence people
- and explain why this program is educational.

Describe a radio or TV program that you talk about with your family or friends.

You should say:
- what the program is about
- how often you watch or listen to this program
- what type of people enjoy this program
- and explain what you like or dislike about this program or why you talk with your friends or family about this TV or radio program.

考官范文

- **what this educational TV program is about**

Well, the thing that springs to mind is a documentary I watched a few days ago with my classmates. It was a really interesting documentary about Food and how the world's natural resources are being put to the test because of over-consumption by humans which is putting a real dent in[①] the food production industry.

①改变，给……带来影响

- **how often you watch or listen to this program**

This series of documentaries was a four-part series that really explored

and exposed many areas of the food industry. From farming and raising livestock to supermarket standards and the restaurant hygiene.

- **how they influence people/what type of people enjoy this program**

I would say that people who have an interest in food and the environment will find this documentary very interesting and educational. It gives the viewers a really in-depth insight into the food industry and a behind-the-scenes[②] look at some leading global food companies.

②幕后的，秘密的

- **and explain why this program is educational/what you like or dislike about this program or why you talk with your friends or family about this TV or radio program.**

It's a real eye opener into how people are manipulating the food production industry in order to provide enough food for everyone. It was educational from the viewpoint that I never thought or really care about too much about the food and the amount of work that goes into creating the right quality foods and all the processing. I cannot recall the exact information but in developed countries the food consumption is extremely high albeit the experts have mentioned that the food quality is not as high as what it should be. I have recommended this documentary to my friends and family as I feel it can make them more aware about the food standards and hopefully they can be more careful when they are choosing foods from the supermarkets or any food outlets[③].

③餐饮店

你喜欢的一档广播节目

256

真题演练

Describe a radio program you like.

You should say:
- what it was
- when it happened
- who was with you
- and explain why you still remember this event.

Describe a radio program that you listened recently.

You should say:
- what it was about
- when and where you listened to it
- how it was presented
- and explain if it was interesting or not.

考官范文

- **what it was/what it was about**

I used to really enjoy listening to the music chart show. It was a count-down of the topmost 100 popular songs[①] that were released at that particular time. I really liked it because it had wide selection of songs from different musical artists.

① Top100 流行歌曲的倒数榜单

- **when and where you listened to it/when it happened/who was with you**

This radio show was broadcast every Sunday afternoon and I remember listening to it very frequently when I was driving home from work. I will drive home from work by myself which would take about half an hour but in that time I would listen to a wide variety of different songs, some of them I liked and some of them I didn't but the interesting thing was I never knew what song would be played next. It was just one after the other!

- **how it was presented**

It was presented in a very fun and exciting way. The DJ would introduce the song and talk a little bit about it before playing it which was good because it gave you an introduction to the artist and maybe a little bit about the songs they have made previously. Well, the reason why I liked it is that it was mainly music that was played during the show so there was not too much talking.

- **and explain if it was interesting or not/why you still remember this event.**

This was very interesting because I had a very deep interest in pop music and I would often like to listen to the most popular songs at that time and I was always curious as to see who had the number one song. I do remember this event because I would always listen to this radio show on my way home from work every Sunday afternoon and I had done for many years.

你喜欢的电视剧或戏剧

257

真题演练

Describe a TV series or drama you have watched.

You should say:
- what kind of TV series it is
- who the main characters are
- what it is about
- what part do you like most
- and explain why you like to watch it.

考官范文

- **what kind of TV series it is**

This is a four part series about a police detective who has to solve some pretty horrific crimes that take place throughout the series whilst he himself is battling his own personal demons in his private life.

- **who the main characters are**

The main character is a police detective and it is about how he uses some unconventional methods in solving crimes that often lead to worse things happening. The other characters are his work colleagues and a few other personal friends that also have an impact on his life.

- **what it is about/what part do you like most**

It tells the story of the detective and the crimes he is tasked with solving but also how he is struggling with loss of loved ones and colleagues throughout the series. He battles his way through① during the series and finally he begins to overcome the demons that have plagued him for such a long time. I like the way he is able to solve the crimes. He uses great intellect as well as the evidence he finds to piece together② the parts of the puzzle to find the answers even if it means using some methods that are very unconventional.

①一路奋战
②拼凑在一起

- **and explain why you like to watch it.**

There is an element of realism about the characters that makes the audience relate to them and you can sympathize with③ their emotions and feelings. I would say that the suspense is also very good; each episode often builds up to an exciting climax and the plot lines of the stories move along quickly. I think this television series has enough to keep people interested in it.

③与……产生共鸣

你不喜欢的一部电影

258

真题演练

Describe a film that you disliked.

You should say:
- what the name of it was
- where you watched it
- why you chose to watch it
- and explain why you disliked it.

Describe a film about a real person or event that you have watched.

You should say:
- when (and where) you saw this film
- what person or event the film was about
- what happened in the film
- and explain how you felt about this film.

考官范文

● **what the name of it was/when (and where) you saw this film**

One of the films that I least liked was a film that was made a few years ago called 'Lord of the Rings'. It was a major box office hit[①] and was very very popular and a lot of people really enjoyed it. The only time I saw it was when it was first released and I saw it in the cinema.

①高票房电影，卖座影片

● **what person or event the film was about/what happened in the film**

It was a fantasy film about a group of fictional people that live in a land and they are fighting over the control and guardianship of a small ring. The ring is mostly in the hands of the main character and his companion and they set off on a journey that is fraught with[②] danger in a quest to protect the ring.

②充满

● **why you chose to watch it**

I chose to watch it because it was so hyped up that I thought it would be really good. But it wasn't really my cup of tea[③] and I wish I hadn't wasted my time and money on it. Although saying that, I have seen some other films I didn't like but this one sticks out the most[④].

③不是我喜欢的类型
④印象最深

● **and explain how you felt about this film/why you disliked it.**

I was bored with the story from fairly early on. I couldn't really understand the point of the story and all the made up[⑤] names and places and characters didn't seem to have any relationship together and I couldn't really figure out what was going on and I thought it was a long drawn out[⑥] film that bored me. It's safe to say that I'm not a huge fan of the fantasy genre anyway so perhaps I should pay more attention to what films I plan to watch in the future.

⑤虚构的
⑥冗长乏味的

一部让你开怀大笑的外国电影

259

真题演练

Describe a foreign film that you recently enjoyed watching.

You should say:
- what film it was
- who the actors were
- what the film was about
- and explain why you enjoyed this film.

Describe a film or a performance that made you laugh a lot.

You should say:
- what it was
- what happened in this film or performance
- what was humorous in it
- and explain why it made you laugh a lot.

考官范文

● **what film it was/who the actors were**

I am not quite sure what you mean by foreign film, but I recently watched an animated movie called 'Kung Fu Panda' and I personally thought it was very entertaining and very funny. Well, the main actor that does the voice for the main character① is called Jack Black. He is a very famous American actor and musician. He has done a lot of films before especially comedies.

①主角

● **what the film was about/what happened in this film or performance**

This film is about a panda who is living with his adopted father② in a noodle restaurant. But he has dreams of becoming a kung-fu master and his dream came true when he was chosen to study the art of kung-fu until later defeated his enemy.

②养父

● **what was humorous in it**

It was humorous because it was about a big fat cuddly③ panda who was not very strong and certainly did not possess the skills and the ability to learn kung fu. He often made silly mistakes while he was going through his training but he was determined to be a martial arts④ legend.

③令人想拥抱的
④武术

● **and explain why you enjoyed this film/why it made you laugh a lot.**

It is funny because it is an animated movie about fat panda learning kung fu. I enjoyed the film because it is a 'feel-good'⑤ film where the panda

⑤令人愉悦的

trains hard to learn and along with his friends he is able to develop his skill and then later defeat his enemy.

一首对你有特殊意义的童年歌曲

260

真题演练

Describe a childhood song you remember well.

You should say:
- where you first heard this song
- how old you were when you first heard it
- what it was about
- and explain how you feel now when you hear this song.

Describe a meaningful song for you.

You should say:
- what song it is
- when you first heard it
- what the song is about
- and explain why this song has special meaning for you.

考官范文

- **what song it is**

Well, I'm going to talk about a song called 'Old McDonald had a Farm' and I think I first heard it when I was in nursery school.

- **where you first heard this song/how old you were when you first heard it/ when you first heard it**

It's a little bit difficult for me to recall the exact age but I would say that I was probably three years old and I was spending a couple of days at nursery school while my parents had to go back to work. It was fairly normal for me to stay there during the day, until my parents picked me up[①].

①来接我

- **what the song is about**

Well, this song is about a man called 'Old McDonald' and it is about the different animals that he had on his farm. It is a very popular children song as it has a catchy[②] sound and it also lets children learn more about animals and the sounds they make. I'm sure that every child in the world must know this tune.

②容易记住的

- **and explain why this song has special meaning for you/how you feel now when you hear this song.**

Whenever I hear this song being played I begin to reminisce about[3] my childhood and the happy days I spent at nursery school. I remember it well because it was one of the first songs that I learnt and what amazes me is that this song has stood the test of time[4] and is still popular among children today. I think when I have children, it will definitely be one of the first songs I teach them.

③追忆
④经受住了时间的考验

未来你想拥有的小事业

261

真题演练

Describe a small business you want to have in the future.

You should say:
- what it would be
- what services it would provide
- where you would have this business
- what you would need to prepare for it
- and explain why you would like to do this business.

考官范文

- **what it would be**

If I was to have my own small business in the future I think I would like to have a small business that was either in the travel or the education industry. That's the area that I find the most interesting.

- **what services it would provide**

Well, the travel and education industry is very large so I think to try and incorporate the two could be a good way of making money. Perhaps a company that could arrange either educational field trips[1] for young schoolchildren or more long-term educational overseas trips for university students or young adults.

①实地考察

- **where you would have this business/what you would need to prepare for it**

I think in actual fact[2] I would have this business located in China. The main reasons are that I am very familiar with the Chinese education system and for Chinese students to study or to travel overseas is becoming very popular. A lot of people believe that obtaining some overseas studying experience can greatly enhance your job prospects in the future[3].

②实际上
③能极大地拓宽未来的就业前景

● **and explain why you would like to do this business.**

Firstly, I would like to do this kind of business because for me this is something I am interested in doing and I have often thought about doing so for a number of years. I think it will be successful because there are thousands of students in China that wish to continue part of their education in a different country. A bit like me I suppose as that what I'm doing here, and as and when I get the score that I need, I hope to go to the UK to study my bachelors and maybe get my masters too.

一项你引以为傲的成就

262

真题演练

Describe an achievement that you are proud of.

You should say:
- what it was
- how it was made
- what difficulties have you encountered during the process
- and explain why you are proud of this achievement.

考官范文

● **what it was**

Well, the achievement that I'd like to describe today is the time when I passed my scuba diving exam. It's called PADI[①] and I am now qualified as an open water diver[②].

① 专业潜水教练协会
② 开放水域初级潜水员

● **how it was made**

For me, this was a big deal as I'm not a particularly good swimmer. I kind of swim like a three-legged elephant rather than a fish. I have been training for months now and last month went to Qingdao to complete it. There were about 8 of us that had the exam and I was buddied with[③] my teacher, Wang Yu. She's a very experienced diver and teacher and has been my buddy whenever we dive. I don't know if you know, but you should never scuba dive alone, you should always have someone with you, just in case you get into trouble.

③ 和……搭档

● **what difficulties have you encountered during the process**

We got down to about 20 metres and had to perform various tasks, like taking your mask off and putting it on again and then clearing the water from it. Actually, that wasn't particularly difficult. What was, was when I had to do my navigation exercise. I have a very bad sense of direction on

land, let alone in the water and the current was quite strong that day, but I did the best I could.

● **and explain why you are proud of this achievement.**

After we surfaced, we got back in the boat and went back to shore. Then went back to the hotel to discuss how everyone did. I was over the moon④ when the instructors told me I'd passed the test. I had to work very hard for this and, like I said earlier, I do have some weaknesses to work on, like the navigation, but overall I'm getting there, and whenever I get another level under my belt⑤ I feel very chuffed with myself⑥.

④兴高采烈，欣喜若狂
⑤已有的经验，已获得的成就
⑥心满意足的

拓展练习

Describe a success your friend has had that you are proud of.

You should say:
- what it was
- when it happened
- how easy or difficult it was
- and explain why you thought it was a success.

环境法

263

真题演练

Describe a law about environment you would like to see in the future.

You should say:
- what this law would be about
- how this law will take effects
- why it is important to have this law
- and explain what changes will happen because of this law.

考官范文

● **what this law would be about**

Wow, this is a topic that I've not really thought about before, but I suppose, living in Beijing, it's too hard to think of some. I think the law I would like to see introduced in an extension to the license plate idea① that was implemented a few years ago. In England, there is a fee whenever you drive into London's centre and it has reduced the amount of cars on the roads and therefore reduced the pollution to the environment.

①引入限号的提议

● **how this law will take effects**

I'd like to see it implemented around the 3rd Ring Road so that it could

maybe reduce the congestion in the centre of Beijing and maybe reduce the pollution there too, and, for that matter, the rest of the city. For me it's a bit of a no brainer[②]. People need to be discouraged from[③] driving their cars in the city centre and this needs to be established into law and then enforced properly.

②简单容易的事
③被劝阻

- **why it is important to have this law**

You know, lots of people around the world are becoming more concerned about the pollution in cities and with recent data published that shows Beijing as the 16th most polluted city in the world I think it's important that something is done about my hometown.

- **and explain what changes will happen because of this law.**

Well, I'm hoping that if something like this was to be introduced along with the other measures that have already been introduced, it will hopefully make Beijing a little cleaner and also an easier place to drive. It's a bit of a dream, but with all the concern around the world to clean up the greenhouse gases[④], you never know, it might just actually happen.

④治理温室气体

拓展练习

Describe an environmental law.

You should say:
- what it is
- how you first learnt about it
- who benefits from it
- and explain how you feel about this law.

一条你十分赞同的校规

264

真题演练

Describe a rule in school you agree or disagree with.

You should say:
- what the rule is
- why it is needed
- how the rule is enforced
- and explain why you agree or disagree with this rule.

考官范文

- **what the rule is**

Well, where should I start, there are so many rules that I don't like! No,

I'm just kidding. Seriously, though I think most of the rules in my university are well thought out[①], the one that I think is the most sensible one relates to our course. Basically, it states that we must obtain an average of 60% to pass our course and get an IELTS 5.0.

①深思熟虑的

- **why it is needed**

I think it's a good idea as it stops any Tom, Dick and Harry[②] passing the course. I think that unless we can obtain a good score in the course, we shouldn't be able to progress up to the next year. It also allows us to know just how good we are at English. If we're not good enough, I know we'll only struggle further on. I know some of my classmates have some difficulties in it and this rule will help them maybe redo the year[③] so that they are better prepared next year.

②随便什么人
③重修一年

- **how the rule is enforced**

Our teachers are the ones that control all the paperwork. What I mean is, that they mark our exam papers and our attendance sheets and then also give us marks on our participation in class. So, basically it's up to them.

- **and explain why you agree or disagree with this rule.**

If this rule didn't exist I think that the quality of the course would deteriorate[④] and that a lot of students who think they could graduate, wouldn't. Rules are generally there for a reason[⑤] and although I may not agree with all the rules, this one, to me, is a very good idea.

④下降
⑤规则的存在总是有原因的

Chapter 6

Part 3 考官提问的五大角度

1. 国人的喜好及其选择趋势
2. 社会的趋势：过去、现在和将来
3. 两者的对比
4. 对现象、问题或人的看法
5. 问题或现象产生的原因和解决办法

先前在 Chapter 3 中提到，Part 1 和 Part 3 同属一种答题模式，很多问题的问法和形式大抵相同，但并不绝对说明它们的出题思路或角度完全相同。对于目标分数 7 分及以上的考生来讲，不光要求 Part 1 和 Part 2 准备好就够了，Part 3 更需要进行针对性的准备。因此，我们再来具体比较一下 Part 1 和 Part 3 有哪些不同？

就主题而言， Part 1 更侧重对考生个人生活的考查，话题均围绕日常生活中会遇到的场景提问，这也秉承了第一部分的特色：贴近生活。而 Part 3 则以社会现象问题为主题，更关注社会、国家甚至国际等层面的问题，相对学术，比较广泛和抽象，较少涉及“偏私人”的问题。

就内容而言， Part 1 更注重听考生在日常生活话题上的语言表达，而 Part 3 则更加注重考查考生在讨论具有一定深度的问题时的逻辑呈现和语言表达，所以逻辑和结构在这一部分显得尤为重要。考生需要在这一部分给出更为深入的观点，并能够对此进行有理有据的分析。

就对考生的要求而言， Part 3 比 Part 1 对语言能力的要求更高，即考生需要有更为严谨和丰富的论证框架，并且具有与话题相关的高分亮点表达。因此，Part 3 成了“6.5 分与 7 分的重要分水岭”。

显然，考生们要想获得优秀的口试表现，更需要“吃透”并活学活用 Chapter 3 中所提到的“8 大问答题解题策略”。毕竟 Part 3 不像 Part 1 和 Part 2 那样有“题库”的支撑，Part 3 的题目数量太多了，甚至有些题目“出其不备”。所以，与其把时间花在题海战术上，不如将备考重心放在“研究题型和整理答案（详见 Chapter 3）”以及“研究考官的出题角度和回答思路（详见本章后文）”上。

有别于 Chapter 3，本章将从考官提问的角度，提炼和预测一下哪些方向的问题在未来的考试中最有可能被问及。每个问题之下的答案均由英籍雅思认证考官提供，这些回答无论在思路还是句法、用词方面，都有值得学习之处。请认真研究，“疯狂地”进行练习，拒绝全段背诵哦！

1 国人的喜好及其选择趋势

无论哪一类的话题，考官似乎都喜欢问一些“喜好类”问题，这里的关键词是“people”，可以是考生个人（更多出现在Part 1），可以是考生周边的人，可以是某一类群体（如年轻人或老年人，某个年龄段的群体，或某职业群体等），或是从整体而言国人的一些喜好及选择倾向。因此，“在你们国家，年轻人（或老年人）通常……？”“你们国家的人更喜欢……？”“在你们国家，谁会……吗？”成了典型的提问方式。

真题速递

265

1. What kinds of films do children (i.e., people aged 4 to 12) like to watch?

考官回答 To be honest, I don't really know. I think that films like 'Kung Fu Panda' and 'Zootopia' were fairly popular because they were cartoons designed for young people. But when I was a small child I don't really remember what films I used to watch. I just remember watching cartoon series.

2. What kinds of films do young people (i.e., people aged 15 to 25) like to watch?

考官回答 I suppose that depends on who they are. Some people like comedies and others like thrillers or horrors. Personally, I enjoy sci-fi, you know, things like 'Star Trek'. A lot of popular movies recently are based on Western superheroes like 'Spiderman' or 'The Avengers'. These seem to be popular with young adults and even some of the older people as well.

3. What would children do to make their parents proud?

考官回答 That's not an easy question to answer. Thinking about it, I suppose that if they do well in school or sports or something, then the parents would be proud of them. I also think that being a good person, you know, kind and generous or helpful, are also things that parents can be proud of although, it's a little more difficult to recognise these things immediately.

4. Do young people always take (or accept) the advice of their parents?

考官回答 I would have to say no, to this. That's not to say they never accept advice from their parents, I'm just saying it's just not always. I think it is actually quite important for people to sometimes learn from mistakes so that they can gain experience and knowledge about life themselves, rather than relying on others to do it for them. I

would think love and relationships are areas where it's always difficult to take advice and where learning by yourself is the most important thing.

5. Do many young people (or children) try to imitate film stars (e.g., imitate their lifestyle, clothes etc.)? (If yes, how and why?)

考官回答 I would say yes. I think that children and young teenagers can be easily influenced by celebrities. They quite often see them on TV and think that they are cool and want to copy them. Maybe the pop stars or actors have a new hairstyle, or possibly a new look. What'll happen is that they start a trend that soon becomes a new fashionable look. I think if it is a good role model, this isn't a problem but I suppose, it's always difficult to choose who is good and who is not.

Variety of Vocabulary

词汇的使用能力一直是雅思口试的考查要点之一，而词汇的多样性恰恰是雅思口语评分标准中对于词汇这一部分最明显的体现。以上述这道题为例，不论你是否认同年轻人会模仿明星，你可能都得提到各种类型的人。这也是“词汇多样性”的第一个考点——用不同的单词说某一类别。

请试着用英文说出这些“人”：1. 孩子；2. 青少年；3. 名人；4. 流行歌手；5. 演员；6. 榜样。

尝试自己说出这些不同的“人”之后，我们再来回顾下考官是如何在他的回答中体现出这种词汇使用的多样性的。请注意下列专色部分内容。

I would say yes. I think that children and young teenagers can be easily influenced by celebrities. They quite often see them on TV and think that they are cool and want to copy them. Maybe the pop stars or actors have a new hairstyle, or possibly a new look. What'll happen is that they start a trend that soon becomes a new fashionable look. I think if it is a good role model, this isn't a problem but I suppose, it's always difficult to choose who is good and who is not.

此外，在回答任何一道Part 3的具体问题时，可能都会涉及需要使用相关的话题词汇，而准确且合适的话题词汇的选择，是“词汇多样性”的第二个体现。还以本题为例，新发型（new hairstyle）、新造型（new look）、引领潮流（start a trend）、新的时尚造型（a new fashionable look），这些词汇的使用充分体现出了评分标准中“uses vocabulary with full flexibility and precision in all topics”。

6. What kinds of entertainment do young people like?

考官回答 Oh, there's lots of things that young people, like me, do for fun. From going to the movies with friends to going out for dinner and then KTV. For me, if it's raining, and I

can't go out, I'll stay at home playing on my PlayStation and linking up with some of my friends online. Either that, or maybe just play on my phone some of the games I have downloaded to it.

7. Do young adults in your country like to communicate with old people?

考官回答 Well, I can't speak for everybody but I certainly do. I find it fascinating to talk to my parents and especially my grandparents and their friends. I think we can learn a lot from them because they have so much more experience than we do and if we take the time to listen it would be a good thing. Some of the stories that my grandmother told me about when she was a child growing up have helped me in my own life and with my relationships with my classmates.

8. In your country, do many old people live with their family?

考官回答 Yes, it's quite normal and traditional for the entire family to live together. Because my parents work very hard, my grandparents helped raise me. Here in China, it's very normal for the parents to give the son their house when he gets married. The new wife can move in and use this as their new home but, the deal is, that the parents can stay until they die.

9. What sorts of things do old people do together with other members of the family?

考官回答 Well, I suppose the most important thing that they do with their family is to spend time with them. The older people get, the less active they become. So, they might not be able to play basketball with their grandchildren, they could certainly go and watch the game and support them. And from my knowledge of my grandparents, they are content just to be with me and maybe talk or have dinner.

10. What do old people like to do with their time?

考官回答 Not being elderly myself, I don't really know. Looking at my grandparents they quite often enjoy reading or watching TV. They also enjoy walking in the park during summer. They are unable these days to play too much sport, but they do try and maintain their health. I hope to be as fit (健康且行动方便的) and mobile as they are when I'm at their age.

11. Where do old people like to live, city or countryside?

考官回答 I'm not sure whether the place is actually important to older people, I think it's more about where the family is. These days, it's quite common for rural people to try and find work in the cities which means they might leave their elderly parents in the countryside and only visit them in the holidays. This means that although the countryside might be more peaceful and perhaps easier (更为舒适的，更惬意的), it is likely that the older generation will miss their kids, and therefore not be entirely happy.

I don't know any other European languages so I think it would be very difficult for me in a country like Germany or Spain as, as far as I know, there are very few people in Europe that can actually speak Chinese.

23. Do people in your country like to go shopping?

考官回答 People, no. Women, most definitely. That's not entirely fair, I'm sure there are some men that also enjoy shopping, but it is well known that women see it as an enjoyable pastime and a way to socialise with their friends. These days, that is changing somewhat because of all of the online shopping that is now taking over the regular shopping habits. Things like Taobao and Jingdong become incredibly popular and a lot of people, especially women, buy things there and do not go to the shopping malls any more.

24. Comparing old buildings and modern buildings, which do people in your country prefer to live in?

考官回答 That's an interesting question. For me, I would prefer to live in a new modern building because I'm a creature of comfort and technology. I can understand why some people enjoy living in an old house, and by old I mean a few hundred years, not just 20, because you can feel the history and the character within the walls. But, like I said, that wouldn't be enough to draw me into choosing an old building over a new.

25. What do people in your country like to do in the outside parts of their home, for example on their balcony or in their backyard?

考官回答 The fast answer to this, is not very much. Mainly because most people, especially here in Beijing, don't have a garden or backyard as they live in high-rise apartments. I suppose those with a balcony might want to put in some flowers or use it as a space to dry their clothes. I know in the West people often like to sit out of their balcony and get some sunshine, but this is not the case here in China.

26. Do people in your country like advertisements?

考官回答 I think the answer to this, on the whole, is no. I can't really speak for all of my country folk, but I hate them. They appear everywhere and are really annoying. Whether I'm surfing on the Internet or maybe watching a movie on my phone I can't seem to get away from them. They pop up and generally block what I'm trying to look at and just get in the way generally. I wish there was a way I could get rid of them.

27. Do people in your country like sports?

考官回答 Yes, definitely. People in China have enjoyed sports for thousands of years. Things like the Olympic Games or the Winter Olympics and the Football World Cup are

probably good examples of this. I think it's natural for human beings to want to compete with each other and sport has developed as a good way of doing this peacefully. Personally, I don't particularly enjoy watching sport but I do enjoy doing it.

28. What kinds of things do people like to buy in your country?

考官回答 I suppose that would depend on who 'people' are. Tourists will quite often buy different things to the local people. They would typically buy souvenirs that they could take home with them, whereas the locals are going to buy more day-to-day stuff. A lot of the foreigners like buying things in China because they're a lot cheaper than in their own country; I suppose this would range from clothing to electronic devices such as computers and phones.

29. Do people in your country prefer to travel by car or by train?

考官回答 I think in general people prefer to travel by car. For one, it is a lot more convenient than by train as you don't need to travel to a train station at the either end that you might have to do by taxi or by bus. Also, travelling by car can be more comfortable than the train, although, I suppose it depends what car you have. Perhaps for very long journeys it might be safer and faster by train, but I still think it would be more fun in a car because you could stop where you want for a break and do what you want when you want. I think it's the freedom of choice that people like.

30. Do people in your country like to live in big houses or small houses?

考官回答 Well, I think most people would want to live in a big house rather than a small one. Having a lot of space I think would make people happier. If I only lived in a very small room and couldn't move around too much, I know I wouldn't like it. Unfortunately, these days it is very expensive to buy even a small apartment so, unless you are particularly rich or successful having a large house might simply just be a dream.

31. Do people in your country buy a new one or mend it when something is broken?

考官回答 I would have to say that it depends. If the thing is very expensive, like a laptop or a phone, people are more likely to get it fixed rather than simply replacing it. However, if it is fairly cheap like a mug or some clothing they may just decide to buy a new one as it is easier.

32. Do people in your country use their cell-phones more for speaking or more for sending text messages?

考官回答 These days, I would say it's actually quite a difficult question to answer because there are going to be many more messages that are sent. Applications like WeChat have increased the popularity of fast written texts even though you can record your voice

on it. I think, fewer and fewer people are actually making phone calls and talking to each other and are simply sending an SMS instead. Personally, I still prefer talking to people and find it annoying and impersonal if people don't do the same.

33. In your country, what is the structure of the typical family?

考官回答 Well, it's actually changing these days because of the relaxation of the one child policy that was introduced a few years ago. In my generation, because of the implementation of the single child law the typical structure was mum, dad and one kid. But, as I said, many people are now having a second child to add to their family so I suppose it will change to mum, dad, son and daughter, because I think a lot of parents want one of each rather than two boys or two girls.

34. In recent years, have people's ideas about success changed in your country?

考官回答 I don't think so, no. Many people still think that material wealth and gains is the only way to measure success and I don't think this has changed for hundreds of years. I don't think this is just a Chinese thing either, from what I know is the same all over the world and it doesn't look like changing any time soon.

35. Will people in your country feel nervous when it comes to public speaking?

考官回答 Yes, I think we would but, I don't think this is anything to do with being Chinese, I think that there are many people who would be anxious and nervous about speaking in front of others. It takes a lot of courage and confidence to speak before a group of people, I'm not sure I could do it. It's hard enough sitting here just speaking to you. Thinking of doing this in front of a hundred, to be honest, it's absolutely terrifying.

36. Is American-style 'fast food' popular in your country? (Why? Popular with whom?)

考官回答 I would have to say yes, to this. I'm not a big fan of KFC or McDonalds, but I do go there sometimes and whenever I do, it's nearly always full of customers. I've also noticed many more of their restaurants appearing around where I live, and even more so around my university. Actually, I don't think it's a good thing because the fast food is not particularly healthy and might give you problems later.

37. What kinds of foreign food are popular in your country?

考官回答 I suppose the American fast food restaurants are becoming more popular all over China. I see them more and more in my hometown and around my university. I'm not a big fan of them myself; I'd rather try authentic food from different countries in a proper restaurant. These however, are somewhat more difficult to find where I live, which is a shame.

38. How do people in your country show politeness?

考官回答 I think Chinese people show politeness in different ways. Some people will buy gifts for their hosts if they're going to visit them at their home or maybe if a colleague is visiting them at work they might buy them lunch or dinner. I think that if we can be helpful to others that will show our intent and our politeness.

39. Is international travel popular with people in your country?

考官回答 I think so, yes. I'm not sure exactly how many people are able to travel, you know, whether they have a passport or can afford it but, those that do and can I think really enjoy it. It's a chance to see different cultures and learn about different places around the world. Personally, I think it's important to broaden your horizons and travel as much as possible.

40. How do people in your country make friends?

考官回答 I think Chinese people make friends the same way everybody else does. This might be at University because they are classmates and they get on well with each other or, maybe they work together in the same office or department and just, you know, click (合得来，一见如故). For me, because I'm quite shy, by difficult to make friends but, the ones I have, are very dear to me.

41. Do many people in China study a second foreign language?

考官回答 Yes, I think so. Most people these days will study English from childhood. I did and obviously so did all my classmates and basically, everyone I know. A lot of my friends also studied English at university together with their major but, I also know quite a few people that finished their studies of English at 18. For me, I think it's important to maintain the knowledge and use of English as a second language because I intend on studying in England and maybe even working there. My future is based around the ability to speak more than one language.

42. In your culture, what sorts of things do people often pass down from generation to generation? (Why?)

考官回答 Other than genetics, I suppose there are lots of families with heirlooms (传家宝、祖传遗物) that have been passed down (传给下一代) over the years. I think one of the most common things to be handed down (传给后代), is jewellery. My father gave me a ring when I was 14, that his father gave him when he was that age and I will give it to my son when he is 14. I think something like jewellery is good because it is generally long-lasting (持久的). Clothing and other things like that generally don't last as long.

43. Are people in your country satisfied with their housing today? (What changes would they like to see?)

考官回答 Well, I think on the whole I would have to say no, they are not entirely happy. I think one of the main reasons for this is that houses these days are very expensive and not everyone can afford to buy their own. If more people could have the opportunity to own their own home I think a lot of people would be much happier, not to mention more stable and secure.

拓展练习

1. Do young people in your country like to live with their parents or by themselves?
2. Do young people enjoy living in the countryside?
3. In your country, what type of home do most people live in?
4. Do people in your country prefer traditional or modern styles of furniture?
5. Where do people in your country like to go on weekends?
6. Mostly in your country, what do people do when they go to a public garden?
7. What do old people do to relax?
8. What do old people like to listen to?
9. Where do people play sports in your country?
10. Do people in your country like to learn history?
11. What kinds of preparation should people do for a job interview?
12. Do people with different reading levels buy the same kinds of reading materials?
13. What kinds of clothes do people wear in summer?
14. If the weather is bad, what would people do indoors?

2 社会的趋势：过去、现在和将来

中国社会近几十年的快速发展，让外国人惊叹不已。因此，考官也很喜欢问一些有关社会趋势的问题，“过去几十年某方面发生了什么变化？”“未来这方面会有什么样的发展？”无疑成为了这部分典型的提问方式。

过去到现在的发展变化

真题速递

266

1. How have buildings in your country changed in the past few years?

考官回答 Well, I wouldn't say that the buildings here have changed all that much, not in design anyway. There are a few special buildings, like the Bird's Nest or the CCTV tower that are certainly unique but, a lot of the normal accommodation or office blocks are still tall and square. I suppose one thing that is different, is that there are many more of them.

2. How have games changed in the past few decades?

考官回答 I suppose perhaps the main difference between games in the past and now is that even though people are still playing with each other, it is generally through the Internet these days rather than face-to-face. There are a lot more electronic games and even specialist games machines like the PS4 or Xbox 360 that people use instead of playing board games with their friends or family.

3. Has the number of pet owners in your country changed in the past few years?

考官回答 To be honest, I don't really know. I have a new pet dog, so I suppose the number has increased by at least one but, that's not a question I can really answer with any accuracy or confidence because it is really not a subject I know anything about.

4. In your country, how has the way people do their shopping changed in the past 20 or 30 years?

考官回答 I think the shopping habits of people over the last two or three decades has changed enormously. Today, the amount of people that shop online has exploded. Companies like Amazon, eBay and Taobao have sprung up（如雨后春笋般涌现） and made billions of dollars each year. Here in China, there are even specialist shopping days now, like 11.11, you know 11 November. People just go nuts（发疯，失去理智） on this day to try and get a good deal online and, this is obviously very good for the new form of retailer.

5. How do you think science and technology has changed people's lives in China in the past few years?

考官回答 Oh, enormously! With the advent of the smart phone from companies like Apple, Huawei and Samsung together with the apps that run on（靠……运转） them, the technology used to communicate has reached new heights of speed and ease. WeChat would be a good example of this as it is now used here to stay in touch with friends and family probably

more than an SMS message or phone call. Add to that the ability to order taxis, pay your mobile phone bill and other day-to-day activities it has become an indispensable part of our lives.

6. How have toys changed in the past few years?

考官回答 To be frank, I'm not entirely sure that they have. For example, I recently needed to buy a gift for my father's friend's son who was turning 6, and we bought the same type of toy that I had when I was that age. For the older kids, things have changed a bit. These days there might be more electronic toys, like the PS4 or Xbox 360, but again you had these too, albeit older versions.

7. How has the way people read books changed in recent years?

考官回答 Well, in my opinion this has changed quite a lot over the last few years. Nowadays, a lot of people read the ebooks on their phone or maybe their Kindle rather than actually reading a physical book. There are some traditionalists that still enjoying thumbing（翻阅） through pages, but I for one, much prefer the new method. It's just so much more convenient and I can store hundreds, if not thousands of books on my phone. I'm not weighed（使负荷太重） down at all.

8. How has the way people communicate with others changed in the past 20 years?

考官回答 Oh, it's changed enormously. 20 years ago the mobile phone was（尚处于起步阶段） still in its infancy, and from what my parents tell me they looked like bricks. Also, the Internet was also a fairly new thing, so email had only just started rearing（抬头，出现） its head. People were still using letters and having to use their home phone to communicate with others. These days however, that methodology is basically dead, and the advent of mobile and instant communications has grown and developed and is most definitely here to stay.

9. Were the products made in the past have better quality than the ones made now?

考官回答 I think so, yes. I often hear my parents talk about when they were my age and that everything was better quality. From clothes and shoes, to washing machines and even cars. I think that these days people think that using less raw materials for production and manufacturing is better than building things to last.

10. Do you think people's preferences on arts changed in past few years?

考官回答 That's an interesting question. I suppose it depends on how you look at it. What I mean by that is that people still like listening to music or going to a concert and they can still appreciate art in a gallery or museum but, these things always develop over time. The music and art I like is very different to that of my parents and, when I have children of my own, I'm sure their tastes will be different to mine. So, I'd say no, and yes.

Variety of Sentence Patterns

众所周知，同义替换的能力也是雅思考试考查的重点之一，这就要求考生要在 Part 3 这一部分充分呈现出词汇的多样性。而在多样性这一点上，除了对词汇有所要求外，还有一个重要的方面，那就是“句式的多样性”。

在进行分析之前，请大家先来翻译一个句子：

我认为这取决于你如何看待他。我的意思是，人们仍然喜欢听音乐或参加音乐会，也依旧会去艺廊和博物馆欣赏艺术，但事情总会随着时间而变化。

能翻译完的“童鞋”已经很不容易了，接下来我们来看看同样的内容考官是怎么说的，请注意下列专色部分内容。

I suppose it depends on how you look at it. What I mean by that is that people still like listening to music or going to a concert and they can still appreciate art in a gallery or museum but, these things always develop over time.

比较完其中的异同，用 what I mean by that is that 替换了 I mean 的“童鞋”，相信已经基本可以理解句式的多样性了。

未来的趋势及预测

真题速递 267

1. What do you imagine people's houses will be like in the future?

考官回答 To be honest, I don't think they'll be that different from today. I'm talking about maybe 40 or 50 years in the future. The materials may improve as well as the construction methods, but I don't think the basic design will change all that much. But, you never know, maybe in a couple of hundred years we'll have run out of space（空间耗尽） and all be living underwater! Either that or on the moon.

2. How do you think the way we eat will change in the future?

考官回答 Well, from what I've seen and know, I think that we will continue to isolate ourselves from each other and eat alone, rather than with friends or family. In my experience, the big family meal in the evening is all but dead（不复存在）. I think that, with the pace of modern society, people just don't want to spend a lot of time eating and socialising, they'd rather have something quick at their desk for lunch and get on with the day.

3. What future developments do you think we will see concerning zoos?

考官回答 Wow, you don't ask easy questions, do you?! It's not something that I've really thought

about before. Let me think. OK, I think that eventually zoos will die and either be totally replaced by the animal parks and nature reserves or maybe, and this idea is a little out there, be replaced by VR, you know, Virtual Reality or maybe even the new tech AR, Augmented Reality. I don't think it's fair to the animals to be cooped up in a little cage for us humans to just go and say 'Oooh, a tiger!'. I'd rather see them in their natural habitat, even if the animal is virtual.

有点异乎寻常 被禁锢的

Gap fillers

在雅思考试这三个部分中，Part 3的问题是最为刁钻古怪的。因此，难免会碰到一些让人意想不到的问题。这时候该怎么办呢？让我们来看看考官是如何应对这种突如其来颇有难度的问题的。

以上述这道题为例，“你认为将来的动物园会发展成什么样？”大家觉得有难度吗？如果是肯定的回答，那么对于考官来说难不难呢？他遇到这样的问题，又是怎么回答的呢？请注意下列专色部分的内容。

Wow, you don't ask easy questions, do you?! It's not something that I've really thought about before. Let me think. OK, I think that eventually zoos will die and either be totally replaced by the animal parks and nature reserves or maybe, and this idea is a little out there, be replaced by VR, you know, Virtual Reality or maybe even the new tech AR, Augmented Reality. I don't think it's fair to the animals to be cooped up in a little cage for us humans to just go and say 'Oooh, a tiger!'. I'd rather see them in their natural habitat, even if the animal is virtual.

没错，考官相当直接地回答“这道题相当有难度啊，我得想想”，甚至还颇为英式地反问了一句，“你还真不是个省油的灯呢”。一举两得，既争取了时间，又展示了自己对于语言的熟练程度。这也是笔者在这里要分享给大家的一个小技巧，充分利用gap fillers，用好了它，口语高分并没那么难哦！

4. What subject or subjects do you think will be most important in the future?

考官回答 Well, if you'd asked me that question last year I would have said business and engineering. Now, however, I think that with the potential drug immunization crisis that were having I would have to say biology, and in particular, medicine. It's being reported that more people are becoming immune to drugs and medicines so that the drugs are now ineffective. This could cause a big problem in the future, I feel.

5. Do you think computers might one day be more intelligent than humans?

考官回答 Oh, I think they already are! It was about 30 years ago, I think, that a computer from IBM beat the chess master and, more recently, Google's AI beat the 'Go' world champion. We use a computer's intelligence on a daily basis and aren't even aware

of it. I think it's great!! Please don't misunderstand me, intelligence is one thing, self-awareness or consciousness is something completely different. That might be a bit more scary. The movie 'I Robot' comes to mind.

6. How do you imagine furniture might change in the future?

考官回答 Well, I don't think they're going to change all that much. A chair will still be a chair. The designs might change to reflect the times as they have done over countless decades before, but unless there is a drastic change in our body structure, or anti-gravity is invented so that tables don't need legs, I think it'll pretty much stay the same.

7. Will museums be replaced by technology someday?

考官回答 No, I don't think so. Maybe, the technology within the museums will change, they already are, but I don't think the concept, the need or the space requirement will change. I think that they're a vital component of our life and help remind us of where we came from and both the good and bad things that our ancestors have done.

8. In the future, how do you think science and technology will develop?

考官回答 形容这个问题回答起来要比预想的难……
Well, that's a really difficult question to answer. How long is a piece of string? Science and technology has advanced so rapidly recently. What exists now many people wouldn't have even thought possible 100, or even 50 years ago. Space is an obvious answer, and I do hope that we will have landed on Mars in my lifetime because I believe the expansion of the human race into the great beyond is inevitable, and we need to develop the tech in order to do that safely and quickly.

9. Do you think people's work in the future will be heavily affected by technology?

考官回答 Absolutely, yes! In most ways, we already are heavily influenced by IT. Businesses and even some people, can't function without computers, the Internet and satellites. This dependence, in my opinion, will only increase and I'm not entirely sure that it's a good thing. Looking at the news recently, I think that the robot revolution is already beginning.

10. Will letters be replaced by emails?

考官回答 I thought they basically already were. All of the communication I receive these days is by email, even if the letter is attached as a PDF. For example, the conditional offers I received from the UK universities were all sent via email. Bank statements, mobile phone bills and all that are all sent electronically or are available online. I think we have finally reached the paperless society that was thought about so many years ago.

拓展练习

1. How has life changed in the countryside in your country?
2. How has the way people give gifts changed in your country?
3. How do you think toys will change in the future?
4. Do you think we will continue to have cinemas in the future?
5. How do you think people's reading habits will change in the future?
6. Do you think zoos might disappear in the future?

3 两者的对比

在这部分，考官所提出的对比通常有几种情况："过去和现在的对比""年轻人和老年人的对比""男女对比""两种特定职业或群体的比较""两种事物或方式的比较"。因为以往的考题中，关于"年轻人 & 老年人""男 & 女"的考查还是不少的，所以我们单独将其从"两种群体的比较"中划分出来。"……现在和过去有哪些不同？""现在与过去相比，……？"是这个角度常见的提问方式。

过去 VS. 现在

真题速递 268

1. How is modern home design (both inside & outside appearance) in your country different to that of the past?

考官回答 Here, in China, I don't think it's changed all that much, certainly the inside. The outside has changed a little, because there is definitely more colour being used and there are more windows and glass being used so that the inside is brighter but, like I said, in my opinion, the inside is still based on the designs from 20 or 30 years ago.

2. Is the material that furniture is made from today different to the material that was used in the past for furniture?

考官回答 I think in some cases, the answer to this would be yes. There is a lot of concern about the environment these days as well as a higher level of safety required in the case of

fire and the like. This means that the materials are more likely to be environmentally friendly, and in the case of things like the cushions on sofa more fire retardant (防火的) I think that it's a good trend and we should do all we can to help it along.

3. Do you think people's relationships with their neighbours today is the same as it was in the past?

考官回答 No, I don't think so, at all. I think it's deteriorated considerably. I occasionally say 'Hello' to my neighbours and always smile if I see them, but I couldn't tell you what their names are. I think this rapid pace of life these days stops people from being as social as they once were, which is a shame. I know in my parents' hometown, when they were growing up, everyone knew everyone else, but that was a much smaller community at the time and things were much slower then.

4. Do people today trust others as much as they used to in the past?

考官回答 If I'm truly honest, I would sadly have to say 'No' to this question. I think that because a lot of people are in the rat race (处在残酷的生存竞争下) we call life and they are trying to be better and earn more than their neighbours, they have lost some of the connections that they once had with each other and, the by-product of that is trust. The other reason, I believe, is the wage gap. Some people earn a lot more than others, these days, and the rich tend to be very protective of what they have and are afraid of losing it or it being stolen.

5. Do you think people are less willing to help others these days, compared to the past? (Why?/Why not?)

考官回答 That's an incredibly difficult question for me to answer. Even though I'm still a student and very young, I was always taught by my parents to help those in need. You hear of stories these days that older people who are very poor try to take advantage of the kindness of others, but I think that if you really are a kind and giving person the few can't spoil it for the many and that people should always try and help both their elders and their peers.

6. Do you think nowadays people need to be more intelligent than people in the past?

考官回答 In a word, yes. I think that with the advances in science, technology and the general understanding of the world around us we need to learn more information. For example, mathematics has developed considerably since Galileo, Isaac Newton or even Einstein and we need to learn about them as well as thinking about what can be added to the existing subjects.

7. Do people today still give the same kinds of gifts that people used to give, many years ago?

考官回答 Well, it kind of depends on what you mean by 'many years ago'. If we're talking about

2 or 3 hundred years ago, then I would say most definitely. The technological toys that are so popular today didn't exist back then so, a lot of the guests were simpler and perhaps even, more thoughtful. Toys for children, for example, might have been handmade by the person giving the gift rather than simply bought in a shop.

8. Compare people's reading habits (or tastes) today to those of the past.

考官回答 I think that the way people read today, and certainly what is used to read, is vastly different these days when compared to even as little as 10 or 20 years ago. I know I, as do a lot of my friends, use my mobile phone to read books or even the news rather than borrowing the book from the library or buying it from a shop. Saying that however, I think the when of reading hasn't changed that much. A lot of people still read in bed before they go to sleep and others will still take a good book on holiday with them, so that's still fairly similar.

9. Do you think people today are more aware of science than they used to be, in the past?

考官回答 I think so, yes. My generation has grown up with technology all around us and this enables us to know a lot more about the science that is being done today even if we don't completely understand it. Take physics for example and more specifically astrophysics(天体物理学). The changes between string theory(弦理论) and dark matter(暗物质) that then became dark energy(暗能量) is something I am aware of even if I could not totally explain it to you.

10. Are there any differences between the people who were famous a few years ago and the people who are famous today?

考官回答 Yes, I think there are. These days there are a lot more 'regular' people who are becoming famous. With the introduction of things like Youku and YouTube, everyone is trying to get their 15 minutes of fame(转瞬即逝的名气). I also think that with the scrutiny of social media those people that are famous have a much larger responsibility to the public.

年轻人 VS. 老年人

真题速递 269

1. Do old people and young people in your country have the same attitudes towards old buildings?

考官回答 No, I think the attitudes couldn't be more different. Most of the people that I know from my generation, you know, my classmates and friends don't really understand or appreciate, or for that matter want to appreciate, old buildings. Certainly for me, I believe that new and modern is better. I know for sure, that my grandparents think

buildings in engaging like the Bird's Nest and the 'trouser legs' are an eyesore (难看的东西……), whereas I think they are really cool.

Narrowing Down Big Questions

在 Part 3 中，考官很喜欢做的一件事就是——丢出来一个既大且空的问题。而每每遇到这种问题时，就会看到考生们中枪一地。因为题目太大，讲得太空洞，往往无法持续性地进行输出且容易出现语言不畅的卡顿。

以上述这道题为例，“对于旧建筑物，你们国家的老年人和年轻人是否持相同的看法？”很明显，如果仅仅是谈论年轻人和老年人态度之间的异同，这道题就不好展开了。那怎么办呢？这里笔者破例教给大家一个“不传之秘”，那就是“narrowing down big questions（大而化小）”。那么，我们来看看考官，是否也用了这一“不传之秘”呢？请注意下列专色部分内容。

No, I think the attitudes couldn't be more different. Most of the people that I know from my generation, you know, my classmates and friends don't really understand or appreciate, or for that matter want to appreciate, old buildings. Certainly for me, I believe that new and modern is better. I know for sure, that my grandparents think buildings in engaging like the Bird's Nest and the 'trouser legs' are an eyesore, whereas I think they are really cool.

在回答中，考官并未只是泛泛而谈地去讲老年人和年轻人这两大类的概念，而是具象到了“自己、身边的同学及朋友”和“祖父母”的意见，辅之以 appreciate、engaging、the 'trouser legs'（“大裤衩”）、the Bird's Nest（鸟巢）和 eyesore 等高分表达，自然而然地回答了一道“大问题”。

2. Compare the way old people and young people spend their leisure time.

考官回答 For a start old people, and by that I mean the elderly, play a lot less sport and do a lot less exercise in general. They are happy maybe reading a book or watching TV or simply spending time talking with their friends and family, whereas the younger people, and especially my generation, enjoying a much more active lifestyle that hopefully keeps us healthier.

3. Do you think young people and old people should all abide by the same rules?

考官回答 Yes, I do. And I don't just mean abiding by the law of the land, but also all of the rules about politeness and courtesy and general society. I was brought up to be polite and to respect my elders, but I do believe that it is a two-way street (相互的……) and that the elders should also be polite and respectful to me. Otherwise (否则，有什么意义。……), what's the point.

4. How do young people and old people use mobile phones differently?

考官回答 Old people can use mobile phones, Really?! I don't think you've met my grandparents.

They look at the new modern mobile phones in the same way they look at a computer, blankly. 'WeChat', that's just the same as 'we talk', maybe over a coffee. But, 说真的，说正经的…… kidding aside, I think with the rapid development of the smart phone and all the apps that go with it the older generations have a harder time learning and therefore using the new features available. Younger people, however, are much more used to the constant change and are happy to invest time in learning how to use them. A phone is not just a phone anymore.

5. Do young and old people have the same attitude towards politeness?

考官回答 In a way, yes they do. I mean that people, both young and old, are taught from a very young age that they should be polite to others. I also believe however, that the older generations expect everyone to be polite to them even when they are not polite to others. This is something I don't particularly agree with. In my opinion, everyone should be treated with an equal level of courtesy, politeness and respect.

男 VS. 女

真题速递 270

1. What's the difference between men and women's preference on cars?

考官回答 Well, I think for women as they get older their preferences change. When they are young, you know, my age, 18, they do like the idea of owning a nice sports car like a Ferrari but, as they get older and are thinking more about family and security they would prefer something like an SUV. Men on the other hand, never really grow up and always just want the Ferrari.

2. Are there any decisions that can be better made by women, and other decisions that can be better made by men?

考官回答 If I'm honest, I would say yes. There are definitely some decisions that can be better made by my girlfriend than I, just please don't tell her that I told you that. I think decisions that are more emotionally based, like family, can be better made by women whereas, men I believe, are better at the logical ones. I'm sure this isn't true for all men and all women, but it certainly is for me.

3. Do you think men and women generally do the same things in their leisure time?

考官回答 I think so, yes and I don't think it has anything to do with age either. What I mean by this is that teenagers whether they are girls or boys enjoy hanging out with their

friends at the movies or even going out together and playing badminton or something. Middle-aged people, and even the older people, may do different things to the younger but, the different sexes will still enjoy going to the movies together or maybe going out for a nice meal.

4. Do men and women tend to read the same types of books?

考官回答 Oh, definitely not! I can really only speak for myself, and my circle of friends, but all the boys I know would not read a romance novel even if you paid them whereas, the girls can't get enough of them. The male of our species, as far as I know, just enjoy action, thriller or maybe even a good spy novel. The pace has got to be fairly quick or they just get bored. Us females however, are quite happy to let the story slowly develop so that we can really appreciate the characters and what is happening to them.

Connecting words

"连接词"，对于体现逻辑性最具有标志性的符号，却也是众多考生心中始终难以言说的伤。在 Part 3 中，考官希望听到地道语言的同时，也希望听到考生的逻辑，以鉴别语言是否真正意义上成为了思想的载体。所以，大家千万不要放松警惕，不应把所有的注意力都放在刁钻话题下如何组织语言，而应更加注意语言本身所体现出的逻辑性。这也恰恰是 Part 3 区分 7 分以上考生 Coherence 的关键所在。以上述这道题为例，我们来看看考官在回答"男女是否会读同种类型的书"这道题时进行了几次转折，请注意下列专色部分内容。

Oh, definitely not! I can really only speak for myself, and my circle of friends, but all the boys I know would not read a romance novel even if you paid them whereas, the girls can't get enough of them. The male of our species, as far as I know, just enjoy action, thriller or maybe even a good spy novel. The pace has got to be fairly quick or they just get bored. Us females however, are quite happy to let the story slowly develop so that we can really appreciate the characters and what is happening to them.

短短 100 字左右的回答里，考官出现了四次转折，且次次用词不同，一展逻辑连贯的同时，顺便呼应了下词汇的多样性，你学会了么？

5. Do men and women have different attitude on shopping for clothes?

考官回答 Oh my goodness, yes! I really don't think you could have a wider difference in attitude on any subject if you tried. My father, my uncles and all of my good friends who are male simply and totally hate shopping. The mere suggestion of going to a shopping mall to have a look around will send them into a panic. This can be useful sometimes, as if I want some new outfits I can always persuade my mother to come with me and my dad to pay.

send……使……陷入恐慌

两种特定职业或群体的比较

真题速递

271

1. What do you think are some major differences between people who know how to play a musical instrument and those who don't?

考官回答 That's actually something I never really thought about before and I'm not entirely sure how to give you an answer. I suppose, one difference could be dedication. In order to play a musical instrument well it takes a lot of time and practice, not to mention patience. But, you could also say that about sportsman. Creativity, could be another example, but again, you could say that about an artist. So, I'm sorry, I don't really have a good answer for you.

2. What do you think is the difference between the intelligence of a computer and that of a human?

考官回答 I think it comes down to the ability to think outside the box（解放思想，打破常规）. Computers can certainly do calculations and repetitive tasks far better than humans, but I believe our innate ability to invent and create new things and new ways of doing things is something a computer however advanced its AI, will never be able to do.

3. Are there any differences between urban and rural people concerning politeness?

考官回答 No, I don't think so. I believe that everyone, from a very early age, is taught by their parents how to be polite and it doesn't really matter if that person is from a farm in the back end of nowhere or a sophisticated modern city like Beijing. I think it's a human thing, rather than a location thing.

4. Would people want to do online business or run a company in reality?

考官回答 Well, for a start, I believe that an online business is a company in reality. The new bricks and mortar are the platforms like eBay and Taobao. If you are successful online it is highly likely that you still have the problems of staff, corporation tax and dividends exactly like any other shop that might be on a high street or in a market.

5. Why do some people would like to share things with strangers rather than family members?

考官回答 If you're talking about physical items, I'm not entirely sure that they do. If you're talking about information or maybe feelings then the only reason I can think of is that with a stranger, it doesn't really matter if they judge you, or even believe you, because

it is unlikely that you will ever see them again. With family members this is obviously a lot more difficult because you'll see them every day and judgement from your parents can sometimes be a terrible thing.

两种事物或方式的比较

真题速递 272

1. In your country, what are the major differences between the urban and the rural areas?

考官回答 I think the biggest difference between the two types of area, is space. Within the city, there are buildings everywhere including a vast number of high-rise apartments whereas in the countryside(情况截然相反), the bipolar opposite is the case. You are able to see in any direction for miles(一览无余) and in general, even if you do see buildings they are relatively low.

2. Compare face-to-face communication with telephone communication.

考官回答 I think face-to-face communication is far superior to using a telephone. For a start, you can read the body language of a person if you can actually see them. For obvious reasons, it is not possible regular telephone unless you are using the video call feature, but even then it's just not the same thing. I also think that actually talking to someone in the same room is a little bit more personal. For example, if you're giving them good news they might want to give you a hug and conversely, if you're giving them bad news you might want to console them by touching or rubbing their shoulder. Physical contact during these times, in my opinion, is important.

3. What are the pluses and minuses of online shopping, as compared to shopping in 'real' shops?

考官回答 Well, firmly in the positive column(从积极意义上来讲), I think, it's speed. Quite often it is considerably faster to shop online than it is to go to a physical shop. The second thing I could add to this, is price. Generally, certainly in my experience, buying things online is cheaper. Looking(相反) at the other side of the equation, I think the biggest drawback is that you cannot touch or feel what you're buying and, in the case of clothes, buy it on to make sure it's the right size. Finally, to balance everything, there is a social aspect of shopping which would be unavailable online.

4. What are the differences between writing a letter and writing an email?

考官回答 These days, I think that most people construct a letter in the same way as they write

an email and would use the less formal tone of the latter. I think the ability to write a good letter is being lost as it is very rarely taught in schools or universities these days, which in my mind, is a real shame.

5. What's the difference between Chinese food and Western food?

考官回答 Well, where do I begin? I think the biggest difference between what we need here in China and the West is how we prepare, cook and then present the food. So, basically everything. The sources and oils that we use are also different, for the most part, and depending on which part of China you go to the typical food could be very spicy. I think, the only similarity in the food styles is that the ingredients are not that different. After all, a chicken is a chicken.

拓展练习

1. How is the way people make friends today different from the way people made friends years ago?
2. Is the food that people eat today in your country different to the food that people used to eat in the past?
3. Would you say buildings in the past were better than those of today, or those of today are better than those in the past?
4. How do young people and old people use mobile phones differently?
5. Who do you think are more forgetful, the younger ones or the older ones?
6. Why do women prefer chatting than men?
7. What roles do men and women in your country play in the families?
8. What are the main differences between adults' books and children's books?
9. What are the differences between bicycles and private cars?
10. Is there much difference between home furniture and office furniture?
11. How are modern news media and the old forms of news media different?
12. Which do you think are better, old houses or new houses?
13. Do you think music can ever be a better way to communicate than just using words?

4 对现象、问题或人的看法

询问考生对目前的某个现象、某方面问题或某类群体的看法是考官的又一个偏好，旨在通过这类问题的回答，考查考生的辩证思维能力。其中，“……，你怎么看？”“……的优缺点是什么？”“你认为……好或不好？”“……需要具备什么品质？”是比较典型的问法。

真题速递

273

1. Do you think moving to a new home can ever create (or cause) problems for people?

考官回答 Almost certainly! Even though it's relatively easy, at least here in China, to move home, there are always unexpected events that can crop up (突然出现). Whether this be running out (耗尽，用完) of boxes to pack things in, through the movers breaking stuff and out to not being able to find the things you want when you eventually unpack. Not to mention, the stress and fatigue that the whole process can cause.

2. Do you think there are any advantages to sharing your home with other (non-family) people?

考官回答 Yes, I do. The first thing that comes to mind is that if you are charging them rent, it means that you have an extra source of income which is, in most circumstances, a good thing. Another advantage to this is if you live alone. Having someone around the house stops a lot of people feeling lonely, especially the elderly.

3. Do you think it would be a good investment for a local person living in a tourist area to open a shop to sell souvenirs?

考官回答 I don't see why not. I kind of suppose it depends on how many other people are selling souvenirs and whether they are local or not. But the idea of an entrepreneur engaging in the new market, in my way of thinking, can only be a good thing.

4. What do you think are the benefits of extra-curricula activities at school?

考官回答 I think there are a lot of benefits in doing things outside the regular curriculum at school or university. I think the largest benefit is that it can help the student become a more well-rounded person. This is something that I know the UK universities are looking for, especially Oxford and Cambridge.

5. How do you think the education system in your country could be improved?

考官回答 I think that one way our teaching methodologies can be improved is to change the focus from examinations to a more continual assessment system. I know that in England the GCSEs that are taken at 16 are part assessment over two years and part examination. I think this is a very good idea and would work for the Gaokao.

6. What makes a good parent?

考官回答 I think that being a good listener and actually spending time listening to your children is one of the things that would make a good parent. Many people think that is always about discipline and control, and of course, they have their place（有其位置，有其用途） but I think it's more important just to spend time and understand your children.

7. What qualities does a successful person need?

考官回答 I think one of the major qualities that are successful person needs, is drive. That, and dedication. I think without these person will never be successful, or quite likely, never even try. It is crucial（是至关重要的；后跟虚拟语气，省略了 should）, in my opinion, that people be motivated to do something and never give up even if it goes wrong time after time.

8. What are the advantages and disadvantages of taking a camera on a trip?

考官回答 The biggest advantage of taking a camera is that you can use it to take photographs in order to have pictures that you can remember the trip by. Maybe, but the disadvantage would be the bulk of the camera. A lot of good quality, or even professional, cameras are quite heavy and the lenses are not particularly small. This can mean carrying lots of different things around with you that just might weigh you down.

9. Whose responsibility do you think it should be (or, is) to (financially) look after old people—the government's responsibility or the family's?

考官回答 I think it should be a shared responsibility between the government, the family and also the person himself, or for that matter, herself. I know that, in the West, people are required to put money aside in a pension that can be used for when they retire. Although we do have a similar system here in China I think that it is not as effective here.

10. How do you feel about false advertising?

考官回答 Personally, I hate it. With a passion. Unfortunately, there are a lot of（不道德的） unscrupulous people around who think they can just lie to people in order to get the people to buy something from them. I think that the government should（干预并真正打击这种类型的犯罪） step in and really crackdown on this type of crime and punish the perpetrators（犯罪者） as much as possible.

拓展练习

1. What challenges and difficulties do people face when they try to have a successful business?
2. What do you think is the most important factor when making new friends?
3. About adverting tobacco and alcohol, do you think these products should be advertised at all (or regulated)?
4. What do you think about parents controlling how their children spend money?
5. Do you think it's best for these highly intelligent children to go to normal schools or do you think they should go to special schools?
6. What are the qualities of a good leader?
7. What makes a good friend?
8. What are some of the pros and cons of three generations living together?
9. What improvements do you think schools should/could make in order to identify the talents of students?

5 问题或现象产生的原因和解决办法

在很多问题上，考官不仅想知道你对某些问题或现象的看法，还想了解一下产生这些问题的原因及如何来解决这些问题。因此，“……会产生什么问题？”“产生这些问题的原因是什么？/为什么会产生这个问题？”“如何去解决这些问题？”成了考官喜欢提问的方式。

问题或现象产生的原因

真题速递 274

1. More and more people are becoming overweight nowadays. What do you think might be the causes of this?

考官回答 I think the major cause is the fact that people are not eating healthily as much as they used to. Quite often they just order online and have food sent to them or maybe just go out and eat at a restaurant. The other large contributing factor is that people are generally doing less exercise and therefore are not dropping（减重） the pounds as they should.

2. Some people don't like using cell phones very much. Can you suggest why?

考官回答 Well, to be honest, I'm one of them. The main reason I don't like using my phone is that a lot of people believe, that because I've got one, they can contact me at any time of the day or night seven days a week. Needless to say, I disagree with them. I hate receiving, for example, we chat messages at stupid o'clock at night, because it is invading（侵占了我的私人时间） my own personal time.

3. Why do some people learn fast while others are slow?

考官回答 I think the simple answer to this, is intelligence. Some people are just smarter than others and have the ability to learn at a greater pace. Most highly intelligent people I know are fast learners no matter what the subject or material.

4. Why there are strong demands for language skills?

考官回答 Well, the world is becoming a smaller place these days. With technologies that allow people to communicate across borders easily, the need to be able to translate from one language to another has expanded enormously. Therefore, there is a large requirement for people that can express themselves in multiple languages, or even one to a very high level.

5. Why are more and more countries developing their tourist industries?

考官回答 Well, I think it's because there are many more people with the ability to, and desire to, travel the world. In a lot of developing countries an easy way of boosting their economy is to provide infrastructure and services for tourists. It can have a very positive effect of a poor country that may have some beautiful, natural features that people would very much like to see and visit.

6. Why do companies send people gifts for free?

考官回答 In my opinion, it's part of their customer service. The value（附加价值） add of giving a small gift for free can be extensive. For example, my friend bought an expensive coat a couple of years ago and the company always sends her little gifts to make sure my friend still remembers the company. The gifts are things like mooncakes during the Mid-Autumn Festival or a discount（优惠券） coupon in a red pocket at New Year. It costs the company very little and last month my friend went back there and bought another new coat. So it obviously works.

7. Why do some people choose to make friends on the Internet?

考官回答 I think there are a few reasons for this. Firstly, I think there are a lot of people that are just shy and have difficulty socialising in the normal context. They find the protection of computer anonymity（匿名） to be useful, if not, essential. Secondly, it is very easy on the

Internet to connect with people. It can be done through games or apps like Facebook, Twitter and WeChat. These allow people to connect with a huge number of others that might have similar interests or simply just a desire to chat.

8. Some people are crazy shoppers and never save money. Why would they do this?

考官回答 I think it really depends on how much money you have. If you got more money than God you're not really going to worry about saving a few pennies, or even a few pounds, on a pair of shoes or a new smartphone. Some other people, are just more concerned about being first when buying something, like what happened with the iPhone X earlier this week. People were queueing outside shops all over the world just to be one of the first people to own this new technology so, the price really doesn't matter.

富可敌国，富甲天下

9. Why do some people choose to be vegetarians?

考官回答 As far as I know, it's because people believe that vegetables are much healthier for us than meat and that meat is generally unnecessary. Other people, believe that we shouldn't eat animals because it is wrong. Some of them even go as far as not eating eggs or drinking milk. Personally, I'm a big fan of a rib-eye steak and I'm happy to have vegetables with it, but not as a replacement.

肋眼牛排

解决办法

真题速递

275

1. What can schools do to nurture children's problem solving ability?

考官回答 For a start, schools can promote and teach the skills needed to solve different types of problem. I think that children should be taught about general logic problems as well as mathematical or scientific problems. Teaching how to think outside the box, I think, is a really useful skill.

2. What do parents do to make their children like sports?

考官回答 I'm not sure that parents can force their children to like sports but, I think they can encourage their kids to take part in games and other outdoor activities. In my experience, there's always at least one game or sport that a child likes and is good at whether this be football, basketball or something else.

3. Can you suggest any improvements for the tourist locations in your country?

考官回答 Well, having been to a lot of the tourist sites around China including the Terracotta

Warriors at Xi'an and the Forbidden City in Beijing I would suggest that facilities that improve the movement of people as well as an easier, or improved system, for people to buy tickets and actually get through the entrance to the location.

Giving an Example

"举例子"，貌似是考生们最运用自如的英文表达了，可能大家从小就知道"for example"表示举例子。但这同时也是多数人最容易捉襟见肘的地方，试问除了"for example""like""such as""for instance"以外，给你三秒钟时间，还能想起来哪些表示举例的说法呢？

好，时间结束！只想出一种及以下的"童鞋"，真的要好好研究研究考官都是如何举例的；想出来一种以上的"童鞋"，可以好好体会一下考官是如何举例的。

都知道中国人多，每到长假就可以去各大景点"看人"，这不考官的问题就来了："你能给你们国家的旅游景点提出一些改善的建议吗？"如何回答呢？请注意下列专色部分的内容。

Well, having been to a lot of the tourist sites around China including the Terracotta Warriors at Xi'an and the Forbidden City in Beijing I would suggest that facilities that improve the movement of people as well as an easier, or improved system, for people to buy tickets and actually get through the entrance to the location.

不要被一开始的"非谓语的完成时作伴随状语"吓到了，有没有发现考官在秀了自己对语法广度的准确度的同时，也巧妙地换了一个表示举例的单词？没错，including，一个native speaker最长挂在嘴边的单词，也是我们不常用的替换。还在等什么，快去考官的答案里找找还有哪些类似的说法或表达吧！

4. What can we do to make young people pay more attention to traditional art?

考官回答 I think that if people can make traditional art more interesting, and by that I mean interesting to young people, that would be a good start. A lot of youngsters, like myself, just find a lot of classic or traditional art really boring so, if something can be done to make it a little bit more exciting then that will draw people in.

5. What can the government offer to the society?

考官回答 The government offers a lot to their country's society. The infrastructure, buildings and legal system are just some things I can think of 不假思索地 off the top of my head. Governments may not be perfect but I do believe that they have a desire to watch their people develop and grow.

6. What can the government do to solve the problem of unemployment?

考官回答 That's not an easy question to answer. I suppose the government can create incentives so that companies hire more people or maybe, create more infrastructure

projects that require a lot of people to work on it over a period of time. A new highway for example. I think creating jobs in the more rural areas should be the focus these days, as there are too many people moving to the city to try and find work.

7. Do you think the government should provide free gifts for its citizens?

考官回答 I must admit, I'm not entirely sure what you mean by 'free gift' but, in my limited experience nothing is free and certainly, nothing worth having. Somewhere along the line things are always paid for, whether this be through taxes or through time and effort. I'm the kind of person that believes you should work for what you get, and get what you deserve.

8. What can government do to prevent pollution in tourist sites?

考官回答 Well, the first thing that pops into my head（浮现在我的脑海） is to limit the amount of tourists that visit the site. Pollution comes in many forms, whether this be rubbish thrown on the ground or air pollution from the cars and buses that drive there to noise pollution created by thousands of people in one place. I don't believe this is completely preventable, but I think that it can maybe be reduced with careful planning. And the plan would depend on the site.

9. How can we attract more children to learn music?

考官回答 The easiest way to make more children want to learn about music is to use of celebrities to promote it and also find a way to make it easily accessible to all. What I mean is, have some easy-to-use step-by-step guides（一步步简明容易上手的指南） to learning a musical instrument or maybe how to sing. If this was hosted by, or at least promoted by, the most popular celebrities of the time I think that children would follow their idols' ideas and get into all things musical.

10. How should parents help their children make decisions?

考官回答 The most important thing for me was the support of my parents before, during and after my decisions, whether they were right or wrong. It is crucial that young people are allowed to make their own decisions, and potentially make mistakes, in order to learn from them. The more experience you can have in decision-making, the better as it can only improve with time and practice.

拓展练习

1. Do you think our government should provide free education for our citizens?
2. What can government do to make our environment better?
3. How can we encourage more children to read books?
4. What can school do to make less students use mobile phones?

附录 1

雅思口语官方评分标准（中英文对照版）

Band	Fluency and Coherence	Lexical Resource
9	▪ speaks fluently with only rare repetition or selfcorrection; any hesitation is content-related rather than to find words or grammar ▪ speaks coherently with fully appropriate cohesive features ▪ develops topics fully and appropriately	▪ uses vocabulary with full flexibility and precision in all topics ▪ uses idiomatic language naturally and accurately
8	▪ speaks fluently with only occasional repetition or self-correction; hesitation is usually contentrelated and only rarely to search for language ▪ develops topics coherently and appropriately	▪ uses a wide vocabulary resource readily and flexibly to convey precise meaning ▪ uses less common and idiomatic vocabulary skilfully, with occasional inaccuracies ▪ uses paraphrase effectively as required
7	▪ speaks at length without noticeable effort or loss of coherence ▪ may demonstrate language-related hesitation at times, or some repetition and/or selfcorrection ▪ uses a range of connectives and discourse markers with some flexibility	▪ uses vocabulary resource flexibly to discuss a variety of topics ▪ uses some less common and idiomatic vocabulary and shows some awareness of style and collocation, with some inappropriate choices ▪ uses paraphrase effectively
6	▪ is willing to speak at length, though may lose coherence at times due to occasional repetition, self-correction or hesitation ▪ uses a range of connectives and discourse markers but not always appropriately	▪ has a wide enough vocabulary to discuss topics at length and make meaning clear in spite of inappropriacies ▪ generally paraphrases successfully
5	▪ usually maintains flow of speech but uses repetition, self-correction and/or slow speech to keep going ▪ may over-use certain connectives and discourse markers ▪ produces simple speech fluently, but more complex communication causes fluency problems	▪ manages to talk about familiar and unfamiliar topics but uses vocabulary with limited flexibility ▪ attempts to use paraphrase but with mixed success
4	▪ cannot respond without noticeable pauses and may speak slowly, with frequent repetition and self-correction ▪ links basic sentences but with repetitious use of simple connectives and some breakdowns in coherence	▪ is able to talk about familiar topics but can only convey basic meaning on unfamiliar topics and makes frequent errors in word choice ▪ rarely attempts paraphrase
3	▪ speaks with long pauses ▪ has limited ability to link simple sentences ▪ gives only simple responses and is frequently unable to convey basic message	▪ uses simple vocabulary to convey personal information ▪ has insufficient vocabulary for less familiar topics
2	▪ pauses lengthily before most words ▪ little communication possible	▪ only produces isolated words or memorised utterances
1	▪ no communication possible ▪ no rateable language	
0	▪ does not attend	

Grammatical Range and Accuracy	Pronunciation
▪ uses a full range of structures naturally and appropriately ▪ produces consistently accurate structures apart from 'slips' characteristic of native speaker speech	▪ uses a full range of pronunciation features with precision and subtlety ▪ sustains flexible use of features throughout ▪ is effortless to understand
▪ uses a wide range of structures flexibly ▪ produces a majority of error-free sentences with only very occasional inappropriacies or basic/non-systematic errors	▪ uses a wide range of pronunciation features ▪ sustains flexible use of features, with only ▪ occasional lapses ▪ is easy to understand throughout; L1 accent has minimal effect on intelligibility
▪ uses a range of complex structures with some flexibility ▪ frequently produces error-free sentences, though some grammatical mistakes persist	▪ shows all the positive features of band 6 and some, but not all, the positive features of band 8
▪ uses a mix of simple and complex structures, but with limited flexibility ▪ may make frequent mistakes with complex structures, though these rarely cause comprehension problems	▪ uses a range of pronunciation features with mixed control ▪ shows some effective use of features but this is not sustained ▪ can generally be understood throughout, though mispronunciation of individual words or sounds reduces clarity at times
▪ produces basic sentence forms with reasonable accuracy ▪ uses a limited range of more complex structures, but these usually contain errors and may cause some comprehension problems	▪ shows all the positive features of band 4 and some, but not all, the positive features of band 6
▪ produces basic sentence forms and some correct simple sentences but subordinate structures are rare ▪ errors are frequent and may lead to misunderstanding	▪ uses a limited range of pronunciation features ▪ attempts to control features but lapses are frequent ▪ mispronunciations are frequent and cause some difficulty for the listener
▪ attempts basic sentence forms but with limited success, or relies on apparently memorised utterances ▪ makes numerous errors except in memorised expressions	▪ shows some of the features of band 2 and some, but not all, the positive features of band 4
▪ cannot produce basic sentence forms	▪ speech is often unintelligible

*** 评分标准以英文版本为准，中文翻译仅供参考。**

Band	流利性与连贯性	词汇多样性
9	▪ 表达流利，极少出现重复或自我纠正的情况；出现犹豫是基于思考内容，而非寻找合适的词汇或语法 ▪ 表达连贯，衔接手段的使用完全恰当 ▪ 完全且恰当地展开话题	▪ 准确自如地使用词汇来谈论任何话题 ▪ 自然且准确地使用习语
8	▪ 表达流利，偶尔出现重复或自我纠正的情况；出现犹豫通常是基于思考内容，仅在少数情况下是寻找合适的语言 ▪ 连贯且恰当地展开话题	▪ 词汇使用丰富，运用自如及灵活，表达意思准确 ▪ 熟练地使用非常见的词汇及习语，偶尔欠准确 ▪ 按需进行有效的改述
7	▪ 表达详尽，并无明显困难，或不失连贯 ▪ 有时出现与语言相关的犹豫或出现重复及 / 或自我纠正 ▪ 具有一定灵活性地使用一系列连接词和语篇标记	▪ 灵活地使用词汇讨论各种话题 ▪ 使用一些非常见的词汇及习语，对语体及词汇搭配有所认识，但有时词语选择不甚恰当 ▪ 有效地进行改述
6	▪ 表现出充分交流的意愿，但有时由于偶尔的重复、自我纠正或犹豫而缺乏连贯性 ▪ 能使用一系列连接词及语篇标记，但无法保持一贯恰当	▪ 有足以详尽讨论各种话题的词汇量，虽然有时使用不当但意思表达清晰 ▪ 基本上能成功地进行改述
5	▪ 通常能保持语流，但需通过重复、自我纠正及 / 或降低语速来维持表达 ▪ 过度使用某些连接词及语篇标记 ▪ 能用简单的语言进行流利的表达，但在进行更为复杂的交流时则表达不畅	▪ 能谈论熟悉或不熟悉的话题，但使用词汇的灵活性有限 ▪ 尝试进行改述，但有时成功有时失败
4	▪ 作答有明显停顿，且语速有时缓慢，出现频繁重复及自我纠正 ▪ 能连接简单句子，但重复使用简单的连接词，有时缺乏连贯性	▪ 能谈论所熟悉的话题，但对不熟悉的话题仅能表达基本意思，且经常用词不当 ▪ 很少尝试改述
3	▪ 表达过程中出现长时间停顿 ▪ 连接简单句的能力有限 ▪ 仅能简单作答，且经常无法表达基本意思	▪ 使用简单词汇表达个人信息 ▪ 讨论不熟悉的话题时词汇匮乏
2	▪ 大部分词汇间出现长时间停顿 ▪ 几乎无法进行沟通	▪ 仅能说出零散的单词或预先背诵的几句话
1	▪ 无法进行沟通 ▪ 无可供评分的语言	
0	▪ 缺考	

语法多样性及准确性	发音
▪ 自如得体地使用语法结构 ▪ 除了出现英语为母语者也会犯的口误外，始终使用准确的语法结构	▪ 准确运用丰富多样的发音特点，能表达微妙的差异 ▪ 表达过程中始终灵活地使用各种发音特点 ▪ 听者理解毫无障碍
▪ 灵活地使用多种语法结构 ▪ 除极其偶然情况下出现的不当或简单的 / 非系统性错误外，大部分语句准确无误	▪ 使用多样的发音特点 ▪ 表达过程中灵活地使用多种发音特点，但偶尔出现偏差 ▪ 表达过程中始终易于听者理解；母语的口音对听者理解的影响极小
▪ 较灵活地使用一系列复杂的语法结构 ▪ 虽然反复出现一些语法错误，但语句通常正确无误	▪ 表现出 6 分水平中所有积极表现，但也表现出 8 分水平中部分积极表现
▪ 结合使用简单与复杂的句型，但灵活性有限 ▪ 使用复杂结构时经常出现错误，尽管这些错误极少造成理解困难	▪ 使用多种发音特点，但掌握程度不一 ▪ 展现出某些有效使用发音特点的能力，但不能持续表现这一能力 ▪ 表达过程中听者基本能理解，但部分单词或音发音不准确导致有时清晰度下降
▪ 能使用基本的句型，且具有合理的准确性 ▪ 使用有限的复杂句式结构，但通常会出错且会造成某些理解困难	▪ 表现出 4 分水平中所有积极表现，但也表现出 6 分水平中部分积极表现
▪ 能使用基本句型并正确使用一些简单句型，但极少使用从句 ▪ 常出现错误，且会造成误解	▪ 使用有限的发音特点 ▪ 尝试表现多种发音特点，但频繁出现偏差 ▪ 经常出现发音错误，对听者理解造成一些困难
▪ 尝试使用基本句型，但准确度有限，或依赖预先背诵的几句话 ▪ 除预先背诵的内容外，错误很多	▪ 含有 2 分水平中部分表现以及 4 分水平中部分积极表现
▪ 不能使用基本的句型	▪ 表达通常无法理解

附录2

Part 2 本书所收录题目一览

人物&动物类

考生版

Describe a person who taught you a useful skill (such as cooking or riding a bike). 222
Describe a friend you made when you first met. 224
Describe a neighbour you ever helped. 225
Describe a polite person you know. 227
Describe a leader you admire. 229
Describe a person who has an important job. 230
Describe an interesting old person who you know. 233
Describe a family member who has had an important influence in your life. 235
Describe a person who can do well in work. 237
Describe a musical group or band from your country that you like. 239
Describe a pop singer or musician. 240
Describe a person who you think is beautiful or handsome. 241
Describe a family member who you spend the most time with. 243
Describe a creative person that you admire. 244
Describe an interesting animal. 246

考官版

Describe a good parent (you know). 248
Describe a family member that you are mostly close to. 248
Describe a family member who led an interesting life. 249
Describe someone who has a great influence on you. 249
Describe a person you don't like but you have to be friendly with. 250
Describe a person who visited your home. 250
Describe a creative person that you admire. 251
Describe a person who you wanted to be similar to in teenage years. 252
Describe a character or personality of yours. 253
Describe a person who you once helped (but you didn't know). 253
Describe a family member you'd like to work with. 254
Describe a helpful person in work or study. 254
Describe a child (you know). 255
Describe a person that made you laugh. 255
Describe a person who you believe dresses well. 257
Describe a person who is fashionable. 257
Describe a person who you think is beautiful or handsome. 258
Describe a person you know who dresses well. 258
Describe a good parent who is familiar to you. 259
Describe a family (not your own) you like. 259
Describe a person who gave you a clever solution to a problem. 261

Describe a person who likes to travel by plane. 262
Describe a person that just moved home. 263
Describe a new friend you've made recently. 263
Describe a friend who you think is a good leader. 264
Describe a group you like to take part in. 264
Describe an intelligent person you know. 265
Describe a good student. 266
Describe a person who has apologised to you. 267
Describe a couple who have a happy marriage. 268
Describe two people you know from the same family. 268
Describe a talkative person you know. 269
Describe a person you dislike but have to be friendly with. 269
Describe an interesting person you enjoy talking with. 270
Describe an interesting person you met recently. 271
Describe an old person you know who you respect. 272
Describe a famous person who is important to your country. 272
Describe a person you know that has made a contribution to the society. 273
Describe a person in the news that you would like to meet. 273
Describe a person who has an interesting or important job. 275
Describe a comic actor/cartoon character who is popular in your country. 275
Describe a sportsperson who played well in the match. 276
Describe a person/leader (such as sportsmen, businessmen, politicians) you admire. 276
Describe a creative inventor or musician. 277
Describe a person you admire. 277
Describe a person who can use/speak a second language. 279
Describe a person in the news that you would like to meet. 279
Describe a character in a TV program or in a film you know. 280
Describe a character from a story you read or heard in your childhood. 280
Describe a time you were really close to a wild animal. 281
Describe an interesting wild animal from your country you like best. 282

地点类

考生版

Describe a room where you want to spend a lot of time. 283
Describe your favourite café/restaurant. 285
Describe a park/garden you visited and liked/that impressed you. 287
Describe an important building in your hometown. 289
Describe a historic building that you visited. 290
Describe a street where you like (to go) shopping. 292
Describe a museum/library that you visited. 294
Describe a seaside place (you want to visit). 295
Describe a seaside place you enjoyed visiting. 297
Describe a tourist attraction you have visited. 298

Describe a café or restaurant you like to visit. 300
Describe a place where you can read or write (not your home). 300
Describe a place where you listen to music. 302
Describe a place where you relaxed. 302
Describe a restaurant you like to go/that impresses you. 303
Describe a restaurant that you often go to and you like. 303
Describe a shop that just opened in your hometown. 304
Describe a crowded place. 305
Describe a place where was crowded with people you went to. 305
Describe a street you like to visit. 306
Describe a street you are familiar with in your hometown. 307
Describe a garden/park you visited. 307
Describe your favourite park or garden in your city (town). 308
Describe an unusual building you've visited. 309
Describe a tall building in your hometown you like or dislike. 309
Describe a place (city/village) you have been to that was polluted. 310
Describe a city that you have visited that left an impression on you. 310
Describe a quiet place. 312
Describe a place that can be good to relax (not home). 312
Describe a popular place where people like to go swimming. 313
Describe a place near water (such as a river, lake or the ocean) that you enjoyed visiting. 313
Describe a perfect house you have visited. 314
Describe an interesting house or apartment you visited. 314
Describe a place away from home where you stayed. 316
Describe a place where you have worked or studied. 316
Describe a place in another country where you would like to work. 317
Describe a beautiful place where you want to have a home. 317
Describe a place you visited to learn another culture. 318
Describe a place you went to that was full of colour. 318
Describe an interesting country you want to go to. 319
Describe a foreign country that you want to visit but haven't been to. 320

事件类

Describe an important traditional event in your country. 321
Describe a birthday celebration that you enjoyed. 323
Describe an activity you do to keep fit. 325
Describe a sporting event you enjoyed watching. 327
Describe a sport you would like to try for the first time. 330
Describe an occasion when you ate a kind of food for the first time. 332
Describe the first time that you used a foreign language to communicate. 334
Describe an educational trip you went on. 337
Describe a trip you had by bike. 339
Describe a long car journey you went on. 341
Describe a time that a child did something that made you laugh. 344

Describe a time you moved to a new home or school. 346
Describe a time when you were very busy. 348
Describe a course you learnt at school, university or evening class. 351
Describe a decision made by others that you disagreed with. 353
Describe an occasion when you helped a person. 356
Describe a time when you had to wait in a traffic jam/congestion. 357
Describe a perfect job you would like to have in the future. 360

Describe an occasion when you ate a kind of food for the first time. 362
Describe a kind of foreign food you have had. 362
Describe a happy family event from your childhood that you remember well. 363
Describe a happy event/an unforgettable event/journey you had in your childhood. 363
Describe a wedding you have been to. 364
Describe a family celebration (such as wedding) that you attended. 365
Describe a time when you prepared for a happy event. 366
Describe a recent happy event that you have had. 366
Describe an important event in the history of your country. 367
Describe an event in history. 367
Describe a special trip you would like to go on in the future. 368
Describe a holiday you will take in the future. 368
Describe an ambition you have not achieved yet. 369
Describe a goal you want to achieve in the future. 369
Describe a time you had good experience in the countryside. 370
Describe a time you watched the sky. 371
Describe a trip you took by public transport. 372
Describe a short journey that you disliked. 372
Describe one time when the weather changed your plan. 373
Describe some bad weather that you have experienced. 373
Describe a time someone or something made noise. 374
Describe a problem with equipment that you couldn't solve. 374
Describe something you did which was a waste of time. 375
Describe a mistake that you once made. 375
Describe a mathematics class you attended at primary school. 377
Describe a time you needed to use imagination. 378
Describe a difficult thing you did well. 378
Describe a time when you forgot something. 379
Describe an occasion when you borrowed something from others. 379
Describe a team project for study or entertainment. 380
Describe a team project/group activity you did. 380
Describe an organisation (such as a company, a factory, a government organisation or a student organisation at school). 381
Describe an occasion that you received a good service from a company or shop. 382
Describe a competition you would like to take part in. 383
Describe a team you have been part of. 383
Describe a time you were friendly to someone you didn't like. 384
Describe a time when you felt surprised to meet someone. 384
Describe an occasion when you met a friend who you hadn't seen for a long time. 385
Describe a time when you felt surprised to meet someone. 385

Describe a dream you have had. 386
Describe recent changes in your hometown. 387
Describe something you want to do for a long time but you haven't done yet. 388
Describe a change you would like to make to your life in the future. 389

物品类

考生版

Describe an electronic device you use in your life (not a computer). 390
Describe something that you could not live without except computers or cell phones. 392
Describe a useful thing that you once borrowed. 394
Describe a vehicle you would like to buy (or own). 395
Describe an item of clothing or jewellery that you wear on special occasions. 397
Describe a meal (or dish) that you like to eat. 399
Describe a work of art you have seen (e.g. a painting or sculpture). 401
Describe an indoor game (not a sport) you used to play when you were a child. 404
Describe an important letter that you received. 405
Describe an art and craft activity you did at school. 406
Describe an antique or some other old things that your family has kept for a long time. 408

考官版

Describe a gift for others that took you long time to choose. 411
Describe a present you gave to your friend. 411
Describe an old family photo. 412
Describe an interesting photo. 412
Describe something you bought that you were not satisfied with. 413
Describe something you bought but don't often use. 413
Describe a present you received when you were a child. 415
Describe a toy you used to play with in your childhood. 415
Describe a popular product made in your country (e.g. food, handcraft or car, etc). 416
Describe a traditional product in your country. 416
Describe something special that you saved money to buy. 417
Describe something you bought recently that made you happy. 417
Describe a plant grown in your country. 418
Describe an important plant in your country (such as fruits, flowers or vegetables). 418
Describe a kind of flower that you like. 419
Describe a plant you are familiar with in your country. 420
Describe something special you brought home from a holiday. 421
Describe a time that you had a gift. 421
Describe a piece of furniture that you own. 422
Describe an important letter or email you wrote. 423
Describe an important invention which has changed our life. 424

抽象&媒体类

考生版

Describe a foreign language (not English) you want to learn. 425
Describe a new skill you want to learn. 427

Describe something useful you learnt from a member of your family. 429
Describe a goal you want to achieve in the future. 430
Describe your favourite season. 432
Describe a bad weather that you have experienced before. 433
Describe a game not a sport you used to play when you were a child. 435
Describe a good law in your country. 437
Describe a piece of good news you have received. 438
Describe an article you read from a magazine or from the Internet about healthy life. 440
Describe an advertisement which has impressed you most. 442
Describe a performance that you recently watched. 444
Describe a foreign film that you recently enjoyed watching. 446
Describe a particularly useful website. 448
Describe a useful app on phones, computers or tablets you know. 449

考官版

Describe a subject you didn't enjoy in high or secondary school. 451
Describe a subject that you dislike in your high school. 451
Describe an area of science that you are interested in (such as physics, mathematics). 452
Describe an interesting physical experiment you did. 452
Describe a book you liked to read in your childhood. 453
Describe an exciting book you have read. 454
Describe a book you want to read again. 455
Describe a newspaper or a magazine. 456
Describe an article that you read from a magazine or from the Internet about the healthy life. 457
Describe a way to stay healthy. 457
Describe an interesting story you saw on TV. 458
Describe a story or a novel that was particularly interesting to you. 458
Describe a piece of good news you heard from TV or the Internet. 459
Describe a piece of local news that was interesting to you. 460
Describe an advertisement that makes you want to buy something. 461
Describe an unforgettable advertisement (that you saw or heard or liked). 461
Describe a funny TV program you watch regularly. 462
Describe a TV program that makes you laugh. 462
Describe an educational TV program that you have seen. 463
Describe a radio or TV program that you talk about with your family or friends. 463
Describe a radio program you like. 464
Describe a radio program that you listened recently. 464
Describe a TV series or drama you have watched. 465
Describe a film that you disliked. 466
Describe a film about a real person or event that you have watched. 467
Describe a foreign film that you recently enjoyed watching. 468
Describe a film or a performance that made you laugh a lot. 468
Describe a childhood song you remember well. 469
Describe a meaningful song for you. 469
Describe a small business you want to have in the future. 470
Describe an achievement that you are proud of. 471
Describe a law about environment you would like to see in the future. 472
Describe a rule in school you agree or disagree with. 473

新航道 NEW CHANNEL

9分达人系列图书

《9分达人雅思听力真题还原及
《9分达人雅思口语真题还原及
《9分达人雅思阅读真题还原及
《9分达人雅思写作真题还原及
《9分达人雅思阅读真题还原及解析2》

9分达人论剑雅思

2012年-2011年雅思口语高频考题

雅思风云廿载，然真题一卷难求。剑1-剑8虽曾独步天下，然宝刀渐老，锋芒渐消。雅思江湖剑谱纷扰，独缺真经。道逢剑客须呈剑，雅思中人论雅思。今新航道顶尖高手闭关潜修，口语秘笈方得再现江湖。考生携此独门秘籍，必可独步江湖。

作者简介

于 磊 先后就读于澳大利亚悉尼科技大学，悉尼大学和中央昆士兰大学，取得了金融和会计硕士研究生学位，沉浸澳洲多年，遍览澳洲文化，攫取澳洲教育精髓，回国后供职于新航道国际教育集团，主讲雅思口语，词汇和听力课程。
"Work hard! Be nice! And one day, something amazing will happen!"

免费赠送时长 *180分钟* MP3音频文件

请发邮件至 *book@newchannel.org* 索取

或加入新航道雅思读者服务 *QQ群:256487136* 索取

敬请访问新航道官方网站
book.newchannel.org

上架建议 雅 思 口 语
ISBN 978-7-5001-2914-1
9 787500 129141 >
定价：42.00元